

点金训练

教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

必修 第二册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Food for thought

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	1
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	5
Section III	Using language	10
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	16
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	19
	读后续写技能养成	27

Unit 2 Let's celebrate!

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	37
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	40
Section III	Using language	46
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	52
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	55
	读后续写技能养成	62

Unit 3 On the move

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	72
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	75
Section III	Using language	81
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	87
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	90
	读后续写技能养成	97



Unit 4 Stage and screen

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	106
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	109
Section III	Using language	115
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	121
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	124
	读后续写技能养成	132

Unit 5 On the road

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	142
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	145
Section III	Using language	149
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	154
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	157
	读后续写技能养成	162

Unit 6 Earth first

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	171
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	175
Section III	Using language	179
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	189
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	192
	读后续写技能养成	200
	综合检测(一)	209
	综合检测(二)	217

Unit 1

Food for thought

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过略读，获取课文大意，能够准确理解和阐述标题的含义；
3. 通过精读，快速找出课文中表达人物对食物的观点的句子，梳理细节；
4. 初步了解不同国家的代表性食物及其英文表达，并能基于已有的生活经验，用英文简单描述和评价不同种类及不同国家的食物。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. sort *n.* 种,类
2. typical *adj.* 典型的,有代表性的
3. symbol *n.* 象征,标志
4. opinion *n.* 意见,看法
5. dare *modal verb* 胆敢,敢于
6. gather *v.* 聚集
7. suffer from 遭受;因……而蒙受损害

8. remind... of... 使……想起……

9. come across 碰到,偶遇;被理解

(二)阅读词汇

1. marriage *n.* 婚姻
2. super *adj.* 极好的,了不起的
3. horrible *adj.* 糟糕的
4. poison *n.* 毒素,毒物,毒药
5. snack *n.* (正餐以外的)小吃,点心
6. take to doing sth. 养成……的习惯
7. feel at home 舒适自在,不拘束

「课文速览」

表格填空

Mum	Dad	I
<p>She comes from Sichuan, China, 1. who often cooks spicy dishes. Mum says we'd better not eat too much roast food as it may make us suffer 2. from heat inside our bodies. The first time I went to China, she 3. encouraged me to try different kinds of food.</p>	<p>Dad is 4. an Englishman. He loves Chinese hot pot, but is surprised by 5. what he sees on the Chinese table and dare not 6. try some Chinese dishes. Dad can 7. cook a super "full English breakfast" and a typical Sunday roast.</p>	<p>I grew 8. up in England. I've enjoyed food from England and China. I enjoy this kind of food, such as pigs' ears, and chicken feet. I went to China and tasted stinky tofu. I found it wasn't so 9. bad. I feel at home with food from both my 10. cultures.</p>

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What does “this” mean in the sentence “Thanks to this, Dad has come to love hot pot!” in Paragraph 2?
 - Mum is a Chinese.
 - Mum often cooks spicy dishes.
 - Mum loves Dad.
 - Mum loves hot pot, too.
- What shocked the author’s father when he first visited his parents-in-law?
 - The wedding celebration.
 - The spoken language.
 - The Chinese tea.
 - The Chinese food.
- How did the butcher feel when the author went to buy pigs’ ears?
 - Unbelievable.
 - Satisfied.
 - Happy.
 - Frightened.
- What’s the author’s attitude towards food from the two cultures?
 - He prefers to eat British food rather than Chinese food.
 - He agrees with the proverb, “One man’s meat is another man’s poison.”
 - He feels at home with food from the two cultures.
 - He has taken to eating Chinese food.

答案: 1~4 BDAC

II. 课文语法填空

I have been growing up in England and I **1. have enjoyed** (enjoy) food from China and England ever since I could hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks! Mum comes from Sichuan, China and often cooks spicy dishes, because of **2. which** Dad has come to love hot pot. However, there are still some dishes that he dare not try even after many years of **3. marriage** (marry) to my mother. Even today, he still does not easily take to **4. eating** (eat) chicken feet. Last week, I went to the butcher’s to buy pigs’ ears, but the butcher said he had only ordinary **5. ears** (ear). Dad can cook a super “full English breakfast” and a typical Sunday roast. Mum advises **6. us** (we) not to eat too much roast food because it can make us suffer **7. from** heat inside our bodies. When I first visited China, **8. encouraged** (encourage) by Mum, I gathered all my courage and tried stinky tofu, which reminded me of blue cheese, a **9. similarly** (similar) strong smelling type of food. To me, there is nothing better **10. than** a cross-cultural afternoon tea.

III. 阅读升华

- What did the butcher mean by saying “just these ordinary ones”?
He thought the author was joking.
- What food from other regions in China or other countries has made an impression on you? Why?
略

课后素养评价(一)

I. 阅读理解

The pasty (馅饼) has been a recorded part of the British diet since the 13th century, at that time being enjoyed by the rich upper classes. The fillings were different and rich. It wasn’t until the 17th and 18th centuries that the pasty was popular among miners and farm workers in Cornwall as a means for providing themselves with easy and tasty meals

when they worked. And so the Cornish pasty was born.

Traditionally, the pasty fillings are beef with potato, onion and swede! As meat was much more expensive in the 17th and 18th centuries, its presence was rare and so pasties traditionally included much more vegetables than today. The presence of carrot in a pasty, although common

now, was the mark of a poor pasty at first.

Filling ideas are endless however, and can be as different as your taste will take you. There is much discussion as to whether the ingredients (原料) should be mixed together first or lined up on the pastry in a special order. However, there is agreement that the meat should be cut into pieces, the vegetables sliced and none should be cooked before they are sealed (密封) within the pastry. It is this that makes the Cornish pasty different from other similar foods.

It was such a commonly used method of eating amongst the miners that some mines had tools down the mineshafts (井筒) specifically to cook the pasties. If they were cooked in the mornings, the pastry could keep the fillings warm for 8—10 hours and, when held close to the body, keep the miners warm too. It was also common for the pasties to provide not only a main course lunch, but also a sweet or fruity dessert course. The salty filling would be cooked at one end of the pasty and the sweet course at the other end. Hopefully these ends would be marked on the outside too!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了馅饼的基本信息。

1. What do we know about the pasty in the 13th century?

- A. It was enjoyed in Cornwall only.
- B. It was popular among miners and farm workers.
- C. It had few and simple fillings.
- D. It was widely eaten by the rich upper classes.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“The pasty (馅饼) has been a recorded part of the British diet since the 13th century, at that time being enjoyed by the rich upper classes. The fillings were different and rich.”可知,在13世纪馅饼被富裕的上层阶级广泛食用。故选D。

2. If carrot was in a pasty in the 17th and 18th centuries, the pasty would _____.

- A. be more expensive
- B. be sold out very soon
- C. be seen as one of bad quality
- D. be made without other fillings

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The presence of carrot in a pasty, although common now, was the mark of a poor pasty at first.”可知,在17和18世纪如果将胡萝卜做馅放在馅饼中,那么这个馅饼将被视为劣等馅饼。故选C。

3. What is special about the Cornish pasty?

- A. Its fillings can't be very different.
- B. Its ingredients should be mixed.
- C. Its ingredients should be put in the correct order.
- D. Its fillings shouldn't be cooked before they are sealed.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“However, there is agreement that the meat should be cut into pieces, the vegetables sliced and none should be cooked before they are sealed (密封) within the pastry. It is this that makes the Cornish pasty different from other similar foods.”可知,Cornish 馅饼的特殊之处是馅料在密封前不能煮熟。故选D。

4. What is the author's purpose in writing the text?

- A. To show how to make pasties.
- B. To introduce the basic information of pasties.
- C. To compare different pasties.
- D. To encourage people to taste pasties.

B 写作意图题。根据文章的主要内容,尤其是第一段中的“It wasn't until the 17th and 18th centuries that the pasty was popular among miners and farm workers in Cornwall as a means for providing themselves with easy and tasty meals when they worked. And so the Cornish

pasty was born.”可推知,作者写这篇文章的目的是介绍馅饼的基本信息。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Are you interested in losing your body fat to look slimmer (苗条)? This article concentrates on losing fat, not weight or muscle. You will naturally look slimmer, and be and feel more healthy and attractive. 1

Steps

1. Do proper exercise.

These are exercises that get your heart rate as high as possible and burn fat. 2 Doing at least one hour of cardio (有氧运动) every day along with one hour of strength training a few days per week is the best habit. This will make you lose fat faster, combined with muscle exercise and a healthy, low-fat diet.

2. 3

Eating whole, unprocessed foods is the best way to not take in too much fat. This means eating foods that are in their natural state such as fruit and vegetables. Buy raw foods and cook meat yourself, with plant oil. Protein (蛋白质) helps gain muscles. You can find protein in foods like milk, fish, beef and eggs. Get filled with low-calorie foods such as vegetables. 4

3. Watch what you drink.

Don't drink soda, alcohol and fruit juice all the time, since these drinks contain a lot of “empty calories” which will only lead you to put on unnecessary weight. Green tea is a good, healthy

choice. 5 Drink one full glass of water every morning when you wake up—it is said to make you lose weight faster.

A. Build muscles.

B. Diet and eat healthily.

C. These exercises include running, jogging, swimming, etc.

D. Read on if you are interested in getting all of these advantages!

E. This will make you eat less fattening food, thus making you slimmer.

F. Before going on a diet, you should consult with your doctor to avoid side effects.

G. Drink two cups of water with each meal to fill you up, avoiding eating too much.

答案:1~5 DCBEG

【微点写作】食品介绍类文章

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 你来北京时,北京烤鸭是你不能错过的。

When you come to Beijing, Beijing Roast Duck is what you can't miss.

2. 首先,准备好所有食材后,把油加热并加入辣椒,炒 30 秒。

First, with all the ingredients prepared, heat the oil and add the chilies, stirring them for 30 seconds.

3. 包饺子时,你需要用薄的生面皮包住蔬菜、肉类或海鲜制成的馅料。

When making dumplings, you need to wrap the fillings made of vegetables, meat or seafood with thin pieces of dough.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 基于文章内容，能运用与话题相关的语言知识，讲述该中英跨国家庭的饮食故事；
3. 了解中英饮食差异，增强跨文化意识，增进对各国饮食文化差异的理解与尊重。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It's not a good idea to miss meals or replace them with **snacks**. 小吃, 点心
2. All the brides look beautiful on their **wedding** days. 婚礼
3. There are so many different **sorts** of mushrooms available these days. 种, 类
4. Some people use “**super**” to mean “very nice or very good”. 极好的, 了不起的
5. In the evenings, we **gathered** around the fireplace and talked. 聚集
6. She took a couple of **bites** of the sandwich. 咬
7. The rose is regarded as a **symbol** of love in both China and some Western countries. 象征, 标志
8. The media play a major role in influencing people's **opinions**. 意见, 看法

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>marriage</u> <i>n.</i> 婚姻	marry <i>v.</i> 结婚; 娶; 嫁 married <i>adj.</i> 已婚的
<u>suffer</u> <i>v.</i> (身体或精神上) 受苦	suffering <i>n.</i> (肉体或精神上的) 痛苦, 苦难, 折磨 sufferer <i>n.</i> 患者; 受苦者
<u>horrible</u> <i>adj.</i> 糟糕的	horribly <i>adv.</i> 糟糕地
<u>poison</u> <i>n.</i> 毒素, 毒物, 毒药	poisonous <i>adj.</i> 有毒的
<u>typical</u> <i>adj.</i> 典型的, 有代表性的	typically <i>adv.</i> 典型地, 具有代表性地

III. 补全短语

1. come across 碰到, 偶遇; 被理解

2. remind... of ... 使……想起……

3. grow up 成长; 长大

4. thanks to 多亏; 由于

5. take to 喜欢上, 对……产生好感; 养成……的习惯

6. suffer from 患病; 受……苦

7. according to 根据

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries ever since I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

我在英国长大, 爸爸是英国人, 妈妈是中国人。从我能拿刀叉和筷子以来, 我就一直在享用这两个国家的食物!

2. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

He once told me he was surprised by what he saw on the table when he first visited my mother's parents in China.

他曾经告诉我, 当他第一次去中国拜访我妈妈的父母时, 对眼前餐桌上摆放的食物感到惊讶不已。

3. 句型公式: must have done

He must have thought I was joking.
他一定以为我在开玩笑。

4. 句型公式: “否定词+比较级”表示最高级

To me, there's nothing better than a cross-cultural afternoon tea of English biscuits and a cup of Chinese oolong tea in a fine china cup!

对我来说, 没有什么比由英式饼干和用精致瓷杯沏的中国乌龙茶组成的这种跨文化的下午茶更好的了!

任务型课堂

1. marriage n. 婚姻

(教材原文) But there are still some dishes that Dad dare not try even after many years of **marriage** to my mother.

但是, 尽管已经和妈妈结婚好多年了, 爸爸还是有一些菜不敢尝试。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I opposed her **marriage to** Darryl.

我反对她嫁给达里尔。

It is said that she **married** a German and settled in Germany.

据说她嫁给了一个德国人并定居在德国。

Judy **is married to** my brother.

朱迪嫁给了我的弟弟。

Mary **got married to** a rich man last year.

玛丽去年嫁给了一位有钱人。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) marriage to sb. 与某人的婚姻 (2) _____ v. 结婚; 嫁; 娶 (3) _____ adj. 已婚的; 婚姻的 be married to 与……结婚(表状态) get married to 与……结婚(表动作)
探究结论	(2) marry (3) married

名师点拨

marry 是及物动词, 表示“与某人结婚”直接说 marry sb., 不要受汉语的影响在其后加介词 with。但形容词 married 后可加 to sb., 表示“与某人结婚”。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Her father will never approve of her marriage to Tom.

② They plan to get married (marry) in summer.

(2) 完成句子

The old couple have been married for 50 years and never quarrel with each other, which makes the host moved deeply.

这对老夫妇结婚 50 年, 从未吵过架, 这让主持人深受感动。

2. take to 喜欢上, 对……产生好感; 养成……的习惯

(教材原文) Even today, he still does not easily **take to** eating things like chicken feet.

直到今天, 他还是很难喜欢上吃鸡爪之类的东西。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **took to** her the moment I met her.

我一见到她就立刻对她产生了好感。

The bank cancelled his loan and **took back** his car.

银行取消了他的贷款并且收回了他的汽车。No other organisation was able or willing to **take on** the job.

没有任何其他组织能够或愿意承担这项工作。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	take off 脱下(衣服等); 起飞 take down 拿下, 取下; 拆卸; 记下 take _____ 退回; 同意收回(退货); 收回(说过的话); 使……回忆起 take _____ 承担, 从事; 呈现; 雇用 take up 开始从事; 占用(时间或空间) take apart 拆开
探究结论	back; on

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 写出下列句子中 take to 的含义

① More and more students **take to** the new teaching method of the English teacher. 喜欢上

② The writer had **taken to** jogging in the early morning before he became famous.

养成……的习惯

(2) 根据句意用 take 的相关短语填空

① My little son likes to take apart his toy cars and tries to put them together again.

② The plane had taken off when I arrived there!

③ It is obvious that playing with smart-phones has taken up much of our spare time.

3. come across 碰到, 偶遇; 被理解

(教材原文) ... I **came across** stinky tofu, a horrible grey thing that looked and smelt like a burnt sports shoe.

……我遇到了臭豆腐, 一种可怕的灰色食物, 它的样子和气味就像是烧焦的运动鞋。

一感 读句子感悟用法

How did it **come about** that he had his leg hurt?
他的腿受伤了,这是怎么发生的?

The rain stopped and the sun **came out**.
雨停了,太阳出来了。

As soon as the project **came up** at the meeting, it
attracted many people's attention.

这个方案在会上一提出就引起了很多人的关注。

The students have decided to **come up with** a
peaceful solution.

那些学生们决定想出一个和平的解决方法。

When it comes to speaking in public, no one can
match him.

当谈到在公共场合讲话时,没有人能比得上他。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	come _____ (=happen) 发生 come _____ (太阳、月亮等) 出现; 开花; 出版, 发表 come _____ (困难或问题) 出现; 被提出; 长出 地面; 破土而出 come up _____ 找到或提出(答案、办法等) when it comes _____ ... 当谈到……时
探究 结论	about; out; up; with; to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 介/副词填空

① In our daily life, we will come across various
barriers (障碍), so we should try to break them
down.

② He has just finished writing his book and it will
come out next month.

③ The police have been looking into how the plane
crash came about.

④ I planted some lily seeds in the yard. But they
failed to come up.

(2) 完成句子

① Having discussed the problem all afternoon, we
finally came up with a solution to it.

我们讨论这个问题整整花了一下午,我们最终想出
了一个解决方法。

② When it comes to students' surfing the

Internet, some people think students can benefit
from it.

当谈到学生上网时,有些人认为学生可以从中
获益。

4. ever since 引导时间状语从句

(教材原文) Growing up in England with a British
father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food
from both countries **ever since** I was able to hold a
knife and fork—and chopsticks!

我在英国长大,爸爸是英国人,妈妈是中国人。从
我能拿刀叉和筷子以来,我就一直在享用这两个国
家的食物!

[句式分析] 本句中的 ever since 意为“自从,
自……以来”,引导时间状语从句。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I have been there many times **ever since** the war.

自从战争以来,我已经去过那里许多次了。

We have never seen each other **ever since** we
graduated from college.

自从大学毕业以来,我们就再没有见过彼此。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	(ever) since 意为“自从……,自……以来”,其后 可以跟短语或从句,从句的时态常用 _____ 时,主句的时态常用 _____ 时或现在完成进 行时。
探究 结论	一般过去; 现在完成

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① —Where is Peter? I can't find him anywhere.
—He went to the library after breakfast and has
been writing (write) his paper there ever since.

② They have been friends ever since they were
(be) in primary school.

(2) 完成句子

① The book has been translated into thirteen
languages ever since it came out in 1973.

自从 1973 年出版以来,这本书已经被翻译成了 13
种语言。

② He hasn't been home ever since he graduated.
自从毕业以来,他就没有回过家。

课后素养评价(二)

I. 单词拼写

1. It can be inferred from the passage that food poisoning (中毒) can be kept under control.
2. The dog bit (咬) him because he kept hitting it.
3. Can you all gather (聚集) round? I've got something to tell you.
4. The young couple felt horrible (糟糕的) because their car broke down on their way to Tibet.
5. The company suffered (遭受) huge losses last year.
6. The male of the animal is typically (典型地) smaller than the female.
7. There is no doubt that Kunming is a super (极好的) place for a holiday.
8. She's busy planning her daughter's wedding (婚礼).
9. In a good marriage (婚姻), both husband and wife work hard to solve any problems that arise.
10. White has always been a symbol (象征) of purity.

II. 短语填空

deal with; sort of; suffer from; feel at home; take to; make an impression on; come across; remind... of...

1. Among obese children, about 30 percent also suffer from high levels of blood sugar and fat.
2. He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.
3. Stepping into the gate of the school always reminds me of the responsibility I carry as a student.
4. By the end of the year she was beginning to feel at home in her new school.
5. The writer has taken to getting up at 6 and going jogging ever since he was in university.
6. Although she had only met the old man once, his manners made an impression on her.
7. Learning to resolve conflicts can help students deal with friends, teachers, and parents.
8. To tell the truth, I sort of like this writer's new novel.

III. 完成句子

1. Standing on the top of the building, we can see the whole city.
站在楼顶上,我们可以看到整个城市。
2. He has been longing for her ever since she left.
自她走后,他一直在想念她。
3. This is what I want to tell you.
这就是我想要告诉你的。
4. It must have rained last night, for the ground is wet.
昨晚一定下雨了,因为地面是湿的。
5. And if we are feeling down or lonely, there is nothing better than to see the smiling face of a good friend.
如果我们情绪低落或感到孤独,那么没有什么比看到好朋友的一张笑脸更好的了。

IV. 完形填空

Tomorrow Will Be Another Day

On my way home from work every evening, there would be a homeless middle-aged man standing by the walkway. He was always 1, smiling and sometimes almost dancing.

Every day after work I would remember to gather any spare 2, and put it aside. If I saw him I'd give him the coins. A feeling of 3 would come over me every time I saw him as he looked to feel joyful. Sometimes we would ask each other about our day. His 4 would be the same, "I'm fine. Have a bright day."

I knew what his reply was going to be every time, 5 I would still ask. It 6 me that even in his situation of being homeless, he was so cheerful. He 7 me how lucky I was, a single mother of four kids, with a good job to provide for them.

Then one day I was called into my boss's office and was told that I was 8 due to the weak economy. A feeling of worry filled my mind immediately, and for the rest of that day all I could think about was "how am I going to 9 my family, and how am I going to pay rent?"

That day I was very sad and upset on my way home. I 10 forgot to prepare some coins for the homeless man as usual. As I waited for the red light to turn, he walked over with a big smile and asked, "How is everything going?" I told him I lost my job and felt really bad. "OK, I will 11 you a dollar today. Tomorrow will be another day," said the man.

I was deeply 12 and burst into tears. I wanted to hug him! That day what the man handed me was more than a dollar bill. He taught me a 13 lesson. Whatever material things are taken from you, no one can take away your 14 to be joyful. Tomorrow will be a bright day and full of 15.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者在每天下班之后都能碰到一个无家可归的中年男人,他的乐观使作者非常感动,当作者被公司解雇时,沮丧的她得到了这个中年男人的鼓励,于是对生活有了另一层见解。

1. A. happy B. shy
C. nervous D. careful

A 根据题空所在的句子和下文的“as he looked to feel joyful”可知,这个中年男人总是面带微笑。故选 A。

2. A. time B. food
C. change D. water

C 根据下文的“If I saw him I'd give him the coins.”可知,作者每天下班后,都会把多余的零钱(change)收起来放在一边。故选 C。

3. A. pity B. pain
C. anger D. joy

D 根据下文的“I saw him as he looked to feel joyful”可知,作者的喜悦(joy)之情油然而生。故选 D。

4. A. demand B. answer
C. view D. reason

B 根据上文的“we would ask”可知,此处指这个中年人回答说(answer)。故选 B。

5. A. but B. for
C. or D. so

A 根据题空所在的句子可知,前后分句表示转折

关系。故选 A。

6. A. satisfied B. frightened
C. disappointed D. amazed

D 根据下文“even in his situation of being homeless, he was so cheerful”可知,作者对那个中年男人在无家可归的情况下还是那么快乐感到非常惊讶(amazed)。故选 D。

7. A. informed B. advised
C. reminded D. warned

C 根据题空所在的句子可知,这个中年男人的乐观提醒(reminded)作者,自己是很幸运的。故选 C。

8. A. fired B. examined
C. questioned D. invited

A 根据下文的“the weak economy”以及“how am I going to 9 my family, and how am I going to pay rent”可知,作者被解雇(fired)了。故选 A。

9. A. miss B. support
C. trust D. check

B 根据下文的“how am I going to pay rent”可知,作者得知自己被解雇以后,心里想着怎样支撑(support)自己的家。故选 B。

10. A. still B. once
C. even D. always

C 根据上文的“That day I was very sad and upset on my way home.”可知,作者被解雇了之后非常沮丧,这里的 even 指程度的加深,即作者甚至(even)把平日经常做的事情都忘记了。故选 C。

11. A. charge B. find
C. show D. give

D 根据题空所在的句子和下文的“what the man handed me was more than a dollar bill”可知,作者看到了那个无家可归的中年男人,中年男人说:“今天我给(give)你一美元。”故选 D。

12. A. moved B. hurt
C. lost D. relaxed

A 根据下文的“burst into tears. I wanted to hug him”可知,作者因为中年男人的举动而非常感动。故选 A。

13. A. terrible B. valuable
C. hard D. strange

B 根据题空所在的句子和上文内容可知,中年

男人的话语和举动给作者上了宝贵的(valuable)一课。故选 B。

14. A. cost B. secret
C. stress D. choice

D 根据题空所在的句子可知,没有人能夺走你对快乐的选择(choice)。故选 D。

15. A. doubt B. regret
C. hope D. praise

C 根据上文的“Tomorrow will be a bright day”可知,此处作者想要表达的是明天又是新的一天,充满了希望(hope)。故选 C。

【微点写作】食品介绍类文章

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 最后一步是将它们放入沸水中煮熟。

And the last step is to put them into boiling water to get them well cooked.

2. 为了增加膳食的营养,你可以放一些打好的鸡蛋和绿色蔬菜。

To add nutrition to the meal, you can drop some beaten eggs and green vegetables.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 了解情态动词的基本用法,能够根据语境选择合适的情态动词;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 初步学习、了解英国的餐桌礼仪,开阔国际视野;
4. 能使用恰当的形容词描述食物,使用恰当的情态动词说服他人;
5. 了解什么是健康饮食,增强健康饮食的意识。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. As we all know, the **function** of the heart is to pump blood through the body. 功能;作用
2. Fresh fruit and vegetables are a very important part of our **diet**. 日常饮食
3. It is bad **manners** to talk with your mouth full. 礼貌,礼仪
4. The website gives new graduates **tips** on applying for jobs. 建议
5. The general massed his troops for a final **attack**. 攻击
6. The photos can be **downloaded** for free from our website. 下载
7. **Within** these old walls there was once a town. 在……里

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>related</u> <i>adj.</i> 有关系的,相关的	relate <i>v.</i> 有关联;把……联系起来

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>addict</u> <i>n.</i> 对……着迷的人	addicted <i>adj.</i> 上瘾的 addiction <i>n.</i> 瘾;入迷
<u>custom</u> <i>n.</i> 风俗,习惯,传统	accustom <i>v.</i> 使习惯于,使适应 accustomed <i>adj.</i> 习惯的
<u>differ</u> <i>v.</i> 不同,不一样,有区别	different <i>adj.</i> 不同的;个别的 difference <i>n.</i> 差异,不同
<u>slightly</u> <i>adv.</i> 略微,稍微	slight <i>adj.</i> 轻微的,细小的
<u>incredibly</u> <i>adv.</i> 极端地,非常地	incredible <i>adj.</i> 不能相信的,难以置信的 credible <i>adj.</i> 可靠的,可信的
<u>recommend</u> <i>v.</i> 推荐	recommendation <i>n.</i> 推荐;建议

III. 补全短语

1. had better 最好
2. sort of 有几分;近似;有那么点儿
3. pick up 拿起,捡起
4. in case 以防万一
5. in different situations 在不同情况下
6. stay/keep healthy 保持健康
7. pay for 为……付款

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:until 引导时间状语从句

You have to wait until everyone else has been served before you start eating.

你必须等到所有人的食物上齐了才可以开始吃。

2. 句型公式:in case 引导条件状语从句

Sometimes there are so many knives and forks that you dare not pick them up in case you get it wrong.

有时刀叉太多了,你最好把它们拣出来,以防弄错了。

3. 句型公式:each time 引导时间状语从句

The sugar in soft drinks forms acid and attacks our teeth for about 20 minutes each time we drink them.

软饮料中的糖会形成酸,每次喝的时候,它们就会侵蚀我们的牙齿大约 20 分钟。

任务型课堂

1. addict n. 对……着迷的人

(教材原文)So, if you're a sugar **addict** and aren't able to say no to chocolate or cola, you had better **download it now!**

因此,如果你是个对糖有瘾的人,而且不能拒绝巧克力或可乐,你最好现在就下载它!

一感 读句子感悟用法

Jack **became addicted to** computer games at quite an early age.

杰克在很小的时候就对电脑游戏上瘾了。

As is known to all, tobacco is highly **addictive**.

众所周知,烟草很容易使人上瘾。

He is now fighting his **addiction** to alcohol.

他现在正努力戒酒。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) a TV addict 电视迷
	(2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 入了迷的;上瘾的
	be/get/become addicted _____ (doing) sth. 对(做)某事入迷/上瘾
	(3) <i>addictive adj.</i> 使人上瘾的,使人入迷的
探究结论	(4) _____ <i>n.</i> 瘾;入迷
	(2) addicted; to (4) addiction

三评 多维度评价测试

- (1) 单句语法填空

① Young people addicted (addict) to the Internet

can go to the doctor to ask for some advice.

② I find jogging very addictive (addict).

③ People who suffer from addiction are called addicts. (addict)

(2) 完成句子

The young man is addicted to playing football in his spare time.

这个年轻人在业余时间沉迷于踢足球。

(3) 句式升级

Tom was addicted to computer games and did nothing all day. (用形容词作状语改写)

→ Addicted to computer games, Tom did nothing all day.

2. in case 以防万一

(教材原文) Sometimes there are so many knives and forks that you dare not pick them up **in case** you get it wrong.

有时刀叉太多了,你最好把它们拣出来,以防弄错了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

They spread a big net **in case** Tom should fall off the tree and get hurt.

他们张开一张大网,以防汤姆从树上掉下来受伤。

In any case, you should prepare for the worst.

无论如何,你应该做最坏的准备。

In case of emergency, break the glass and press the button.

遇到紧急情况时,击碎玻璃并按下按钮。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	_____ any case 无论如何,不管怎样
	in case _____ 万一,如果;防备
	in no case 无论如何不(置于句首,句子用倒装语序)
	in this/that case 在这/那种情况下;既然这样/那样
	as is often the case 通常就是这样
探究 结论	in; of

名师点拨

(1) in case 可用作副词,也可用作连词,引导从句。

(2) case 常作定语从句的先行词,后面跟 where 引导的定语从句,表示抽象意义的地点。

Have you ever had such a **case where** you are vague about a person's name?

你有没有过记不清楚别人名字的情况呢?

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

As is often the case with him, he was fined for speeding.

(2) 完成句子

In no case should we lie to our parents about our exam results.

在任何情况下,我们都不应该对父母谎报考试成绩。

(3) 一句多译

你最好带把雨伞以防下雨。

① You'd better take an umbrella in case it rains.

② You'd better take an umbrella in case of rain.

语法探究

情态动词(1)

「语法感知」

①... I **was able to** hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

②But there are still some dishes that Dad **dare not** try even after many years of marriage to my mother.

③... Mum and I just **have to** find a way to get him into the kitchen!

④... we'd **better not** eat too much roast food as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies, ...

⑤“You **needn't** try it if you don't want to,” Mum said, ...

1. 情态动词的基本特征是有一定的词义,不能单独作谓语,需和实义动词或系动词一起作谓语。情态动词后接动词原形。

2. 情态动词一般无人称和数的变化,个别情态动词有现在时和过去时两种时态变化。

3. 构成否定句时,not 放在情态动词后面,如句②④⑤。

「语法精讲」

一、概念理解

1. 情态动词有一定的词义,不能单独作谓语,需和实义动词或系动词一起作谓语。

She **can** speak English though she is six.

尽管她才6岁,但她会讲英语。

2. 情态动词一般无人称和数的变化,个别情态动词有现在时和过去时两种时态变化。

I **couldn't** get the tickets after all; they were sold out.

我最终还是没能买到票,票全部卖完了。

3. 构成否定句时,not 放在其后面。

The young man **can't** carry the big stone.

这个年轻人搬不动那块大石头。

4. 情态动词后接动词原形。

A woman **can do** anything when she concentrates.

女人专注起来,什么都能办到。

二、部分情态动词的基本用法

1. can, could

(1) 表示能力,意为“能,会”,指拥有做某事的能力、机会、时间等。can 表示现在的能力,could 表示过去的的能力。

By the time she was five, she **could** read English stories.

她五岁时就能读英语故事了。

You never know what you **can** do till you try.

除非你亲自尝试一下,否则你永远不知道自己能够做什么。

(2)表示请求和许可。在疑问句中, could 可以代替 can, 此时 could 不是过去式, 使用 could 可以使语气更委婉。

—**Can/Could** I speak to your manager?

—Yes, you **can**./No, you **can't**.

——我能跟你们经理说话吗?

——是的, 可以。/不, 不可以。

(3)表示惊讶、怀疑等, 常用于否定句和疑问句。

How **can** you be so careless!

你怎么会这么粗心!

You **can't** be serious!

你一定是在开玩笑!

2. need 的用法

(1)作情态动词

need 作情态动词时, 后跟动词原形, 表示“需要, 有必要”, 无人称和数的变化, 多用于疑问句、否定句或条件句中。其否定形式是在其后直接加 not, 疑问形式是直接 will need 提到主语前。由 need 构成的一般疑问句, 其肯定回答用 must 或 have to, 否定回答常用 needn't。

—**Need** I finish the work today?

—Yes, you **must/have to**./No, you **needn't**.

——我需要今天做完这项工作吗?

——是的, 你必须做完。/不用, 你不必做完。

There's plenty of time. You **needn't** drive so fast. 时间很充足, 你不必开这么快。

(2)作实义动词

need 作实义动词时, 后可接名词、动名词、不定式等, 有人称、时态和数的变化, 其否定形式、疑问形式都要通过助动词 do 构成。物作主语时, need 后跟 doing 或 to be done。

There are always people who **need help** from others.

总会有人需要他人的帮助。

He didn't **need to set off** so early.

他不必这么早出发。

Do I **need to leave** my telephone number and address?

我有必要把电话号码和地址留下吗?

The bike **needs repairing**.

= The bike **needs to be repaired**.

这辆自行车需要修理。

3. must 与 have to

(1)must 表示“必须”, 语气强烈。have to 表示“不得不”, 意义与 must 相近, 但又有所区别。must

表示说话人的主观看法, have to 则强调客观需要; must 只有一种形式, 而 have to 有人称、时态等的变化。

—Shall I inform him of the change of the schedule right now?

—I am afraid you **must**, in case he comes late for the meeting.

——日程改了, 我该马上通知他吗?

——我想你必须(通知他), 以免他开会迟到。

I **have to** go now, because my mother is in hospital.

我现在不得不走了, 因为我母亲在住院。

(2)must 意为“偏要, 非要……不可”。

If you **must** go, at least wait until the storm is over.

如果你非要走, 至少要等到暴风雨停了。

(3)mustn't 表示禁止, 意为“不得, 不允许; 一定不要”。

That car is my property; you **mustn't** use it without my permission.

那辆车是我的财产, 没有我的允许你不能使用它。

(4)have to 表示“不得不”, 有时态、人称和数的变化, 其否定形式为 don't/doesn't/didn't have to。

It's too late. I **have to** go home now.

天色太晚了, 我现在得回家了。

You don't **have to** finish the work now.

你没有必要现在完成这项工作。

4. will, would

(1)表示请求、建议等, 多用于第二人称疑问句, would 比 will 语气更委婉。

Will/Would you pass me the ball, please? 请把球递给我好吗?

(2)表示意志、愿望和决心。

I **will** never do that again.

我再也不会那样做了。

She said she **wouldn't** be coming to the store any more.

她说她再也不会来这家商店了。

(3)表示习惯性的动作、必然趋势或固有属性, 意为“就会; 总是”。

As is known to all, fish **will** die without water.

众所周知, 鱼离开水就会死。

On summer evenings, they **would** sit outside, chatting.

夏日的夜晚, 他们总会坐在外面聊天。

(4)表示物体的功能或倾向性。

The car **won't** start.

这辆车发动不起来。

5. shall

(1)shall 用于第一、三人称疑问句,表示说话者征求对方的意见。

Shall I wait for you at the gate?

我在门口等你好吗?

(2)shall 用于第二、三人称的陈述句,表示命令、威胁、警告、允诺等。

You **shall** suffer for this.

你会为此事吃苦头的。(表威胁)

You **shall** be punished if you break the rules.

如果你违反规则,就会受到惩罚。(表警告)

You **shall** have the book when I finish reading.

我读完之后你就能拿到这本书。(表允诺)

(3)shall 用于规定、法令、条约等正式文件中,表示“必须”。

All payments **shall** be made in cash.

所有款项都必须以现金形式支付。

6. should

(1)should 表示义务、责任、劝告、建议等,意为“应该,应当”。

We **shouldn't** play on the mobile phone when crossing the road.

我们过马路的时候不应该玩手机。

(2)should 表示惊奇、遗憾等,意为“竟然”。

It's surprising that he **should** have failed to pass such an exam.

真令人吃惊,这样的考试他竟然都没通过。

7. dare 的用法

(1)dare 既可以作实义动词,也可以作情态动词。作情态动词时多用于疑问句、否定句、条件状语从句以及表示怀疑的名词性从句中,表示“敢……”。

I **dare not** walk through the wood at night.

夜间我不敢在小树林里走。

Dare she go home alone at night?

她敢夜间独自一个人回家吗?

How **dare** you say that I'm a thief?

你怎么敢说我是一个贼呢?

名师点拨

dare 作情态动词时没有第三人称单数形式,但有过去式。

He **dared** not tell his parents the truth.

他不敢告诉父母实情。

(2)dare 作实义动词时,在否定句、疑问句中不定式符号 to 也可以省略。

The children don't **dare (to) make** a sound while their parents are sleeping.

孩子们在父母睡觉时不敢弄出一点声音。

Does he **dare (to) tell** you what he has done?

他敢告诉你们他所做的事情吗?

8. had better 的用法

had better 后跟动词原形,表示“最好……”,其否定式在 had better 后加 not。而构成疑问式时,则通常将 had(而不是 had better)置于主语之前。

You'd **better get** there before it gets dark.

你最好天黑前到达那里。

We'd **better not** talk so loudly.

我们最好不要这么大声说话。

What **had** we **better** do?

我们最好怎么办?

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

- You had better not talk (talk) with strangers.
- Need I hand in my homework today?
—Yes, you must/have to.
- Most of us love weekends, because we don't need to get (get) up early.
- They had better not go there together, had they?
- All the students have to hand in a composition once a week, don't they?

II. 完成句子

- Can / Could you help me with this box?
你能帮我搬一下这个箱子吗?
- He had to ask for leave last week, because his sick mother needed taking care of/to be taken care of.
上周他不得不请假,因为他生病的母亲需要照顾。
- The king was so hot-tempered that no one dared (to) tell him the bad news.
国王脾气极坏,以致没有人敢告诉他这个坏消息。
- On Sundays, he would go fishing.
星期天,他总是去钓鱼。
- Shall we meet somewhere for lunch?
我们约个地方一起吃午饭好吗?

课后素养评价(三)

I. 选词填空

function; in case; custom; download; diet; attack; tip

1. You can download the file and edit it on your word processor.
2. I have learned a lot about robots, especially about their functions and shapes.
3. You should observe the local customs when you go abroad.
4. Do you have any ideas or tips on how to organise magazines?
5. When the enemy attacked, they were completely powerless against them.
6. In case you should need any help, here's my number.
7. People are advised to eat a diet with much less fat or oil.

II. 单句语法填空

1. We had better not let him go there, had we?
2. The fire was very big, but all the people were able to escape (escape) from it.
3. The car is so dirty. It needs cleaning/to be cleaned (clean).
4. A secretary has to know shorthand (速记) and typing, doesn't he?
5. She is shy and dare not say (say) what she thinks.
6. The students are also required to read the passage below and some related (relate) stories.
7. It's a pity that her child has got addicted (addict) to smoking.
8. That's why small differences (differ) in the conversational style can have a great effect on one's life.
9. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly (slight) different from that spoken in England.
10. The doctor recommended eating (eat) an apple every day to keep healthy.

III. 阅读理解

Why do Chinese people love hot pot so much? As the winter months are coming in, more and more people are sitting around a table enjoying this kind

of traditional meal. I find myself wondering what it is about this traditional meal, which has existed for more than 1,000 years. What makes it a favourite Chinese food? It seems that the answer lies beyond the dish itself.

Hot pot isn't just designed to keep you warm during the cold months, it's also a social experience. There is a lot of fun for everyone to have in adding some foods to the hot pot.

Hot pot is eaten over two to three hours. For this reason, it is often considered an evening's entertainment, and a time to spend with friends and families. However, many Westerners would be put off by the idea of other people sticking chopsticks in their food. When we come to eat at the table in the UK, we often have our own shares, although the experience is still a social one.

A similar experience to the hot pot can be found in Korean barbecue restaurants, which let you cook your own meat. This allows people to have their meat done however they want.

For most Westerners, the idea of going to a restaurant to cook their own food is very strange. But having a go, I find it's now one of my favourite meals in Beijing. The steam from the pot left my clothes smelling of food when I got home, but perhaps this was also part of the experience. When the cold wind is blowing outside, I am sitting around with my good friends, eating and drinking. For me it's like a dinner party where my taste buds (味蕾) and my appetite are equally satisfied in the warm company of friends.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。火锅是中国的传统美食,历史悠久,老少皆宜,在寒冷的冬季尤其受欢迎。

1. What is the main reason why hot pot is popular in China?
 - A. It has a history of over 1,000 years.
 - B. It is a fun social experience.
 - C. It serves people with many kinds of food.
 - D. It keeps people very warm in winter.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段第一句可知,吃火锅

不仅仅能使你的身体在寒冷的月份里保持温暖,它也是一种社交经历。故选 B。

2. What can we conclude from the article about British people?

- A. They enjoy cooking their own food in restaurants.
- B. They prefer a Korean barbecue to Chinese hot pot.
- C. They don't like sharing food with others in restaurants.
- D. They don't mind the smell of food staying on their clothes.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段最后两句可知,西方人并不喜欢别人用筷子碰自己的食物,他们更喜欢一人一份分餐吃。故选 C。

3. What is the author's attitude to hot pot?

- A. Serious.
- B. Tired.
- C. Humorous.
- D. Appreciative.

D 观点态度题。通读全文并结合最后一段最后两句可推断出,作者很喜欢吃火锅。故选 D。

【微点写作】食品介绍类文章

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 在中国北方,饺子是典型的食物,代表着好运。

In northern China, dumplings are the typical food, which represent good luck.

2. 由于你才刚刚开始烹饪中餐,我想向你推荐西红柿鸡蛋面。

Since you're just starting out cooking Chinese food, I'd like to recommend noodles with tomato egg sauce to you.

3. 中国菜是最受欢迎和最健康的饮食之一,但它可能会高油和高盐。

Chinese cuisine is one of the most popular and healthiest diets, but it can be high in oil and salt.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 理解课文内容,评价不同人物的生活方式并给出建议;
3. 对饮食这一话题有更深入的理解,选出代表中国文化的美食或饮品;
4. 能运用恰当的表达方式推荐一种能列入世界非物质文化遗产名录的中国美食或饮品的制作技艺;
5. 分组合作完成汇报,培养文化传播意识。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. convenient *adj.* 方便的,便利的
2. originally *adv.* 原先,最初
3. construction *n.* 建造,建筑
4. satisfying *adj.* 令人高兴的,令人满意的
5. homemade *adj.* 自制的,家里做的

6. adapt *v.* (使)适应,(使)适合

7. reconstruct *v.* 重建,再建

8. official *n.* 官员,高级职员

9. belong to 属于

10. bring... up 抚养……长大

11. pick up 买,购买

12. end up (尤指经历一系列意外后)最终处于,到头来

13. more or less 或多或少

(二) 阅读词汇

1. blog *v.* 写博客 *n.* 博客, 网络日志
2. swing *v.* (使)(前后)摆动, (使)摇摆
3. identify *v.* 确定, 发现
4. salty *adj.* 含盐的, 咸的

5. resist *v.* 忍住, 按捺
6. honey *n.* 蜂蜜
7. catch up 打听(不在时所发生的事情), 别后叙谈
8. make the most of 充分利用

「课文速览」

表格填空

Name	Age	Career	Introduction
Ellie	24	Junior doctor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She doesn't 1. cook very often. • She often 2. ends up saving part of her meal for the next day.
Jenny	31	Teacher	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She and her husband 3. avoid all products that come from animals. • They like cooking 4. at home and make their meals from fresh, 5. seasonal fruit and vegetables.
Ted	35	6. Construction worker	When getting back home, there's nothing more 7. satisfying than a big meat dinner.
Mike	49	Chef	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He doesn't do much cooking at home. • He brings home food from the 8. restaurant where he works.
Max	19	College student	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Five of them live in their 9. shared student house. • He is too 10. busy studying and meeting friends!

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. Who often leaves some food for the next day?
A. Jenny. B. Mike.
C. Ted. D. Ellie.
2. How does Ted feel about his mum's homemade sausages?
A. Very satisfied. B. Very tired.
C. Not mentioned. D. Very disappointed.
3. Why don't Mike and his wife do much cooking at home?
A. They are too lazy.
B. They like eating at restaurants.
C. They have no much time to cook.
D. They aren't good at cooking.
4. What does Jenny think of her lifestyle?
A. Healthy.
B. Unhealthy.

- C. It needs to be changed.
D. It doesn't need to be changed.

答案: 1~4 DACA

II. 课文语法填空

Eating healthy food is very important for all the people. We interview five people and ask them to talk about the lifestyles belonging **1. to** them.

Ellie doesn't cook often, for her apartment is very small. Her fridge is usually half empty and she is often too tired **2. to eat** (eat). She often ends up **3. saving** (save) part of her meal for the next day. As **4. a** doctor, she knows she had better change the way to eat. Jenny is a teacher. She and her husband don't eat meat. They like cooking at home. She thinks cooking together **5. gives** (give) them a chance to relax and catch **6. up** on each other's days. Ted, a construction worker, feels tired every day.

When he returns home, what he wants most is a 7. satisfying (satisfy) meat dinner. Mike is a 49-year-old chef with five children. He and his wife both work full-time, so they are pretty busy! He doesn't really do much cooking at home. Sometimes he brings home food from the restaurant 8. where he works. It's very 9. convenient (convenience) for them to eat ready meals. Max is a college student, who is living in a shared student house. He needs to

have three healthy meals a day, but he is too busy 10. studying (study) and meeting friends. He also has no time to cook food.

III. 阅读升华

1. What does Jenny like to do?
She likes cooking at home.
2. What dish do you like best? Describe the process in your own words.
略

课后素养评价(四)

I. 单词拼写

1. After the long journey, there is nothing better than a satisfying (令人满意的) place to rest.
2. Passengers were asked to identify (确认) their own suitcases before they were put on the plane.
3. A bicycle is often more convenient (便利的) than a car in towns.
4. The construction (建造) began in August last year and was completed last month.
5. Originally (起初), we had intended to go to Italy, but then we won the trip to Greece.
6. Which is the official (官方的) language of this country, Mandarin or English?
7. With the exam approaching, we should resist (抵制) the temptation (诱惑) to focus on exams alone.

II. 短语填空

pick up; be similar to; end up; belong to; bring up; adapt to; catch up; for convenience

1. For convenience, people use plastic bags in their daily life when they go shopping.
2. After catching up, they found that both of them had changed a lot.
3. Reading some Chinese novels ahead of time will help you adapt to the Chinese language environment easily.
4. He was born and brought up in Australia, so he can speak English.
5. Paper-cutting has a history of over 1,500 years, and belongs to traditional art in China.
6. Did it ever occur to you that you would end up in prison if you continued behaving like that?

7. Studying the menu, I found that many of the dishes were similar to those of that restaurant.
8. Tom soon picked up some French when he went to live in France.

III. 完成句子

1. Our teacher keeps telling us that the future belongs to the well-educated.
我们的老师一直告诉我们,未来属于受过良好教育的人。
2. I was too excited to fall asleep last night because I got first prize.
我昨晚激动得睡不着觉,因为我获得了一等奖。
3. There is no doubt that new technology is changing the way we live.
毫无疑问,新技术正在改变着我们的生活方式。
4. In my opinion, there is nothing more exciting than climbing up to Mount Tai.
在我看来,没有比爬上泰山更令人兴奋的了。
5. Kung Pao Chicken has become one of the most popular dishes in Chinese restaurants throughout the world.
宫保鸡丁已经成为全世界中国餐馆内最受欢迎的菜肴之一。

IV. 七选五

It is back-to-school time in much of the world. Calm, easy mornings are replaced with busy, hurried ones. Children wake up early and get ready for school. Many parents are also getting ready for work, helping their children and preparing food for lunches. 1 But that may be a big mistake for students. Whether at home, on the way to school or

at school, eating something healthy for breakfast may help a student get better grades.

2 The answer is yes. Experts say that in the United States about 8 to 12 percent of all students in grade school (Kindergarten through 8th grade) do not eat breakfast. By the time students are in high school (grades 9–12), 20 to 30 percent of them ignore the morning meal, which is worrying.

3 This gives your body the energy it needs to think clearly and to remember what it learns. When it comes to giving the brain what it needs to work at its highest level, not all breakfasts are created equal. The best breakfast should include complex sugar that slowly releases energy to the body. 4 A good breakfast is not just helpful for school-aged children. 5

- A. Do many children hate breakfast?
 B. Some people ignore breakfast to save time.
 C. Lunches are also important for students' health.
 D. Whole grain bread and low-sugar cakes are examples.
 E. The best breakfast is a combination of sugar,

protein and fat.

- F. Are there really many children who do not eat breakfast?
 G. We all may gain from eating something healthy in the morning.

答案: 1~5 BFEDG

【微点写作】食品介绍类文章

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 首先,将鸡蛋打入碗中,加入一些盐并搅拌它们。

First, crack the eggs into a bowl, add some salt and mix them up.

2. 油热后,将鸡蛋放入锅中炒至金黄色。

When the oil is hot, put the eggs into the pan to cook until they are golden.

3. 它只需要三种食材:面条、西红柿和鸡蛋,它们在我们的日常生活中很常见且容易获得。

It only needs three ingredients: noodles, tomatoes and eggs, which are common and easy to get in our daily life.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 通过完成读写活动,了解如何介绍一道美食,以及如何撰写菜谱,并能运用所学知识写出一道美食菜谱并推荐给别人;
3. 联系自身生活,更深入地了解饮食习惯和健康生活方式的关系。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Honey** is a sweet, sticky, yellowish substance that is made by bees. 蜂蜜
2. A **chef** is a cook in a restaurant or hotel. 厨师
3. According to the report, she is now fifth in the world **rankings**. 排行,排名
4. An **official** is a person who holds a position

of authority in an organisation. 高级职员

5. Something that is **sour** has a sharp taste like the taste of lemon. 酸(味)的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>belong</u> <i>v.</i> 属于	belongings <i>n.</i> 所有物;财产
<u>construction</u> <i>n.</i> 建造,建筑	construct <i>v.</i> 建造,构筑

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>satisfying</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人高兴的, 令人满意的	<u>satisfy</u> <i>v.</i> 使满意; 满足
	<u>satisfied</u> <i>adj.</i> 感到满意的
	<u>satisfaction</u> <i>n.</i> 满足; 令人感到满意的事
<u>convenient</u> <i>adj.</i> 方便的, 便利的	<u>convenience</u> <i>n.</i> 便利, 方便
<u>identify</u> <i>v.</i> 确定, 发现	<u>identified</u> <i>adj.</i> 经鉴定的
<u>originally</u> <i>adv.</i> 原先, 最初	<u>original</u> <i>adj.</i> 原先的, 最初的
<u>salty</u> <i>adj.</i> 含盐的, 咸的	<u>salt</u> <i>n.</i> 盐
<u>resist</u> <i>v.</i> 忍住, 按捺	<u>resistant</u> <i>adj.</i> 抵抗的
<u>adapt</u> <i>v.</i> (使) 适应, (使) 适合	<u>adaptation</u> <i>n.</i> 适应; 改编本
	<u>adaptable</u> <i>adj.</i> 有适应能力的, 能适应的

III. 补全短语

- belong to 属于
- catch up 打听(不在时所发生的事情), 别后叙谈
- pick up 买, 购买
- end up (尤指经历一系列意外后) 最终处于, 到头来

- bring up 抚养; 提起; 呕吐

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: too... to...

My fridge is usually half empty and I'm often too tired to eat much anyway.

我的冰箱通常都是半空的, 不过反正我也经常累得吃不下太多东西。

- 句型公式: “否定词+比较级”表示最高级

When I get back home, there's nothing more satisfying than a big meat dinner.

当我回到家时, 没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

- 句型公式: 否定前置

I still don't think that anything can beat my mum's homemade sausages, though.

不过, 我还是觉得没什么能比得上我妈妈自制的香肠。

- 句型公式: it 作形式主语

What's more, it is easy to make and can be adapted to individual tastes.

更重要的是, 它很容易制作, 也可依据个人口味进行调整。

任务型课堂

1. satisfying *adj.* 令人高兴的, 令人满意的

(教材原文) When I get back home, there's nothing more **satisfying** than a big meat dinner.

当我回到家时, 没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We must develop production to **satisfy** people's needs.

我们必须发展生产, 满足人民的需要。

I **am not satisfied with** your work; you must improve it.

我对你的工作不满意, 你必须加以改进。

To her satisfaction, she got to know that her son was doing so well at college.

使她满意的是, 她得知儿子在大学里的表现很好。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) <u>satisfy</u> <i>v.</i> 使满足, 使满意 (2) <u>satisfied</u> <i>adj.</i> 感到满意的 be satisfied _____ 对……感到满意 be satisfied to do sth. 对做某事感到满意
探究要点	(3) <u>satisfaction</u> <i>n.</i> 满足; 令人满意的事 _____ one's satisfaction 令某人满意的是 with satisfaction 满意地
探究结论	(2) with (3) to

名师点拨 ■■■■
be satisfied with = be pleased with/be content with/be happy with 表示“对……感到满足或满意”。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① From the satisfied smile on her face, we can see the performance was satisfying. (satisfy)

② Frankly speaking, none of the tourists was satisfied with the travel agency's service.

③ To her satisfaction (satisfy), they dealt with the matter soon.

(2) 完成句子

They were satisfied to get a timely answer.

他们对得到及时的答复感到很满意。

2. convenient adj. 方便的, 便利的; 近便的, 附近的

(教材原文) I know we should eat more fresh fruit and vegetables, but ready meals are so **convenient**. 我知道我们应该多吃些新鲜的水果和蔬菜, 但即食餐太方便了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Our house is very **convenient** for the shop.

我们的房子离商店很近。

It is not convenient for me to ring him up now.

我现在不方便给他打电话。

I keep the books on my desk **for convenience**.

为了方便起见, 我把书放在课桌上。

I don't want to **inconvenience** you any further.

我不想再麻烦你了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) It is convenient _____ sb. to do sth. 某人方便做某事。 if/when it is convenient 方便的话/方便的时候 (2) _____ n. 方便, 便利 for convenience 为了方便起见 at one's convenience 在某人方便的时候 (3) inconvenient <i>adj.</i> 不方便的, 引起麻烦的 inconvenience <i>n.</i> [U] 不便, 麻烦 [C] 麻烦事 <i>v.</i> 给……带来不便, 添麻烦; 打扰
探究结论	(1) for (2) convenience

名师点拨 ■■■■

convenient 不能用人作主语, 可用事物作主语或用 it 作形式主语。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I wonder if it would be convenient for you to pick me up at four o'clock and take me to the airport.

② Smartphones make it easier and more convenient (convenience) to check reality and watch video clips.

(2) 同义句转换

Any help from you will be greatly appreciated.

Please give me a reply at your convenience.

→ Any help from you will be greatly appreciated. Please give me a reply when it is convenient for you.

3. end up (尤指经历一系列意外后) 最终处于, 到头来

(教材原文) I often **end up** saving part of my meal for the next day.

我常常会把一部分饭菜留到第二天吃。

一感 读句子感悟用法

But we **ended up with** a fairly simple result.

但我们最后得到的是一个相当简单的结果。

Three attempts on the 200-metre record **ended in failure**.

3次向200米纪录(发起)的冲击都以失败告终。

After travelling around the world, Mr Blair **ended up teaching** Chinese students English in Shanghai. 周游世界之后, 布莱尔先生最后做了一名教师, 在上海教中国学生英语。

He **ended up as** the boss of the company.

他最后成了这家公司的老板。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	end up with... 以……结束/告终 end up _____ sth. 最终做了某事 end up as... 最后成为…… end _____ ... 以……结束/告终(多指不好的结尾)
探究结论	doing; in

名师点拨

end 的相关短语:

bring sth. to an end 使某事结束

put/bring an end to sth. 结束某事

come to an end 结束

in the end 最后, 终于

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The party ended up with a beautiful song.
- ② We were planning to go out, but ended up watching (watch) a football game at home.
- ③ After several years of hard work, she ended up as a successful writer.

(2) 完成句子

① Smell the flowers before you go to sleep, and you may just end up with sweet dreams.
睡觉前闻一下这些花, 你也许最终就会睡好。

② You'll end up in failure if you don't follow my advice.

如果你不听我的建议, 你最终会失败的。

③ How time flies! The term has come to an end.
时光飞逝! 这学期已经结束了。

4. catch up 打听(不在时所发生的事情), 别后叙谈

(教材原文) Cooking together gives us a chance to relax and **catch up** on each other's days.

一起做饭给了我们一个放松的机会, 也让我们有机会聊聊彼此的日常情况。

一感 读句子感悟用法

None of the competitors could **catch up with** the untiring runner who was in the lead.

没有一个参赛者能追上那个不知疲倦的领跑者。

I **was caught in** the rain and was wet to the skin.

我赶上一场大雨, 全身湿透了。

A cook will be fired if he **is caught smoking** in the kitchen.

如果厨师被发现在厨房里吸烟, 他就会被开除。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	catch up _____ 赶上
	catch on 明白; 懂得; 流行
	be/get caught _____ 遭遇
探究结论	catch sb. doing sth. 撞见某人在做某事
	with; in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I believe that I can catch up with him through my effort in the future.

② On a foggy night, I was caught in a car accident.

③ Those who are caught breaking (break) the rules will be punished severely.

④ It was a popular style in Britain but it never really caught on in America.

(2) 完成句子

① —Why was he fined?

—Because he happened to be caught picking several flowers in the park.

——他为什么被罚款?

——因为他碰巧被撞见摘了几朵公园里的花。

② It is lucky that you didn't get caught in the storm yesterday.

昨天你没有遇上暴风雨真是幸运。

5. “否定词+比较级”表达最高级含义

(教材原文) When I get back home, there's **nothing more satisfying than** a big meat dinner.

当我回到家时, 没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

[句式分析] 本句中的 nothing more satisfying than... 是“否定词+比较级”结构, 表示最高级的含义。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **can't agree more** to the plan.

我非常同意这项计划。

Up to now, **nobody** can understand this **better than** him.

直到现在, 没有人能比他更好地理解这一点。

—Did you sleep well last night?

—**Never better**, like a rock.

——你昨晚睡得好吗?

——从没这么好过, 睡得很沉。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	形容词_____与否定词连用,表达最高级的含义。常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等,其意义为“再也没有……比这更……的了”。
探究结论	比较级

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Mr Smith is a great teacher—I really couldn't

find a better (good) teacher.

② I had never spent a more worrying (worry) day than the day when I was waiting for the result of the college entrance examination.

③ In my opinion, nothing is more pleasant than travelling.

(2) 完成句子

In my opinion, nothing is more important than health in the world.

在我看来,在这个世界上没有什么比健康更重要的了。

写作探究

食品介绍类文章

一、写作指导

本单元的写作目标是“写食谱”。编写食谱之前要仔细选择词汇及表达,确定菜品名称。首先,食谱开篇应该做简单的描述(brief description);正文则包括两部分:一是列出做这道菜所需的食材(ingredients),需要精确的配料和用量;二是写出说明(instructions),也就是做这道菜的操作步骤,需要描述得明确、具体。

二、典题示例

在中国饮食文化中,红烧排骨很受欢迎,请用英语编写一份食谱,介绍红烧排骨的做法,要求包括两部分内容:ingredients 和 instructions。

参考词汇:猪肋排 pork rib; 四川辣椒 Sichuan pepper; 生/老抽 light/dark soy sauce; 一汤匙的量 1 tablespoon; 一茶匙的量 1 teaspoon; 把……切成细条 shred; 条 strip; 姜 ginger; 腌料酱汁 marinade sauce; 淀粉 starch; 冰糖 rock candy

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 简要说明 2. 烹饪素材 3. 操作指南

四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇

① home-style pork ribs 家常排骨

② recommend 推荐

③ super easy 超级简单

④ baby carrots 小胡萝卜

⑤ Chinese cooking wine 料酒

(二) 完成句子

① Do you know how you can make home-style pork ribs tender (让家常排骨变嫩) without overcooking?

② I would like to recommend this popular dish (想推荐这道很受欢迎的菜) today.

③ It is one of our favourite foods (最喜欢的食物).

④ The recipe is super easy (食谱非常简单), and the added sweet and sour taste would make your mouth water.

⑤ Then add the rest of the marinade sauce (加入剩下的腌料酱汁), dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup).

⑥ Stir them a few times (搅拌几次), and cook over a medium heat with cover.

⑦ One third of the sauce (三分之一的酱汁) is left.

(三) 句式升级

① 用“疑问词+不定式”改写(二)中的句①

Do you know how to make home-style pork ribs tender without overcooking?

②用定语从句合并(二)中的句②③

Today I would like to recommend this popular dish which is one of our favourite foods.

③合并(二)中的句⑤⑥⑦

Then add the rest of the marinade sauce, dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup), stir them a few times, and cook over a medium heat with cover until one third of the sauce is left.

(四)连句成篇

Do you know how to make home-style pork ribs tender without overcooking? Today I would like to recommend this popular dish which is one of our favourite foods. The recipe is super easy, and the added sweet and sour taste would make your mouth water.

Ingredients

pork ribs cut to small pieces (5 cm)..... 300 g
 baby carrots about 8 g
 onion shredded 2/3 cup
 yellow or green peppers cut to strips 1/2 cup
 rock candy 2 tablespoons
 starch 1 tablespoon

Seasonings and Sauces

Marinade sauce:

Chinese cooking wine 2 tablespoons
 Chinese vinegar 2 teaspoons
 ginger 1 piece
 Sichuan pepper 6-8 pieces
 dark soy sauce 3 tablespoons

Instructions

1. Combine the pork ribs with the marinade sauce, set about 10 minutes.
2. Mix the pork ribs with the starch (1 tablespoon), set about 1 minute.
3. Heat 2 tablespoons of oil in the pan at a medium-high heat. Add the ginger first and then the onion. Stir them together for half a minute.
4. Add the pork ribs and continue stirring them for about 2 minutes until the pork ribs turn lightly brown on both sides.

5. Add the rest of the marinade sauce, dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup), stir them a few times, and cook over a medium heat with cover until one third of the sauce is left.

6. Add the carrots and peppers, stir them a few times, cover and cook until the meat is tender and the sauce starts to thicken slightly.

7. Put the dish on a plate and enjoy the meal.

五、学以致用

假定你是李华,你的英国朋友 Peter 来信称他准备到中国旅游,并且说喜欢美食,尤其想品尝中国的火锅。请你给他回一封信,介绍火锅这一中国的传统美食,内容包括:

1. 火锅在中国很受人们欢迎;
2. 怎样制作火锅;
3. 为什么人们喜欢吃火锅。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:火锅 hot pot

【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

I'm glad to learn that you will travel to China and want to taste the hot pot. Here I'll introduce the traditional Chinese food to you.

Hot pot is one of the most famous folk dishes in China. No matter when you come to China, people eating the hot pot can be found everywhere. It is very convenient to make hot pot. When the soup in the pot is boiling, dishes such as mutton, fish and vegetables, are put into the pot. After a while you can enjoy the delicious dishes. The reason why people love eating the hot pot is that it gets people together and it is a good way to relax.

Welcome to experience it for yourself!

Yours,
 Li Hua

课后素养评价(五)

I. 单句语法填空

- How do these insects adapt themselves to new environments?
- It is very convenient to pay by credit card.
- She can look back on her career with great satisfaction (satisfy).
- If you try to remember everything you will end up remembering (remember) nothing.
- The book belonging (belong) to me is on the desk.
- It is said that potatoes originally (origin) came from South America.
- The doctor recommended washing (wash) our hands after returning from outside to protect us from being infected.
- We will discuss a number of cases where beginners of English fail to use them properly.

II. 完成句子

- Born into a family with three brothers, David was brought up to value the sense of sharing.
出生在一个有三个兄弟的家庭,大卫从小被教育要懂得分享。
- I wish that I could have a chance to learn traditional Chinese culture further.
我希望能有机会进一步学习中国传统文化。
- Last year there were more births than deaths.
去年的出生人数多于死亡人数。
- I had not only picked up the purse but also found the person who had lost it.
我不仅捡到了钱包,还找到了丢失它的人。

III. 语法填空

Foodie (吃货) or not, it's likely you've heard of Shaxian Delicacies.

The chain, **1. originating** (originate) in Shaxian County, Fujian Province, has been a success across the country. According to local officials, there are over 80,000 restaurants serving Shaxian traditional

snacks nationwide. But it is also a global hit. The chain has eateries (餐馆) in 61 foreign countries and regions. They are beloved by **2. foreigners** (foreign).

In 2018, a Shaxian Delicacies restaurant opened in New York City, only **3. to close** (close) three hours later after all the dishes sold out. "It is amazing that the Shaxian Delicacies can open its eatery near my house in America. The flavours of the food here **4. are** (be) just the same as I remember," Ms Zheng, **5. who** was born in Fuzhou City, the capital of Fujian Province, told *China Daily*.

Though it has already kept the title "taste of home", the Shaxian Delicacies chain is always creating tastes that are adapted **6. to** different local needs. For example, the owner of its franchise (有特许经营权的企业) in France uses green tea powder, which is very popular there, rather than spinach (菠菜) seeds in flour wrappers. Wu Shaohua in Portugal, **7. specially** (special) prepares "fried meat" and "fried spring rolls" for local residents who like **8. fried** (fry) food.

Apart from the delicious food, a clean environment also keeps customers coming back. The owner of the Shaxian Delicacies eatery in New York, Shao Binfang designed **9. an** open kitchen in her restaurant. "When the customers can see the cooking process, it puts **10. them** (they) at ease over food safety," Shao told *People's Daily*.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你校英文报的美食栏目“A Bite of China”正面向全校学生征稿。请你写一篇英语短文投稿,介绍一道中国美食。

注意:词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

In China, nothing can be compared with dumplings in terms of their popularity and significance.

Dumplings date back to more than 1,800 years ago. The dumplings are a famous traditional food in northern China. They consist of meat or vegetables wrapped in a thin piece of dough. The fillings can vary according to one's taste. And the cooking methods involve boiling, steaming, and frying.

Dumplings are eaten on many important occasions, especially at the Spring Festival, with good wishes for a better life.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When the night fell, James, a middle school student in London, dragged his tired body home. In order to save money to buy himself a new bike, he had been working at a restaurant for over a month during the summer vacation. He had already earned some money. With one more week, he would have his dream bike.

Entering the room, James found his younger brother Adam sitting on the edge of his bed with an uneasy expression on his face. James stared at Adam confusedly.

"Sorry. I did something wrong," Adam said, on the verge of tears.

"What's the matter with you?" James asked.

"This afternoon I went to play football on the road outside the house and accidentally hit our neighbour Mr Black's car. I was so scared and I hurried home in panic without telling him," Adam said, full of guilt.

"Is the car seriously damaged?" James couldn't

wait to continue asking.

"The ball hit the car back and the tail light got broken," Adam said in a low voice.

"It's truly your fault. It's really dangerous to play football on the road. What's worse, you shouldn't have come back without telling Mr Black about it. You are such a naughty boy," James raised his voice. Hearing this, Adam lowered his head and bit his lip hard. James added, "Anyway, it's never too late to mend. I'll take you to his house tomorrow to apologise. Now it's time to sleep."

When Adam went to bed, James couldn't go to sleep himself. Father always told him to be honest, to be a boy admired by the people and to be an example of his brother. He was sorry for his brother's behaviour. He shouldn't have blamed his brother after he did something wrong. But he could understand him. Anyway, Adam was only a boy of seven and what had happened really scared him. But as his elder brother, he should pay for it though this might delay his plan of having the bike. "Nothing serious. At worst, I can take more summer jobs," he said to himself.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

James got up early the next morning. _____

Mr Black was a little surprised to see the brothers. _____

【参考范文】

James got up early the next morning. He told Adam, "We should go to Mr Black's house as early as possible and explain to him what had happened." Before they went out, he took out all the money he had earned in the restaurant during the summer holiday. Adam knew that his dear brother wanted to pay for his fault. Tears filled his eyes because he knew very well how much his elder brother wanted to get a new bike and he was working on it.

Mr Black was a little surprised to see the

brothers. "Mr Black, I'm here to make an apology," said James. Then he told Mr Black what had happened and took out the money from his pocket. "This is all the money I have. I wonder if it can pay for your loss," he said sincerely. "Good boys, I truly appreciate your honesty. Just forget my car." Mr Black refused to get the money but accepted the brothers' suggestions of doing some work in his garden. What a good result! Adam regained his honesty and James could still have his dream bike.

读后续写技能养成 || 动作描写之“嘴和鼻”

「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之“嘴和鼻”：是指对人的嘴、齿、唇、舌和鼻等的动作描写，如张嘴、咧嘴、捂嘴、咬唇、咬牙、抽鼻子、咬、咀嚼、吞咽等。
2. 续写技巧：描写时，可以根据事件发生的具体场景，抓住“嘴和鼻”的动作特点进行描写，也可以使用一些描述心理活动的词汇辅助描写嘴和鼻的动作。

「范例体悟」

1. Finally, their eyes fell on my mum's favourite vase which was then decorated with my hair. Mum's mouth fell wide open. As a big sister, I took the blame for breaking the vase and waiting for the punishment to come.
2. "Hope you and your family like chocolate chip cookies. We made these for you," said Ollie. "That's so sweet!" the girl said, choosing a cookie and taking a bite. "I'm Gabriella." Then she stopped chewing and made a funny face.

找出文中“嘴和鼻”的动作描写并写下来。

fell wide open; taking a bite; chewing

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. chew *v.* 咀嚼
2. taste *v.* 品尝
3. swallow *v.* 吞下，咽下
4. bite *v.* 咬
5. eat/consume *v.* 吃
6. sniffle *v.* 抽鼻子
7. open-mouthed *adj.* 目瞪口呆的
8. make one's mouth water 使人流口水
9. open one's mouth 张开嘴
10. cover one's mouth 捂住嘴
11. take a bite 咬一口
12. bite her lower lip 咬她的下嘴唇
13. one's mouth dropped/hung/fell wide open 某人惊得目瞪口呆

II. 佳句背诵

1. She opened her mouth to say something.
她张开嘴要说什么。
2. He smiled suddenly, exposing a set of amazingly white teeth.

他突然笑了,露出一口洁白的牙齿。

3. My mouth started watering when I smelled the food.

闻到食物的香味时,我开始流口水了。

4. He straightened up and looked at me, open-mouthed.

他直起身,目瞪口呆地看着我。

5. I quite often see him in the street and he always walks past with his nose in the air.

我时常在街上看到他,但他总是目中无人地从我身边走过。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Recalling their sincere eyes and smiles while chewing the juicy fruit, I felt the warmth flowing into my heart.

咀嚼着多汁的水果时,回想起他们真诚的眼神和微笑,我感到温暖流入我的心田。

2. My heart was in my mouth when I walked into her office.

当我走进她的办公室时,我的心都快跳出来了。

3. Jose covered his mouth with his hands in case other people would see him cry.

约瑟夫用手捂住嘴,以防别人看到他哭。

4. Mother bit into/took a bite of a sandwich and said she had never tasted a better one.

母亲咬了一口三明治,说她从来没有吃过比这更好的了。

II. 用“嘴和鼻”的动作描写完成下面的语段

The hungry boy's 1. mouth began/started watering (嘴开始流口水) when he smelled the sandwich. He was about to pick up the sandwich and 2. take a bite (咬一口) when suddenly a hand 3. covered his mouth (捂住了他的嘴). It was his sister who grabbed his sandwich and 4. put it into her own mouth (把它放进自己嘴里). He looked up at her, 5. open-mouthed (目瞪口呆). With the sandwich gone, he 6. bit his lower lip (咬着他的下嘴唇) to keep it from trembling as tears ran down his cheeks.

第一单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Riding School

You can start horse-riding at any age. Choose private or group lessons any weekday. There are 10 kilometres of tracks and paths for leisurely rides across farmland and open country. You will need a riding hat.

Opening Hours: Monday through Friday: 9:00 am—8:30 pm(3:30 pm on Saturdays)

Phone: (412)396-6754 Fax: (412)396-6752

Sailing Club

Our Young Sailor's Course leads to the Stage 1 sailing qualification. You will learn how to sail safely and the course also covers sailing theory and first aid. Have fun with other course members afterwards in the clubroom. There are 10 weekly two-hour lessons.

Opening Hours: Tuesdays: 6:00 pm—8:00 pm

Phone: (412)396-6644 Fax: (412)396-6644

Diving Centre

Our experienced instructors offer one-month courses in deep-sea diving for beginners. There are two evening lessons a week, in which you learn to breathe underwater and use the equipment safely. You only need swimming costumes and a towel. Reduced rates for couples.

Opening Hours: Monday and Friday: 6:30 pm—8:30 pm

Phone: (412)396-6312 Fax: (412)396-6706

Medical Centre

The staff of the Medical Centre aim to provide convenient and comprehensive medical care to students and staff of the university. The centre is well-equipped and the staff here are trained to deal with a broad range of medical problems. Both female and male doctors as well as nursing staff are

available for consultation. Also, all kinds of medicine are sold here and are cheaper for students than other drugstores.

Opening Hours: 24 hours from Monday to Sunday

Phone: (412)396-6649 Fax: (412)396-6648

Watersports Club:

We use a two-kilometre length of river for speedboat racing and water-skiing. A beginner's course consists of ten 20-minute lessons. You will learn to handle boats safely and confidently, but must be able to swim. The club is in a convenient central position and is open daily from 9 am to 4 pm, with lessons all through the day.

Opening Hours: Monday through Friday: 9:00 am—4:00 pm

Phone: (412)396-6899 Fax: (412)396-6890

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了一些活动,其中包括活动的时间、地点和联系电话等。

1. If you want to swim and enjoy activities which are fast and a bit dangerous, you should join _____.

- A. Diving Centre B. Riding School
C. Watersports Club D. Sailing Club

C 细节理解题。根据最后一则广告中的“speedboat racing”和“but must be able to swim”等字眼可知,如果你想游泳并享受快速且有点危险的运动,应该去 Watersports Club。故选 C。

2. If you want to experience a new activity in the countryside in the mornings, you may fax _____.

- A. (412)396-6752 B. (412)396-6648
C. (412)396-6890 D. (412)396-6706

A 细节理解题。根据第一则广告中的“‘There are 10 kilometres of tracks and paths for leisurely rides across farmland and open country.’”可知,如果你想在上午体验一项新的乡村活动,应该去 Riding School,该地的传真是(412)396-6752。故选 A。

3. If you are planning to explore the ocean depths, you should attend your lessons _____.

- A. Monday through Friday: 9:00 am—8:30 pm
- B. 24 hours from Monday to Sunday
- C. on Tuesdays: 6:00 pm—8:00 pm
- D. on Monday and Friday: 6:30 pm—8:30 pm

D 细节理解题。根据第三则广告中的“*Our experienced instructors offer one-month courses in deep-sea diving for beginners.*”可知,如果你打算探索海洋深处,应该去 Diving Centre,活动时间为 Monday and Friday: 6:30 pm—8:30 pm。故选 D。

B

Watching what you eat can be easier said than done, but a recent study shows it might not just be about what's on your plate—it could be about how quickly it disappears.

Japanese researchers followed 1,083 adults for five years, dividing them into three categories based on how quickly they ate: slow, normal, and fast. They also answered a questionnaire at the beginning of the study, sharing their diet, physical activity, and medical history. In the beginning, none of the volunteers had metabolic syndrome—meaning at least three risk factors—which can lead to health problems like heart conditions and diabetes.

When the participants reported back five years later, 84 had been diagnosed (诊断) with metabolic syndrome—and their eating speed was a major predictor, according to the results in the journal *Circulation*. The fast eaters were 89 percent more likely to have metabolic syndrome than slow and normal eaters. Just 2.3 percent of slow eaters received the diagnosis, compared to 11.6 percent of fast eaters. But that's not all. Fast eaters also saw more weight gain, larger waistlines, and higher blood sugar levels than slow eaters.

The researchers say gobbling makes it easier not to take notice of fullness before your body has a chance to signal you to stop. “So when people eat fast they are more likely to overeat,” said Takayuki Yamaji, MD, study author and cardiologist at Hiroshima University in Japan in a statement.

Previous research backs up the weight benefits

of slow eating, too. One study of New Zealand women found fast eaters have higher body-mass indexes (指数), and a Chinese study found that both healthy and fat men ate less when they were told to chew 40 times instead of 15 times before swallowing. Initial research even suggests chewing your food longer could burn more calories—up to about 1,000 extra every month.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。研究证明,除了我们吃的东西,我们吃饭的速度也影响健康。

4. What are the participants divided by?

- A. Medical history.
- B. Health condition.
- C. Physical activity.
- D. Eating speed.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*dividing them into three categories based on how quickly they ate: slow, normal, and fast*”可知,按照参与者吃饭的速度,研究者将他们分为吃得慢、正常、快三个类别。

5. Which may be the result of the study?

- A. Fast eaters are 4 times more likely to have metabolic syndrome.
- B. Normal and slow eaters don't have metabolic illness.
- C. 89% of fast eaters have higher blood pressure.
- D. Slow eaters are healthier than fast eaters.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*Fast eaters also saw more weight gain, larger waistlines, and higher blood sugar levels than slow eaters.*”可知,比起吃得慢的人,吃得快的人的体重增加更多、腰围更大、血糖水平也更高,反向推知,吃得慢的人比吃得快的人更健康。

6. What does the underlined word “gobbling” in Paragraph 4 mean?

- A. Tasting slowly.
- B. Digesting quickly.
- C. Eating greedily.
- D. Cooking carefully.

C 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的“*when people eat fast they are more likely to overeat*”可知,吃得快可能会让人吃得过多。所以这个词的意思应是“狼吞虎咽地吃”。故选 C。

7. What does the last paragraph tell us?

- A. The importance of eating speed.
- B. The advantage of eating slowly.
- C. The result of a Chinese study.
- D. Fast eating and overeating.

B 段落大意题。根据最后一段的中心句“Previous research backs up the weight benefits of slow eating, too.”及下文内容可知,本段主要讲吃得慢的好处。

C

One man's white bread is another man's green vegetables.

That's the key from *The Personalised Diet*, a new book from Israeli authors Eran Segal and Eran Elinav. The authors say it's time to admit to ourselves that one-size-fits-all diets don't work, and when it comes to nutrition, it's about doing what works best for your body, not catching the latest diet fashion.

“For years, we've been trying to search for that silver-bullet diet and we've been miserably failing,” Segal said. “And that's because the best diet for each person really has to be tailored to that individual.”

They conducted a personalised nutrition project at Weizmann, where hundreds of volunteers agreed to have their blood sugar tested after meals. One participant in the study, a woman named Ruti, said she was surprised that it was tomatoes—not ice cream or candies—that were raising her blood sugar level. Ruti recalled, “I have now significantly reduced my intake of tomato and I'm feeling much more energetic, which still surprises me. I have already lost a couple of pounds, and I have high hopes that I have finally found the answer to my weight struggle, too.”

The Israeli scientists found that some people can consume traditionally unhealthy foods with little or no rise in their blood sugar levels, while others have a stronger response, and therefore shouldn't eat those foods. It's those kinds of results that you can only find from a personalised diet.

“What we were surprised to find out was just like any other food, there was no such thing as good bread,” Elinav said. “The response to bread was completely individualised.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一本关于个人饮食的书籍。该书表明个人的饮食与营养需求应与自身的客观情况相符,以及不要盲目追求各种流行的饮食方式。

8. What is suggested in the first sentence?

- A. Everyone has their own tastes.
- B. Nutrition serves your body best.
- C. People's response to the same food is different.
- D. The latest diet doesn't fit each person.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段第二句中的“it's time to admit to ourselves that one-size-fits-all diets don't work”可推知,文章第一句意在表明每个人对同一种食物的反应是不同的。故选 C。

9. What does the underlined part “that silver-bullet diet” in Paragraph 3 refer to?

- A. A diet that is low in fat.
- B. A diet that begins a new diet trend.
- C. A diet that works best for everyone.
- D. A diet that provides all the nutrition.

C 句意理解题。根据第二段第二句中的“one-size-fits-all diets don't work”以及画线部分所在句中的“we've been miserably failing”可知,多年来,我们一直在寻找一种所有人都适用的饮食方式,但总是失败。由此可推知,画线部分应指的是一种任何人都能够适用的饮食方式。故选 C。

10. Ruti's example suggests that to control weight, one needs to _____.

- A. eat much fewer tomatoes
- B. control their blood sugar levels
- C. struggle for weight loss constantly
- D. eat according to his or her blood sugar level

D 推理判断题。根据第四段第二句中的“she was surprised that it was tomatoes—not ice cream or candies—that were raising her blood sugar level”以及最后两句中的“I have now significantly reduced my intake of tomato... I have already lost a couple of pounds”可知,Ruti发现西红柿提高了她的血糖水平,而不是冰激凌或糖果;她通过减少西红柿的摄入量减轻了体重。由此可推知,若要控制体重,每个人应该根据自己的血糖水平合理地选择食物。故选 D。

11. Why is Elinav's opinion on bread mentioned in the last paragraph?

- A. To advise people not to eat unhealthy food.

- B. To stress the need of the personalised diet.
- C. To explain the popularity of white bread.
- D. To show the importance of good bread.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段第一句中的“there was no such thing as good bread”以及第二句“The response to bread was completely individualised.”可知,人们对面包的反应是完全个性化的。由此可推知,本段引用 Elinav 的观点意在强调个性化饮食的必要性。故选 B。

D

A new study finds almost one third of the world's population is overweight. Since 1980, obesity rates (肥胖率) in children and adults have doubled in 73 countries, making people more worried. And rates are increasing in many other countries. Obesity is increasing faster in children than in adults in many nations, including Algeria, Türkiye and Jordan, the report says. But the world's weight problem is growing in both rich and poor countries alike. Researchers say an increasing number of people are dying of related health problems in what they called a “disturbing global public health problem”.

Researchers studied health information from 1980 through 2015. They examined obesity rates and average (平均的) weight gain in 195 countries. They have found that obesity rates are three times higher among teenagers and young adults in countries like China, Brazil and India. Almost 108 million children and more than 600 million adults were found to be overweight. Egypt had the highest number of overweight adults in 2015. Vietnam had the lowest. In the same year, the United States had the highest number of overweight children, and Bangladesh had the lowest.

Yet hunger remains a problem in many areas. The United Nations said that almost 800 million people, including 300 million children, went to bed hungry each night. Experts said poor diets and lack of physical activity were the main reasons for the rising number of overweight people. The growing population has led to rising obesity rates in poor countries. Often, poor people will eat processed (加工的) food instead of choosing a diet rich in

vegetables.

The London-based Overseas Development Institute studied the price of food in five countries: Britain, Brazil, China, Mexico and the Republic of Korea. It found that the cost of processed food like ice cream and hamburgers fell since 1990. But the cost of fresh fruit and vegetables went up.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了世界上有将近三分之一的人口都超重了,肥胖已经成为困扰很多国家的问题。

12. What do we know about obesity in the world?

- A. It is worrying.
- B. It is given no attention.
- C. It has been successfully solved.
- D. It is more serious among old people.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Since 1980, obesity rates (肥胖率) in children and adults have doubled in 73 countries, making people more worried.”可知,自 1980 年以来,73 个国家的儿童和成人的肥胖率翻了一倍,使得人们更加担心。故选 A。

13. Which country has the most overweight children in 2015?

- A. The US.
- B. Vietnam.
- C. Egypt.
- D. Bangladesh.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段最后一句“In the same year, the United States had the highest number of overweight children, and Bangladesh had the lowest.”可知,在 2015 年,美国的超重儿童数量最多。故选 A。

14. What is one of the reasons why people get overweight?

- A. Hunger.
- B. Poor diets.
- C. Diets with vegetables.
- D. Eating too much fruit.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段第三句“Experts said poor diets and lack of physical activity were the main reasons for the rising number of overweight people.”可知,专家指出,饮食不健康和缺乏锻炼是超重人数增加的主要原因。故选 B。

15. Which of the following can be the best title for the text?

- A. It's Important to Have a Balanced Diet

- B. How Can We Lose Weight and Keep Fit?
 C. Is It Necessary for Us to Eat Fresh Vegetables?
 D. Nearly One Third of People in the World Are Overweight

D 标题归纳题。文章首句便指出世界上有近三分之一的人口超重,后文围绕此话题展开讨论。故 Nearly One Third of People in the World Are Overweight 适合作为文章标题。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

A Diet Without Enough Protein Can Cause Depression

Depression is a condition so common, the World Health Organization (WHO) calls it “a leading cause of disability”.

Difficulty in falling asleep, loss of appetite, and loss of ability to concentrate are just a few of the other effects of depression. WHO estimates that worldwide, at any one time, 350 million people suffer from the condition. While life events such as the loss of a spouse or a job may create a happening of depression, many cases come from within and are not caused by a life event.

Now scientists are working on a new aspect of cure: nutrition. 16 *Indian Journal of Psychiatry* reports that both before and during a happening of depression, those with the condition will show a “poor appetite...” 17 Many cases of depression, if not most cases, affect those who don't eat properly.

So what does protein have to do with all this? It all comes down to amino acids (氨基酸). Proteins are made up of amino acids, chemicals known as the “building blocks of life”. There are 20 different amino acids. 18

Both the human brain and nervous system use amino acids as a substance that creates a signal from one brain cell to another or one nerve cell to another, thus relaying information between the cells. What is the final result then? 19

Since amino acids make up protein, a diet which lacks protein will cause weaker communication

between the brain cells. This lessens the signal being sent from one brain cell to the next during a thought. 20 This is why depression can often express itself as anger or aggression.

- A. The ultimate effect is how we think.
 B. Don't ruin your appetite by eating between meals.
 C. Skipping meals itself can create a depressed mood.
 D. A new research suggests that nutrition can lessen some of the risks of depression.
 E. India is perhaps the world's leader in researching the connection between diet and depression.
 F. Many of them are made by the human body, but nine others, the “essential” amino acids, must be eaten in one's diet.
 G. The process can lead to twisted signals, which can not only lead to depression, but also, according to many scientists, aggression.

答案: 16~20 ECFAG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

In February last year, my wife lost her job. Just as suddenly, the owner of the Green House, where I worked as a manager, 21 a heart attack. His family announced that they were going to close the business because no one in the family wanted to run it. Things looked pretty 22. My wife and I read the 23 in the newspaper each day.

Then one morning, as I was hanging a going-out-of-business sign at the Green House, the door opened and 24 walked a customer. She was an office manager whose company had just moved into the 25 office park on the edge of the town. She was 26 some potted flowers to place in the reception areas in offices. “I don't know anything about 27,” she said. “I am sure in a few weeks, they'll all be 28.” While I was helping her 29 her goods, my mind was racing and an idea 30 me. Perhaps as many as a dozen firms had recently opened offices in the new office park and there were several hundred more acres with construction (建造) work 31.

I drove up to the office park after the woman left. By 6 o'clock that evening, I had signed agreements with

seven companies, which would 32 plants at the Green House and 33 me a fee to look after them.

Within a week, I worked out an agreement to buy the Green House from the owner's family. 34, business increased rapidly because of our efforts.

Now we are proud to be the 35 of the Green House.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。一家花店因老板突发心脏病去世而面临倒闭。一次偶然的的机会,在这家花店工作的作者使花店起死回生,并成为新任老板。

21. A. recovered from B. lived with
C. died of D. dealt with

C 根据下文“no one in the family wanted to run it”和第四段中的“Within a week, I worked out an agreement to buy the Green House from the owner's family.”可推知,原来的老板不再经营此店了。结合选项可推断,原老板“死于”心脏病,故选 C。

22. A. common B. terrible
C. easy D. dangerous

B 根据上文的“my wife lost her job”以及“我”工作的花店也要关张可推知,情况很糟糕。terrible 意为“糟糕的;可怕的”,符合语境,故选 B。

23. A. stories B. comments
C. reports D. advertisements

D 根据上文可知,妻子失去了工作,而“我”也面临失业的风险,由此可推知,作者和妻子会着急地找工作,而根据常识,工作在报纸上是通过广告的形式发布的。advertisement 意为“广告”,符合语境,故选 D。

24. A. in B. out
C. away D. back

A 根据下文顾客与作者的交谈可知,这位顾客走进了花店。方位副词 in 位于句首使用了完全倒装。故选 A。

25. A. same B. free
C. safe D. new

D 根据第二段最后一句“Perhaps as many as a dozen firms had recently opened offices in the new office park...”中的“new”可知,此处应选 D。

26. A. looking for B. watching over

C. staring at D. spying on

A 根据下文“I don't know anything about... in a few weeks, they'll all be 28.”可推知,她正在找花。look for 意为“寻找”,符合语境,故选 A。

27. A. plants B. companies
C. signs D. bargains

A 根据上文“potted flowers”和第三段中的“By 6 o'clock that evening, I had signed agreements with seven companies, which would 32 plants at the Green House”可推知,这位顾客在为所买的植物担忧。plant 意为“植物”,符合语境,故选 A。

28. A. missing B. shut
C. dead D. cheap

C 根据上文的“I don't know anything about 27”和第三段中的“33 me a fee to look after them”可知,买花的顾客担心花会死掉。dead 意为“死的”,符合语境,故选 C。

29. A. save B. select
C. change D. collect

B 根据上文中的“She was 26 some potted flowers to place in the reception areas in offices.”可推知,作者在帮她选花。select 意为“挑选”,符合语境,故选 B。

30. A. hit B. led
C. informed D. reminded

A 根据上文的“my mind was racing”和下文“Perhaps as many as a dozen firms had recently opened offices in the new office park and there were several hundred more acres with construction (建造)...”可推知,作者思绪万千,突然有了一个想法。an idea hit me 意为“我突然有了一个想法”,与语境相符,故选 A。

31. A. under repair B. under way
C. in use D. in danger

B 根据上文的“the new office park”可推知,此处意为“还有几百英亩的土地正在建设中”。under way 意为“在进行中”,符合语境,故选 B。

32. A. water B. buy
C. provide D. grow

B 结合女顾客的经历可推知,新办公园区的公

司会从花店买(buy)花,故选 B。

33. A. pay B. raise
C. charge D. lend

A 根据上文的“had signed agreements”和下文的“a fee to look after them”可知,作者和多家公司签订了购买和养护合同,故这些公司需要付费。pay 意为“支付”,符合语境,故选 A。

34. A. Generally B. Obviously
C. Suddenly D. Fortunately

D 根据空后的“business increased rapidly”可推知,作者认为自己很“幸运”,故选 D。

35. A. customers B. advertisers
C. owners D. employees

C 根据第四段中的“I worked out an agreement to buy the Green House from the owner's family”可知,作者和妻子现在是花店的主人,故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Kung Pao Chicken is a traditional Chinese dish and famous for its richness and variety and regarded by many as the most popular Chinese dish internationally. You can find it in almost any Chinese restaurant overseas. Its **36. popularity** (popular) has made it a name card for Chinese cuisine (菜肴). **37. Its** (It) flavour combines sour, sweetness and spiciness (辣), with the first two as the major ones. It's a good choice for the feast on Spring Festival Eve, **38. when** most Chinese families enjoy time together.

Kung Pao Chicken is a dish from Sichuan cuisine, **39. but/yet** it originated from Lu cuisine in Shandong Province. The dish is believed to be the creation of Ding Baozhen, **40. an** official during the Qing Dynasty. Ding **41. served** (serve) as a leader in Shandong Province and later in Sichuan Province. He favoured peanuts and spicy food, so he improved the Shandong dish “Jiang Bao Chicken” by **42. adding** (add) pepper to it. After he came to Sichuan, the dish was popularised.

The dish spreads so **43. widely** (wide) that it's been localised in various places. Some even use meat instead of chicken **44. to cook** (cook) this dish.

When it went to the West, the people there also improved it according **45. to** their own preferences.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假如你们学校英语爱好者俱乐部对“良好饮食习惯”这一话题进行讨论,请根据下列提示,用英语写一篇 80 词左右的发言稿。内容要点应包括:

部分同学的饮食习惯	良好的饮食习惯	个人看法
不吃早餐 爱吃零食 偏食 饮食过度	饮食多样化 饮食定时定量	重要性:有助于 身体健康

注意:1. 发言稿必须包括所有内容要点,可适当发挥;
2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:偏食 be particular about food;零食 snack

Dear friends,

As we all know, we are what we eat. Therefore, it's very important for us to form healthy eating habits. _____

That's all. Thank you!

【参考范文】

Dear friends,

As we all know, we are what we eat. Therefore, it's very important for us to form healthy eating habits. However, bad eating habits are still very common among us students. Some of us often go to school without breakfast; some like to have snacks; some are particular about food, and others eat or drink too much. All these bad habits will surely do harm to our health.

To keep fit, we should have a healthy diet, which generally includes proper amounts of fish, meat, vegetables, fruit as well as main food. Besides, we'd better have meals regularly.

In my opinion, we should try to develop healthy eating habits to build up a strong figure. Only in this way can we have enough energy to study better.

That's all. Thank you!

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I sat at the breakfast table with my four-year-old son, Matthew — trying to ignore the ache in my stomach. “Mama, want to play?” “Not today, baby.” I shook my head. These days I could barely get out of bed. I was still recovering from a surgery. I hoped for strength and happiness. But the future seemed so hopeless.

Suddenly, Matthew jumped up from his spot on the kitchen floor. “Bird!” he shouted, rushing to our courtyard. Sure enough, there was a white dove seated in a rubber tree. It sat there for a few moments, and then flew away. Strangely, I’d never seen one in our neighbourhood before.

When I dragged myself to the kitchen the next morning, the dove was back. This time with a mate carrying twigs (嫩枝). “Look, Matthew,” I said, pointing to the tree. “They’re going to make a nest.” The doves flew in and out of the courtyard all week, building on top of the rubber tree.

Matthew could hardly contain his excitement. Every morning, he’d run into the kitchen and take his spot by the sliding glass door talking to the birds while they worked. His enthusiasm was influential. As much as I was grieving (悲伤), I couldn’t help but look forward to the doves’ visits too.

Then it all went wrong. The courtyard was a safe enough spot for a nest, but the rubber tree’s branch, thin leaves were far from stable. One night, a strong wind blew, throwing the doves’ nest to the ground. I heard the twigs break apart.

I surveyed the damage. Nothing good ever lasts. I wouldn’t blame the doves if they never came back. But they returned. And they paid no attention to the pile of sticks that had once been their nest. They started again from scratch. Again, though, the wind destroyed all their hard work. The next day, and the

next, they renewed their efforts, as if nothing had happened.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I knew I had to do something. _____

“It works! The birds are back!” Matthew announced. _____

【参考范文】

I knew I had to do something. The white dove and its mate had given me something to look forward to, even in my darkest days. Now I was going to help them in return. I woke up the following morning with a plan. There was only an hour before the doves usually made their visits. I hammered a shelf into the wall next to the rubber tree and covered it with leaves to make it look like a tree. Then Matthew and I stood by the sliding glass door, waiting and hoping.

“It works! The birds are back!” Matthew announced. There they were sitting on top of the shelf, adding some twigs to the new nest despite damage from the strong wind. Three weeks later, we watched three chicks break free from their shells. “Chirp, chirp!” Matthew sang. I held him close and kissed him, feeling more positive and hopeful than I had in months. I realised all around me, life went on. And it was filled with wonders and surprises that I couldn’t even imagine.

Unit 2

Let's celebrate!

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过略读快速把握课文内容，准确理解和阐释标题的含义；
3. 初步了解一些不同类型的节日及节日文化，并进行讨论，思考人们庆祝节日的原因。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. participate *v.* 参加, 参与
2. inequality *n.* (社会上的) 不平等
3. novel *n.* (长篇) 小说
4. limitless *adj.* 无限的
5. complain *v.* 抱怨, 不满, 发牢骚
6. warning *n.* 警告, 警示, 告诫
7. honour *v.* 向……表示敬意
8. decoration *n.* 装饰物
9. freedom *n.* 自由, 自由权利
10. regular *adj.* 频繁的, 经常的
11. regardless of 不管, 不顾
12. regard... as... 把……视作……

13. be based on 以……为基础

14. as well as 也, 还; 和……一样好

(二)阅读词汇

1. literature *n.* 文学
2. lunar *adj.* 月球的
3. fantasy *n.* 幻想, 想象
4. dragon *n.* 龙
5. envelope *n.* 信封
6. poet *n.* 诗人
7. harvest *n.* 收成
8. vote *v.* 投票, 表决
9. pole *n.* (行星的) 地极, (尤指地球的) 北极或南极
10. roof *n.* (建筑物、汽车、帐篷等的) 顶, 顶部
11. starving *adj.* 挨饿的, 即将饿死的
12. be addressed to sb. 写信给某人

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas
Part 1 (Para. 1)	Many people still remember the 1. magic of Father Christmas from when they were children. As parents, they try to keep it 2. alive for their children.
Part 2 (Para. 2)	The book, <i>Letters from Father Christmas</i> written by J.R.R. Tolkien, could be the 3. perfect book for those who 4. regard Christmas as a special time of year. The letters were Tolkien's 5. way of keeping Father Christmas alive for his four children for more than twenty years.
Part 3 (Para. 3)	Every Christmas, an 6. envelope with a North Pole stamp was addressed 7. to Tolkien's children. They must have been very 8. excited as they opened it.

Parts	Main ideas
Part 4 (Para. 4)	The letters told wonderful stories about Father Christmas's life and 9. adventures at the North Pole.
Part 5 (Para. 5)	<i>Letters from Father Christmas</i> tells us that we can all share the true 10. spirit of giving at Christmas time.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Who may be most interested in the book *Letters from Father Christmas*?
 - People who like reading novels.
 - People who like playing games.
 - People who like reading books about festivals.
 - People who consider Christmas as a special time.
- Which of the following statements about J.R.R. Tolkien is NOT true according to Paragraph 2?
 - J.R.R. Tolkien has four children.
 - J. R. R. Tolkien is very famous in French literature.
 - J.R.R. Tolkien is the author of *The Lord of the Rings*.
 - J.R.R. Tolkien wrote letters to his children for over twenty years.
- What topic might be talked about in the letters?
 - Father Christmas's life at the North Pole.
 - J.R.R. Tolkien's daily life at the North Pole.
 - Father Christmas's warnings to the children.
 - Father Christmas's complaints about his helpers.
 - ①②
 - ①③
 - ①④
 - ③④

答案: 1~3 DBC

II. 课文语法填空

Maybe *Letters from Father Christmas* is the perfect book for those **1. who** regard Christmas as a special time of year. The author, J.R.R. Tolkien, is one of the most famous **2. names** (name) in English literature.

Every Christmas, an envelope with a North Pole stamp arrived. It **3. was addressed** (address) to Tolkien's children. Inside, they would find a handwritten letter from Father Christmas. The letters were also **4. beautifully** (beautiful) illustrated—each must have taken its true author, Tolkien, a long time **5. to complete** (complete).

In one letter, Father Christmas complained **6. about** how he could not stop his helpers **7. playing** (play) games with the toys instead of wrapping them up. Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual **8. warnings** (warn) to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good. The letters did, however, change as Tolkien's children got **9. older** (old).

By expressing love for his children in such **10. a** special way, Tolkien may indeed have been the real Father Christmas.

III. 阅读升华

What kind of true spirit can we learn from the book *Letters from Father Christmas*?
Giving.

课后素养评价(六)

I. 阅读理解

In 1907, Anna Jarvis began a campaign to convince lawmakers to choose a special day to honour America's mothers. Many individual states began celebrating Mother's Day in 1911. However, it was not until 1914 that President Woodrow Wilson finally managed to persuade the US Congress to set aside the second Sunday of May to honour mums.

The former US President announced it as a day to publicly express our love and respect for the mothers of the country. Little did he know that Americans would agree with his wishes by changing Mother's Day into the third biggest customer spending event of the year—right after winter holidays and the back-to-school season.

This year, Americans expect to spend \$21.4 billion, or about \$172.22 per person. This is slightly higher than last year's record of \$21.2 billion and is almost a 60% increase in spending since 2009. So what do we spend all the money on?

According to a survey carried out by the National Retail Foundation, a large amount of the money will be spent on jewellery (\$4.2 billion), meals, and other outdoor activities (\$4.1 billion). Flowers, accessories, and electronics (电子设备) are the next favourite gift choices, with about \$2 billion spent on each. CDs, personal services like spa days, and housewares (家庭用品) are some of the other gifts that mums receive from their loved ones on this special day.

Not sure what to get for Mum? A recent survey showed that mothers prefer gifts that are personal. This means that you do not have to spend a large sum of money to make your mum happy. A handmade card or a photo of a special memory you shared with her will do the trick. What's more, set aside all your electronics and spend the day just laughing with your mum. Besides making her day, it will also be fun!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了母亲节的由来以及美国人庆祝母亲节的方式。

1. Who set up Mother's Day as a national holiday in America?

- A. Anna Jarvis.
- B. The former US President.
- C. The US Congress.
- D. Woodrow Wilson.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“President Woodrow Wilson finally managed to persuade the US Congress to set aside the second Sunday of May to honour mums”可知,最终是由美国国会正式将母亲节设立为一个全国性的节日。

2. What can we infer about Mother's Day in America?

- A. It is the third most important holiday in America.
- B. Business people especially welcome the holiday.
- C. This holiday is only popular among young Americans.
- D. Americans like making gifts for mums better on this day.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,每年的母亲节美国人都会花大量的钱购买礼物,所以商人们自然非常期待母亲节的到来。

3. What are people most expected to do on Mother's Day?

- A. Buy gifts for mums.
- B. Prepare a surprise for mums.
- C. Take mums to shopping centres.
- D. Enjoy staying together with mums.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“set aside all your electronics and spend the day just laughing with your mum”可知,全身心地陪伴母亲一天会是一件相当不错的事情。

II. 七选五

It feels good to buy gifts for others. So what's the best way to manage your money, shop wisely and smartly this holiday season? Susan Beacham has

recently given kids some money management skills.

“My first tip is to make a list and check it twice. Start by writing down whom to include in your gift-giving,” says Beacham. “Then put the amount of money next to each name and add up. 1 If not, make changes.”

Take the list with you to the store. “2 If you’ve just spent \$30 on someone you had planned to spend \$25 on, you’re going to have to spend \$5 less on somebody else,” says Beacham. The key is staying within the limits you’ve set for yourself.

How to get the best deals? Beacham suggests skipping the supermarkets. 3 Things sold there often cost less than those at traditional stores. “You’ll be able to save a lot more money,” says Beacham.

4 Beacham points out that some of the best presents are free. They are gifts from the heart. “Kids can give time or talent,” says Susan Beacham.

For parents, write a note telling them how special they are to you. For a friend, you may just create a work of art, like a poem or a drawing. For people in your community, show that you care by volunteering. 5 Giving your time to help others may end up being the best gift of all!

A. Shop online instead.

B. Do you have enough money?

C. Make sure that you do the maths.

D. Choose gifts with practical value.

E. Find out who needs your help and what you can do.

F. It’s also important to praise the fine taste of the gift-giver.

G. And don’t forget—not everyone needs a store-bought gift.

答案:1~5 BCAGE

【微点写作】一封表达看法的书信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 相反,我们可以用其他方式来庆祝我们的节日,而不是燃放烟花。

On the contrary, we can celebrate our holiday in other ways instead of setting off fireworks.

2. 近年来,大多数城市的人们不被允许在春节期间燃放烟花和鞭炮。

For recent years, people in most cities are not allowed to light fireworks and crackers during the Spring Festival.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,了解书评类文章的特点,获取文中介绍作品的关键信息;
3. 基于文章内容联系生活,运用与话题相关的语言知识,描述自己所熟悉的传统节日;
4. 了解《圣诞老人的来信》一书所赞颂的给予和奉献精神,加深对节日意义的理解,增强国家认同感和文化传播意识。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. A **poet** is a person who writes poems. 诗人

2. The poor **harvest** caused prices to rise sharply. 收成

3. Nearly two-thirds of this group **voted** for Buchanan. 投票

4. Write your letter and seal (封住) it in a blank **envelope**. 信封

5. Novels, plays, and poetry are referred to as **literature**, especially when they are considered to be good or important. 文学

6. If you say that you are **starving**, you mean that

you are very hungry. 挨饿的

7. With the temperature rising, **polar** ice will melt at a faster rate. 极地的

8. The **roof** of a building is the covering on top of it that protects the people and things inside from the weather. (建筑物的)顶,顶部

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>honour</u> <i>v.</i> 向……表示敬意	<u>honourable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可敬的
<u>decoration</u> <i>n.</i> 装饰物	<u>decorate</u> <i>v.</i> 装饰, 布置
<u>freedom</u> <i>n.</i> 自由, 自由权利	<u>free</u> <i>adj.</i> 自由的
<u>participate</u> <i>v.</i> 参加, 参与	<u>participation</u> <i>n.</i> 参加
	<u>participant</u> <i>n.</i> 参与者, 参加者
<u>inequality</u> <i>n.</i> (社会上的) 不平等	<u>equal</u> <i>adj.</i> 平等的
	<u>equally</u> <i>adv.</i> 平等地
	<u>equality</u> <i>n.</i> 平等, 相等
<u>limitless</u> <i>adj.</i> 无限的	<u>limit</u> <i>n.</i> 边界, 限度 <i>v.</i> 限制, 限定
	<u>limited</u> <i>adj.</i> 有限的
<u>regular</u> <i>adj.</i> 频繁的, 经常的	<u>regularly</u> <i>adv.</i> 定期地, 经常
<u>complain</u> <i>v.</i> 抱怨, 不满, 发牢骚	<u>complaint</u> <i>n.</i> 抱怨
<u>warning</u> <i>n.</i> 警告, 警示, 告诫	<u>warn</u> <i>v.</i> 警告
<u>starving</u> <i>adj.</i> 挨饿的, 即将饿死的	<u>starve</u> <i>v.</i> 挨饿, 饿死
	<u>starvation</u> <i>n.</i> 挨饿, 饿死

III. 补全短语

1. regard... as ... 把……视作……
2. regardless of 不管, 不顾
3. complain about 抱怨
4. take place 发生; 举行
5. in memory of 纪念, 追念
6. be known as 作为……而出名
7. be made into 被制成……
8. instead of 代替; 而不是
9. wrap up (用纸、布等)包, 裹
10. get together 聚集在一起

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: That is why...

That is why Letters from Father Christmas could be the perfect book for those who regard Christmas as a special time of year.

那就是为什么《圣诞老人的来信》这本书, 对于那些把圣诞节视为一年中特殊时刻的人来说, 是一本完美的书。

2. 句型公式: must have done

The children must have been very excited as they opened it.

孩子们打开信时一定很兴奋。

3. 句型公式: that 引导同位语从句

Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good.

有趣的是, 信里并没有那些常见的对孩子们的警告, 比如如果他们做得不好, 他们就可能收不到礼物之类的话。

4. 句型公式: do 强调谓语动词

The letters did, however, change as Tolkien's children got older...

不过, 随着托尔金的孩子渐渐长大, 信的内容的确发生了变化……

任务型课堂

1. honour *v.* 向……表示敬意; 尊敬 *n.* 尊敬, 荣誉

(教材原文) Freedom Day is to **honour** an event.
自由日是为了纪念一个事件。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **was honoured as** the best player in his team.
他被誉为是队里最好的选手。

I **feel honoured to be** invited to give you a lecture on how to improve English reading ability.

= **It's an honour for me to be** invited to give you a lecture on how to improve English reading ability.
应邀给你们做关于如何提高英语阅读能力的讲座, 我深感荣幸。

This monument was built **in honour of** those brave soldiers.

这块纪念碑是为了纪念那些勇敢的战士们而修建的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)honour sb. for 因……而尊敬某人 be honoured _____ 被尊为…… be/feel honoured to do sth. 很荣幸做某事 (2)have the honour of doing sth. 有幸做某事 It's an honour for sb. to do sth. 对某人来说很荣幸做某事。 in honour _____ sb. = in sb.'s honour 为了纪念某人;为了向某人表示敬意
探究结论	(1)as (2)of

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

- ①His colleague honoured him for his bravery.
- ② I feel greatly honoured to give (give) a presentation about the Mid-Autumn Festival, one of the most important traditional Chinese festivals.
- ③ Yuan Longping is honoured as the “father of hybrid rice”.
- ④I do think it is a great honour to take part in the activity.

(2)完成句子

With the Dragon Boat Festival approaching, we are planning to hold a dragon boat race in honour of the famous poet, Qu Yuan.

随着端午节的临近,我们计划举行一场龙舟比赛,以纪念著名诗人屈原。

2. decoration n. [C]装饰物 [U](室内的)装饰,装潢

(教材原文) People prepare **decorations** with flowers and dance around maypoles.

人们准备鲜花装饰,并且围着五朔节花柱跳舞。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Red is a lucky colour for Chinese people, so during the Spring Festival, many people **decorate** their houses **with** red decorations.

红色是中国人的幸运色,因此在春节期间,很多人用红色装饰物来装饰他们的房子。

During the National Day holiday, the streets **were**

decorated with/by coloured flags.

国庆节假期期间,大街上挂满了彩旗。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	decorate v. 装饰,布置,装潢;点缀 decorate... _____ ... 用……装饰(某物、某处) be decorated _____ /by 装饰着……
探究结论	with; with

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

- ①He decorated his room with pictures of all his favourite sports figures.
- ②The decoration (decorate) of their new house is very modern and fashionable.

(2)完成句子

All the houses in the village are decorated with/by red lanterns to celebrate the Spring Festival.

村里所有的房子都用红灯笼装饰,以庆祝春节。

3. inequality n. (社会上的)不平等

(教材原文) It celebrates the end of racial **inequality** in the country.

它庆祝该国种族不平等的结束。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I'm not sure whether he **is equal to** the job.

我不确定他是否能胜任这份工作。

As an all-round athlete, he **is without equal** (= **has no equal**).

他作为一名全能运动员,无人能比。

He only wants freedom, justice and **equality**.

他只想要自由、公正和平等。

Your personal circumstances are **equally** important.

你的个人情况也同样重要。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)inequality in... 在……方面不平等 inequality between... and... ……和……之间的不平等 (2)equal v. 等于,与……相等;比得上 <i>adj.</i> 相等的;能胜任的;平等的 <i>n.</i> [C]同等的人;相等物 equal sb./sth. (in + n.) (在……方面)比得上某人/某物
------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

续表

探究要点	be equal _____ (doing) sth. 能胜任(做)某事; 比得上某物(equal 作形容词时后面的 to 是介词) be without equal (=have no equal) 无与伦比 (3)equality <i>n.</i> [U]相等; 平等 (4) _____ <i>adv.</i> 同样地; 相等地
探究结论	(2)to (4)equally

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Though they are equal to him in height, no one can equal him in playing basketball.② When it comes to wildlife protection, all species should be treated equally (equal).③ Ensuring every child equal rights to education is where the key to the elimination of inequality (equal) across the world lies.④ I always think that a great conversation should be made up of equality (equal) and trust.

(2) 根据汉语提示完成句子

① His paintings are without equal (首屈一指) in the Western world.② I can serve as a volunteer to guide the visitors around the gallery and I am convinced that I am equal to (能胜任) the job.**4. warning n.** 警告, 警示, 告诫

(教材原文) Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual **warnings** to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good.

有趣的是, 信里并没有那些常见的对孩子们的警告, 比如如果他们做得不好, 他们就可能收不到礼物之类的话。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The leader **warned** us **of** the serious situation.
领导提醒我们形势严峻。

She would sometimes **warn** me **to be** careful of certain persons; often, she turned out to be right.
有时候, 她会提醒我提防某些人, 结果证明她经常是对的。

The doctor **warned** the patient **against smoking** any longer.

= The doctor **warned** the patient **not to smoke** any longer.

医生警告病人不要再吸烟。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	warn <i>v.</i> 提醒, 警告 warn sb. _____ sth. 警告某人当心某事 warn sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事 warn sb. against _____ sth. = warn sb. not _____ sth. 警告某人不要做某事 warn sb. that... 提醒某人……
探究结论	of; doing; to do

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Mrs Smith warned her son never to drive (drive) after drinking.② We've just heard a warning (warn) on the radio that a typhoon may be on the way.③ I tried to warn him of the danger, but he is determined to get his own way.

(2) 一句多译

他的父母警告他不要在河里游泳。

① His parents warned him against swimming in the river.② His parents warned him not to swim in the river.**5. do/does/did 表强调**

(教材原文) The letters **did**, however, change as Tolkien's children got older...

不过, 随着托尔金的孩子渐渐长大, 信的内容的确发生了变化……

[句式分析] 本句中助动词 did 起强调作用, 强调谓语句动词 change, 意为“的确”。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **did** come but soon went back.
他的确来过, 但很快就回去了。

He **does** look like his father.
他看上去的确像他的爸爸。

Do be quiet for a moment.

一定要安静一会儿。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	“do/does/did+动词原形”结构用来强调谓语动词的一般现在时和一般过去时且只对肯定的谓语动词进行强调。在一般现在时中,do 有人称的变化,第三人称单数用 _____; 在一般过去时中,do 变成_____。在祈使句中,“do+动词原形”往往不表示命令,而表示强烈的请求或客气的语气。
探究 结论	does; did

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He does like (like) the film *12 Citizens* in all the movies.

② She did (do) tell me about her address, but I forgot all about it.

(2) 完成句子

① We do hope there will be more meaningful activities in the coming new term.

我们确实希望在即将到来的新学期里会有更多有意义的活动。

② With bravery and perseverance, I did make great progress.

有了勇气和毅力,我确实取得了很大的进步。

课后素养评价(七)

I. 单词拼写

1. They honour (向……表示敬意) the scientist with a seat at the head of the table.
2. Du Fu is a famous poet (诗人) in the Tang Dynasty.
3. Today we have the freedom (自由) to decide our own futures.
4. During the Spring Festival, we can see many red decorations (装饰物) in every home.
5. In your opinion, what led to these inequalities (不平等) is income.
6. I will devote my limited life to the limitless (无限的) job of serving the people.
7. People often complain (抱怨) about traffic jams in big cities.
8. The man paid no attention to warning(s) (告诫) about the dangers of smoking.
9. Balanced diets are just as important as regular (定期的) exercise in our daily life.
10. They enjoy participating (参加) in a wide variety of social activities.

II. 短语填空

take place; regardless of; be known as; be regarded as; instead of

1. They are known as “four new great inventions of modern China”.

2. Do you know when the accident took place?

3. Tom does not feel well today, so I will attend the meeting instead of him.

4. Regardless of the risk of getting infected, she was determined to set off for the city to fight against the terrible disease.

5. As we all know, Yuan Longping is regarded as the “father of hybrid rice”.

III. 按要求完成句子

1. The doctors warn us not to go to crowded places. (同义句转换)
→ The doctors warn us against going to crowded places.
2. Your friend complained to me about your dishonesty. (强调谓语动词)
→ Your friend did complain to me about your dishonesty.
3. It is impossible that Tom went there yesterday. (同义句转换)
→ Tom couldn't have gone there yesterday.
4. We lost the game, because we hadn't made a full preparation. (同义句转换)
→ We hadn't made a full preparation. This is why we lost the game. (why)
→ The reason why we lost the game was that we hadn't made a full preparation. (reason)

IV. 完形填空

I was walking in a park on a cool autumn morning. The view was charming, and a pleasant breeze (微风) was kissing my face 1.

Then I saw a mother and her little baby. The mother wore 2 clothes that seemed to be found in a dustbin—How easy it is for fortunate people to 3 away things they don't need, and they do this 4 thinking of the unfortunate! She was holding her baby, protecting her from the morning 5 and expecting some money from strangers so that she could 6 food for both of them. It was then that I realised how 7 I had been in my whole life for living a rich life.

Then a man 8 some money and food to the mother, and as she took them, her face was 9 as if she had been the happiest person in the world. And why not, she could now 10 her baby at least for the day.

Actually happiness doesn't 11 luck, your financial or your physical conditions, but only on yourself. It is just a 12 in your hands. If you choose to be happy, 13 can stop you from it.

How 14 it is that one observation can change your life! Life has a lot to offer if you observe very closely. One who observes can 15 real happiness.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。幸福是一种选择,与经济状况、身体状况等没有必然的联系。

1. A. strongly B. gradually
C. gently D. normally

C 根据上文“a pleasant breeze (微风)”可知,微风应是轻柔地(gently)吹过作者的脸颊。

2. A. expensive B. wonderful
C. perfect D. dirty

D 根据空后的“clothes that seemed to be found in a dustbin”可知,这位母亲的衣服似乎是从垃圾桶里捡的,因此衣服是脏的(dirty)。

3. A. move B. push
C. throw D. send

C 根据空后的“things they don't need”可推知,这里是说把不需要的东西扔掉(throw)。

4. A. for B. in
C. within D. without

D 根据上下文可推断出,本句指幸运的人很轻易地把他们不需要的东西扔掉,丝毫没有(without)考虑到不幸的人。

5. A. cold B. light
C. sound D. fact

A 开头提到一个凉爽的秋天的清晨,因此可推断出母亲抱紧孩子是为了不让其受凉(cold)。

6. A. save B. buy
C. pick D. share

B 根据上文可知,这位母亲想要钱是为了买(buy)吃的。

7. A. wealthy B. special
C. successful D. lucky

D 对比这位母亲的状况,作者感到自己很幸运(lucky)。

8. A. donated B. lent
C. promised D. sold

A 根据上文可知,这位母亲在乞讨,所以这个男的应该是捐赠(donated)给那位母亲一些钱和食物。

9. A. sinking B. shining
C. shaking D. falling

B 根据下文可知,母亲受到帮助后因为高兴而脸上绽放光彩(shining)。

10. A. improve B. protect
C. deliver D. feed

D 这位母亲高兴是因为至少这一天可以有东西喂(feed)孩子了。

11. A. go on B. come out
C. depend on D. turn out

C 根据上下文可知,作者受到启发,认为幸福不是取决于(depend on)运气、经济状况或身体状况,而是取决于自己。

12. A. symbol B. strength
C. voice D. choice

D 根据下文中的“If you choose to be happy”可知,作者想表明:幸福是一种选择(choice)。

13. A. nothing B. something
C. anything D. everything

A 如果你选择幸福,那就没有任何东西 (nothing)能够阻止你感到幸福。

14. A. comforting B. amazing
C. disappointing D. satisfying

B 留意生活中的点点滴滴会改变人的生活,这是令人惊奇的(amazing)事情。

15. A. invent B. lose
C. discover D. ignore

C 认真观察生活的人会发现(discover)真正的幸福。

【微点写作】一封表达看法的书信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 应该采取措施制止这种情况。
Measures should be taken to stop this.
- 游客应接受遵守公共秩序的培训。
Tourists should be trained to obey public order.
- 应该制定法律来惩罚在公共场所不守规矩的人。
Laws should be made to punish badly-behaved people in public places.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

- 了解情态动词表示推测的基本用法,增强使用情态动词的意识,学会在真实语境中正确运用情态动词;
- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 初步了解“黑色星期五”这一节日,拓展知识的广度;
- 总结归纳节日期间各种庆祝活动的相关表达,学会描述节日;
- 了解如何礼貌得体地发出邀请和接受邀请。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- The magazine was packaged in a **fancy** plastic case with attractive graphics (图案). 别致的
- I showed my pass to the security guard and he **waved** me through. 挥手
- We go to the square and enjoy various **lanterns** there every year on the Lantern Festival. 灯笼
- Dessert** is something sweet, which you eat at the end of a meal. 甜点
- The management is understood to be very unwilling to agree to this **request**. 要求,请求
- Atlanta was chosen to be the **host** of the 1996 Olympic Games. 东道主
- Sean is really a very sweet **guy** and has many talents. (尤指青年)男子
- An **occasion** is a time when something happens. 场合,时刻

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>indicate</u> <i>v.</i> 表明,显示	<u>indication</u> <i>n.</i> 表明;标示;象征

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>attract</u> <i>v.</i> 吸引,引起……的兴趣	<u>attractive</u> <i>adj.</i> 吸引人的,有魅力的 <u>attraction</u> <i>n.</i> 吸引力;具有吸引力的事物或人
<u>competition</u> <i>n.</i> 比赛,竞赛	<u>compete</u> <i>v.</i> 比赛,竞争 <u>competitive</u> <i>adj.</i> 竞争性的 <u>competitor</u> <i>n.</i> 竞争者;对手
<u>formal</u> <i>adj.</i> 正式的	<u>informal</u> <i>adj.</i> 非正式的

III. 补全短语

- put up 举起;张贴;供给……住宿
- be dressed as 装扮为……
- check out 检验;通过考核
- pay attention to 注意
- wave at 朝……挥手
- find out 找出,查明

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: spend (time) (in) doing...

I spent ages putting up all the balloons and flowers last night.

昨晚我花了很长时间,把所有的气球和花都装上去。

2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作后置定语

Look at those two guys dressed as chickens!

看那两个打扮成小鸡的家伙!

3. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Depending on regional customs, it may be acceptable to be 15 to 30 minutes late.

视地方风俗而定,迟到15至30分钟也许是可以接受的。

任务型课堂

1. request n. 请求,要求 v. (正式或礼貌地)要求,请求

(教材原文) What do the words in bold indicate: an order, a **request**, ability or possibility?

黑体单词表示什么:命令、请求、能力还是可能性?

一感 读句子感悟用法

The play was written by a famous writer **at the request of** a famous director.

这部剧本是一位著名的作家应一位著名导演的要求写的。

They **requested** a loan **from** the bank.

他们请求银行给他们一笔贷款。

My parents **requested me to learn** a second foreign language.

= My parents **requested that I (should) learn** a second foreign language.

我父母要求我再学一门外语。

It is requested that all members **(should) be** present at the party.

全体成员都被要求出席这次晚会。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) at one's request/at the request of sb. 应某人的要求
	(2) request sth. from sb. 向某人请求某物 request sb. _____ sth. 要求某人做某事 request that sb. _____ sth. 要求某人做某事 (从句用虚拟语气)
探究结论	It is requested that... (should) do sth. 据要求…… (2) to do; (should) do

名师点拨

request 后的宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句及 It is requested that... 从句中的谓语动词用虚拟语气,即“(should+)动词原形”。后接名词性从句,从句谓语动词用“(should+)动词原形”的其他动词;一个“坚持”:insist; 两道“命令”:order, command; 三条“建议”:suggest, advise, recommend; 四点“要求”:demand, request, require, ask。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① At your request, I am writing to give you some tips on how to learn Chinese well.

② Visitors are requested not to touch (touch) the exhibits.

③ The headmaster requested that we (should) make (make) full preparations for the coming final examination.

(2) 一句多译

老师要求所有学生准时参加明天举行的会议。

① The teacher requested all the students to attend the meeting to be held tomorrow on time.

② The teacher requested that all the students (should) attend the meeting to be held tomorrow on time.

2. attract v. 吸引,引起……的兴趣

(教材原文) The lantern fair **attracts** a lot of people, so it's one of the busiest times of year for the traffic police.

灯会吸引了很多人,所以这是一年中交通警察最繁忙的时候之一。

一感 读句子感悟用法

What first **attracted** me **to** her was her incredible experience of life.

最先吸引我的是她离奇的人生经历。

I tried to **attract his attention**, but he was still lost in thought.

我试图吸引他的注意力,但是他仍在沉思。

China **is attractive to** tourists for its beautiful scenery and historic sites.

中国优美的风景和历史古迹对旅游者很有吸引力。 Could you recommend some **tourist attractions** here?

你能推荐一些这里的旅游景点吗?

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	(1)attract sb. _____ sb./sth. 引起某人对某人/某物的注意 attract one's attention 吸引某人的注意 (2)_____ <i>adj.</i> 吸引人的,有吸引力的 be attractive _____ ... 对……有吸引力 (3)_____ <i>n.</i> 吸引;吸引人的事物;吸引力 a tourist attraction 旅游胜地
探究 结论	(1)to (2)attractive; to (3)attraction

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)用 attract 的适当形式填空

The tourist attraction is so attractive that it attracts a great many visitors every year.

(2)完成句子

①Bright colours are attractive to the children.
鲜艳的颜色对孩子们很有吸引力。

② It is not unusual for teenagers of your generation to be attracted to computer games and the online world.

对于你们这一代青少年来说,被电脑游戏和网络世界所吸引并不稀奇。

③ Miss Li began the class with an amusing English story, which attracted our attention at once.

李老师开始上课时讲了一个有趣的英语故事,立刻引起了我们的注意。

语法探究

情态动词(2)

「语法感知」

①That is why *Letters from Father Christmas* **could** be the perfect book...

②The children **must** have been very excited as they opened it.

③The letters were also beautifully illustrated—each **must** have taken its true author...

④In another letter, Father Christmas complained about how he **could** not stop his helpers...

⑤Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they **might** not...

⑥... we **can** all share the true spirit of giving at Christmas time.

1. 以上句子中,句①、句④和句⑥中的情态动词表能力。

2. 句⑤中的情态动词表可能性。

3. 句②和句③中的情态动词表猜测, must have done 的意思是“一定做过某事”。

「语法精讲」

一、can 表推测的用法

1. can 可以表推测,用于肯定句时,表示理论上的可能性,至于实际情况如何不作考虑,而且没有具体

的时间意义。其否定式 can't 是语气最强的否定推测,翻译为“不可能,一定不”;can 也可用于疑问句中表推测。

Learning English as a second language **can** be a painful experience.

把英语作为第二语言来学习可能是一种痛苦的经历。

You **can't** be hungry, for you had lunch only two hours ago.

你不可能饿,因为你两个小时前才吃完午饭。

2. can't/couldn't have done 表示对过去事实的推测,意为“不可能做过……”。can't 比 couldn't 的语气更强一些,但当主句的谓语动词是一般过去时的时候,从句要用 couldn't have done。could have done 还可以表示“过去本来能够做某事却没有做”,含有惋惜或责备的语气,意为“本来是可以……的”。

He **couldn't have watched** TV yesterday for he knew he would have an exam.

昨天他不可能看电视,因为他知道他快要考试了。

I **could have passed** the exam, but I was too careless.

本来我能够通过考试的,但是我太粗心。

二、may 和 might 表推测的用法

1. may 和 might 表推测时既可以用于肯定句,也可以用于否定句。用于肯定句时意为“可能”;否定式 may not/might not 意为“可能不”;might 的可能性比 may 更小,语气更委婉一些。

The little problems that we meet in our daily lives **may** be inspirations for great inventions.

我们在日常生活中遇到的小问题可能就是伟大发明的灵感。

If you have an office job, you **might not** be getting outdoors enough, and your health **might** suffer.

如果你在室内办公,你可能不经常到户外去,那么你的健康就有可能受到影响。

2. may/might have done 表示对过去事实不大肯定的推测,语气较弱,用于肯定句时表示“可能已经……”,否定式 may/might not have done 表示“可能还没……”。might have done 还可以表示“本来可能或可以做某事但没有做”,含有轻微的责备或遗憾口吻。

—What has happened to George?

—I don't know. He **may/might have got lost**.

——乔治发生了什么事?

——我不知道。他可能迷路了。

What a pity! Considering his ability and experience, he **might have done** better.

真遗憾!考虑到他的能力和经验,他本可以做得更好的。

三、must 表推测的用法

1. must 表推测时只用于肯定句,意为“一定”或“肯定”,所作出的推测几乎接近事实,语气最肯定。

He has been working all day. He **must** be very tired.

他工作了一整天。他肯定非常累。

2. must have done 表示对过去事实有把握的推测,语气最强,只用于肯定句,意为“肯定(已经)……”。

Harry is feeling uncomfortable. He **must have drunk** too much at the party last night.

哈里感觉不舒服,他肯定是在昨晚的聚会上喝多了。

「语法冲关」

I. 用适当的情态动词或所给动词的正确形式填空

1. My book is missing. Who could have taken it?
2. Since nobody gave him any help, he must have done the research on his own.
3. I got to the party at 6 pm, but there was no one there, so I needn't have arrived (arrive) so early.
4. This problem may/can lead to more serious ones if left unsolved.
5. You mustn't smoke in this part of the hospital. It's not allowed.
6. Mr White has gone to the library so he can't be in the office now.
7. They might be having a meeting, but I'm not sure.
8. You must come here on time, or you'll be fined next time.

II. 完成句子

1. They must have been to the Great Wall.
他们一定去过长城。
2. The work could have been finished yesterday, but the heavy rain kept us indoors all day.
这项工作昨天本可以完成的,可是一场大雨把我们困在了室内。
3. It may/might rain this afternoon. You had better take a raincoat with you.
今天下午可能会下雨。你最好随身带件雨衣。
4. Mr Smith can't have gone to Beijing, for I saw him in the library just now.
史密斯先生不可能去北京了,因为我刚才在图书馆看见他了。
5. Sorry, I'm late. I might have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.
对不起,我迟到了。我可能把闹钟关掉后又睡着了。

课后素养评价(八)

I. 选词填空

request; attract; decorate; indicate; put up;
formal; competition; host; wave at/to

- At such a formal party you shouldn't wear jeans.
- A survey of retired people has indicated that most of them are independent and enjoying life.
- I feel it a great honour to represent my class to take part in the group dancing competition.
- New Bedford hosts a number of lively festivals throughout the summer months.
- Smile and wave at/to people who pass you.
- Beijing attracts millions of tourists from all over the world every year.
- The names of the successful candidates (候选人) will be put up on the noticeboard.
- The workers requested/request that their working conditions should be further improved.
- My brother used to decorate his room with pictures of all his favourite sports figures.

II. 用适当的情态动词或括号内所给词的适当形式填空

- In crowded places like airports and railway stations, you must take care of your luggage.
- I may/might finish reading the book tomorrow, but I am not sure about it.
- What can she mean by saying that?
- According to today's weather report, it does not rain, so you needn't (not need) take the umbrella.
- You've been working all day. You must be very tired.
- You can take it home if you like it.
- (*The doorbell rings.*) I wonder who that is. It can not be Lisa. She's still in the library at this time.

- I don't think (not think) it's wise to spend too much money on clothes.
- Taking exercise and eating good food keep you healthy (heath).
- As/Since this question is of great importance, we will discuss it once again.

III. 阅读理解

Every festival has its own meaning. Labour Day, for example, celebrates the value of hard work. But somehow it now seems that while celebrating all festivals we just care about one thing—shopping. And that can be a big problem.

“In a way, over-consumption (过度消费) is the mother of all our environmental problems,” Kalle Lasn once told CNN. Lasn is the organiser of Buy Nothing Day, a day set up in Canada in 1992 to fight against unhealthy spending habits, and has now become an international event. It's held on the day, which is known as Black Friday—a famous shopping day in the US and Canada.

You can see the irony (讽刺) here.

Even though the idea of Buy Nothing Day was brought up 27 years ago, we seem to need it now more than ever. It's just as Lasn said, all the different kinds of dilemmas in our lives today—bad air quality, the reduction of forest areas, endangered animal species, and plastic bags found in the ocean—seem to be the same cause: over-consumption.

The latest example is the Singles' Day shopping craze of Nov. 11, which saw a new sales record. But as Nie Li, a campaigner at Greenpeace, told Reuters, “Record-setting over-consumption means record-setting waste.” And it was reported that one year the Singles' Day packages left more than

160,000 tons of waste, including plastic and cardboard. The *Collins Dictionary* has also just named “single-use” its Word of the Year, pointing out the problem that there're too many things we throw away after only using them once.

So, Buy Nothing Day might only be here for one day a year, but it's not just to remind us of a break from shopping on that day, but to change our lifestyle completely, focusing on fun “with people we care about” rather than wasting money on useless things.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了 Buy Nothing Day 以及它的设立对人们意义:不要把钱浪费在无用的东西上。

1. What's the author's purpose in writing the first paragraph?

- A. To express people's love for all festivals.
- B. To talk about the meaning of the festivals.
- C. To appreciate the value of the festivals.
- D. To introduce the topic of the passage.

D 写作意图题。本段先举例说明每个节日都有它自己的意义,又指出现在每个节日似乎都和购物有关,而购物可能会造成大问题,从而引出主题及下文内容。故第一段的作用是引出文章主题。

2. Why did Kalle Lasn organise Buy Nothing Day?

- A. To help people save money.
- B. To cut the cost for daily life.
- C. To prevent over-consumption.
- D. To set up a new sales record.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段前两句可知, Lasn 认为过度消费是所有环境问题的根源,他设立 Buy Nothing Day 旨在与不健康的消费习惯做斗争。

故 Lasn 设立此节日的目的是防止过度消费。

3. What's Nie Li's attitude towards the shopping craze?

- A. Opposed. B. Supportive.
- C. Unknown. D. Neutral.

A 观点态度题。根据第五段中的“Record-setting over-consumption means record-setting waste.”可知, Nie Li 认为创纪录的过度消费意味着创纪录的浪费,即他对购物狂潮(the shopping craze)持反对态度。

4. What can be a suitable title for the passage?

- A. Creating a New Lifestyle
- B. Buy Nothing Day
- C. Festivals Around the World
- D. A Change in People's Life

B 标题归纳题。文章内容围绕 Buy Nothing Day 展开,故用 Buy Nothing Day 作标题最合适。

【微点写作】一封表达看法的书信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 是时候采取措施减少雾霾了。

It's high time that we should take measures to reduce the smog.

2. 如图所示,雾太浓,人们在街上相遇时几乎认不出对方。

As is shown in the picture, the fog is so heavy that people can hardly recognise each other when they meet in the street.

3. 人们还患有许多由烟雾引起的疾病。

People also suffered from many illnesses caused by smog.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过快速阅读获取课文中不同人物的观点，并对不同的观点做出评价；
3. 对节日这一话题有更深入的理解，并能自主创造一个节日，给出庆祝这个节日的原因并列举庆祝活动；
4. 通过小组活动培养语言能力和创新能力。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. editor *n.* (报纸、杂志的) 主编, 编辑
2. admit *v.* (不情愿地) 承认
3. loss *n.* 失去, 丧失
4. adult *n.* 成人, 成年人
5. retired *adj.* 退休的
6. exist *v.* 存在, 实际上有
7. joy *n.* 欢欣, 愉快, 喜悦
8. effort *n.* 力气, 精力
9. process *n.* (为达到某目标的) 过程, 进程
10. in one's opinion 在某人看来
11. look forward to 期盼, 渴望

12. what's more 而且
13. prepare for 为……做准备
14. rather than 而不是
15. have... to do with 与……有……关系

(二) 阅读词汇

1. global *adj.* 全球的, 全世界的
2. software *n.* (计算机) 软件
3. nationality *n.* 国籍; 民族
4. overseas *adv.* 在海外, 在外国
5. audience *n.* 听众, 观众
6. be keen on 喜爱……, 对……着迷
7. no less than 不少于
8. sell out 卖光
9. eat out 出去吃

「课文速览」

表格填空

Person	View	Reason	Conclusion
Wang Peng (software engineer)	Have the family dinner 1. <u>in a restaurant</u> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The 2. <u>preparations</u> for the dinner are hard work. • It's not 3. <u>worth</u> the effort of spending so much time preparing for a single meal and 4. <u>cleaning up</u> the mess after it's over. • Eating out is a good 5. <u>choice</u> and it has nothing to do with 6. <u>loss of traditions</u>. • The occasion is more 7. <u>enjoyable</u> without all that 8. <u>tiring cooking</u>, and the dishes 9. <u>taste better!</u> 	The form of the tradition has 10. <u>changed</u> , but the love between the family members 11. <u>remains the same</u> .
Liu Yonghui (retired teacher)	Have the family dinner 12. <u>at home</u> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enjoy the delicious food that we 13. <u>seldom</u> got to eat. • The opportunity to have the whole family 14. <u>gathered together</u>. 	Value the 15. <u>memories</u> of preparing the dinner together.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What is the main idea of the first letter?
 - Eating at home is really tiring.
 - It is important to choose a good place to eat.
 - Eating out is the best way to have the Spring Festival dinner.
 - Eating out doesn't change the love between family members.
- What does the writer mean by saying "we have enjoyed it no less than eating at home" in Paragraph 1 of the first letter?
 - The writer doesn't like eating out.
 - The writer doesn't like eating at home.
 - Both eating at home and eating out are enjoyable.
 - Eating at home is more enjoyable than eating out.
- Why does eating out have nothing to do with loss of traditions in the first letter?
 - Because the dishes taste better.
 - Because we eat in a different place.
 - Because we can avoid the tiring cooking.
 - Because we still celebrate it with our family.
- Why is the writer unhappy about eating the Spring Festival family dinner out in the second letter?
 - Because he thinks it lacks the feeling of the Spring Festival.
 - Because his son booked a table without his permission.
 - Because he can cook delicious food himself.
 - Because it is too expensive.

答案: 1~4 DCDA

II. 课文语法填空

There are two different opinions about 1. whether we should have the dinner in a restaurant or at home 2. on Spring Festival Eve.

Wang Peng thinks we had better eat out for the Spring Festival family dinner. Because the 3. preparations (prepare) for the dinner are hard work, and it is not really worth the effort of 4. spending (spend) so much time preparing for a single meal, and then another hour cleaning up the mess after it's over. It will be 5. better (good) if we spend the time with family and relaxing. He also thinks eating out has nothing 6. to do (do) with loss of traditions. Regardless of what and where we eat, the love between the family members 7. sitting (sit) around the table together remains the same.

However, Liu Yonghui, a 8. retired (retire) teacher, prefers to have the dinner at home rather than eat out. He thinks eating at home is not only for the delicious food 9. but for the opportunity to have the whole family gathered together.

In the end he 10. hopes (hope) his children and their children will still value the memories of preparing the dinner together.

III. 阅读升华

- Why does Wang Peng choose to eat out for the Spring Festival family dinner?
Because he wants to spend more time with his family and relaxing.
- Can you think of any other Chinese festival traditions? Share them with the class.

略

课后素养评价(九)

I. 单词拼写

- I firmly believe that with our joint efforts (努力), the children there will have a brighter future.
- I explained every step of the process (过程) in detail to make it possible for the foreigners to understand how to make tea.

- All applicants will be considered regardless of age, sex, religion or nationality (国籍).
- The speech was greeted with loud applause from the audience (观众).
- He admitted (承认) that he had broken the window by accident.

- Mr Palmer is a retired (退休的) maths master, who is respected by all his students.
- His death is a great loss (损失) to the country in the field of AI technology.
- Natural resources are things that exist (存在) in nature and can be used by people.
- A peaceful environment is of great importance to global (全球的) development.
- Tom jumped for joy (愉快) when he heard the good news.
- Three editors (编辑) handled the work of revising (修订) the articles for publication.
- Admission is £1 for adults (成人) and half for children.
- He spent quite a lot of time working overseas (在海外).

II. 短语填空

what's more; rather than; have nothing to do with; be keen on; replace... with...; interact with; look forward to

- We are looking forward to a cleaner and better environment by changing our lifestyle.
- Most of the scientists do the job out of their passion for science rather than money.
- Most people spend much more time interacting with digital media than they did ten years ago.
- It is not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.
- What one does in his free time may have nothing to do with his job.
- Given that you are keen on the traditional Chinese festival, the Dragon Boat Festival, I am writing to introduce it to you.
- I'm good at operating computers, and what's more, I have plenty of experience.

III. 完成句子

- Not only does he play basketball very well, but his skill at swimming is also advanced.
他不仅篮球打得很好,游泳的技术也十分高超。
- It is requested that all teachers and students (should) attend the opening ceremony.
据要求所有师生都要参加开幕式。

- Trees must compete with each other for sunlight.
树木必须为获得阳光而相互竞争。

IV. 七选五

The Lantern Festival, a traditional Chinese festival, is celebrated on the 15th day of the first lunar month. 1 The day leads to the first full moon night of the year, and is also the night when the earth returns to spring.

It was also a romantic festival in ancient China, providing an opportunity for unmarried men and women to meet. 2 But during the Lantern Festival, it was a tradition that all people, including those young women, came out for lantern shows. People hung lanterns everywhere, in their house or in the streets, which had various characters, like flying birds, leaping fishes, and shining fireworks, showing an atmosphere of joy. 3

Another activity, guessing the answers to lantern riddles, gave young people a chance to interact with each other and know more about each other. For thousands of years, there have been numerous love stories originating from the Lantern Festival.

Besides watching lanterns and guessing the answers to lantern riddles, there are many other traditions for the festival.

① Dragon Lantern Dance

4 At the festival, people perform dragon lantern dances and look forward to this year's good weather and peace.

② Lion Dances

It is similar to the dragon lantern dance, delivering good wishes and good luck.

③ Eating Yuanxiao

Eating *yuanxiao* on the Lantern Festival is another tradition. 5 The stuffing (馅) includes bean paste, sugar, various kinds of fruit and so on. It can be boiled, fried or steamed to eat.

- As a traditional food, *yuanxiao* appeals to a lot of people.
- Here is a guide for you to spend a happy Lantern Festival.

- C. It is a continuation of celebrating the Spring Festival.
- D. Chinese people regard the dragon as a symbol of good luck.
- E. *Yuanxiao* is made of glutinous rice (糯米), either solid or stuffed.
- F. Almost all people would come out and appreciate the beautiful scene.
- G. In ancient times, young women, especially daughters of respected families, hardly stepped out of their houses.

答案: 1~5 CGFDE

【微点写作】一封表达看法的书信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 在我看来,应该限制汽车的数量。

In my opinion, the number of cars should be limited.

2. 我们应该呼吁人们多使用公共交通。

We should call on people to use public transport more.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 就某一节日现象展开分析和评论;
3. 掌握表达观点类文章的文本特征和内容特点,并能运用所学知识写一篇议论文;
4. 联系自身的学习与生活,了解中国春节走向世界这一现象,增强国家认同感,培养优秀的文化品格和爱国情怀,鼓励弘扬和传播中国优秀的传统文化。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you make an **effort** to do something, you try very hard to do it. 努力
2. With the world becoming a **global** village, I find it necessary to have a good command of English. 全球的
3. She's Italian by birth but is now an Australian **citizen**. 公民
4. The concert will be broadcast to a worldwide television **audience** estimated at one billion. 观众
5. A **phenomenon** is something that is observed to happen or exist. 现象
6. Videos about the three years' life, which witnessed (见证) the whole **process** of our growth, were played at the graduation ceremony. 过程,进程
7. He has returned to China after studying **overseas**

for ten years.

在海外,在外国

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>editor</u> n. (报纸、杂志的)主编,编辑	edit v. 编校;编辑;剪辑,剪接 edition n. 版本;版次;(报纸、杂志等的)版;(电视或广播节目、系列节目的)一集,一辑
<u>admit</u> v. (不情愿地)承认	admission n. 承认
<u>loss</u> n. 失去,丧失	lose v. 丧失 lost adj. 丢失的,迷路的
<u>exist</u> v. 存在,实际上有	existence n. 存在
<u>nationality</u> n. 国籍;民族	nation n. 国家 national adj. 全国的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>retired</u> <i>adj.</i> 退休的	retire <i>v.</i> 退休; 退役
	retirement <i>n.</i> 退休
<u>interact</u> <i>v.</i> 互动	interaction <i>n.</i> 互动
	interactive <i>adj.</i> 互动的, 相互影响的, 交互式的
<u>joy</u> <i>n.</i> 欢欣, 愉快, 喜悦	joyful <i>adj.</i> 高兴的, 快乐的; 令人愉快的

III. 补全短语

1. be keen on 喜爱……; 热衷于……
2. in one's opinion 在某人看来
3. have... to do with 与……有……关系
4. replace... with ... 用……代替……
5. feel like 感觉像; 想要
6. clean up 彻底打扫, 清理
7. if necessary 如果可能的话
8. interact with 与……互动; 交流

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what, where 引导主语从句

In my opinion, what or where we eat on Spring Festival Eve really doesn't matter.

在我看来, 我们在除夕夜吃什么或在哪里吃真的不重要。

2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作真正的主语

For me, it just won't feel like Spring Festival having the dinner out.

出去吃饭让我觉得不像是在过春节。

3. 句型公式: not only... but (also)...

It was not only for the delicious food that we seldom got to eat, but for the opportunity to have our whole family gathered together.

不仅是因为我们可以吃到平时难以吃到的美食, 而且全家人也能因此有机会团聚在一起。

4. 句型公式: 现在分词作伴随状语

I would run around the house, listening to the adults chatting about their year.

我会在家里跑来跑去, 听大人们闲聊他们这一年(的情况)。

任务型课堂

1. **admit** *v.* (不情愿地) 承认; 准许……加入, 招收; 准许……进入

(教材原文) Can't they **admit** that the preparations for the dinner are hard work?

难道他们不觉得准备年夜饭很辛苦吗?

一感 读句子感悟用法

She said sorry to me and **admitted taking/having taken** my umbrella by mistake.

她向我道歉并承认错拿了她的雨伞。

Whatever your opinion of the man, you have to **admit him to be** very clever.

不管你对这个人看法如何, 你不得不承认他很聪明。

He **admitted to** me **that** he had stolen the purse.

他向我承认他偷了钱包。

She **was admitted to/into** Peking University, which made her parents very happy.

她被北京大学录取了, 这使她父母非常高兴。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) admit _____/having done sth. 承认做了某事 admit sb./sth. to be... 承认某人/某事是…… admit _____ sb. that... 向某人承认…… be admitted _____/into... 被……接收(入学、入院等); 被准许进入…… (2) admission <i>n.</i> 承认; 入场费; 允许进入; 录用
探究结论	(1) doing; to; to

【语境助记】

Finally, the boy who had **been admitted to/into** a key university **admitted that** the doorman **admitted him into** the cinema which can **admit** 800 people. 最终, 这位已经被一所重点大学录取的男生承认看门人准许他进入了这个能容纳 800 人的电影院。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Her father admitted forgetting/having forgotten (forget) her birthday because of busy work and apologised to her.

② Finally, I had to admit my friend's plan to be (be) better than mine.

③ He admitted to his boss that he had made a mistake.

④ No one can go into the room without my admission (admit).

(2) 一句多译

他承认, 为了避免受到惩罚, 他对父母谎报了考试结果。

① He admitted that he lied to his parents about the result of the exam to avoid being punished.

② He admitted lying to his parents about the result of the exam to avoid being punished.

③ He admitted having lied to his parents about the result of the exam to avoid being punished.

2. effort n. 力气, 精力

(教材原文) I really don't think it's worth the **effort** of spending so much time preparing for a single meal, and then another hour cleaning up the mess after it's over.

我真的认为花这么多时间准备一顿饭, 然后在餐后再花一个小时清理这堆烂摊子是不值得的。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I will **make efforts to** achieve my goal.

我将努力实现我的目标。

They promised to **spare no effort to help** those who are in poverty.

他们承诺会不遗余力地帮助那些生活贫困的人。

They've been working day and night **in an effort to get** the bridge ready on time.

为了使桥能准时完工, 他们一直夜以继日地工作。

He spoke slowly and **with effort**.

他讲话很慢, 很吃力。

He passed the exam **without effort**.

他毫不费力地通过了考试。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	make _____ to do sth. 努力做某事
	spare no effort _____ sth. 不遗余力地做某事
	in an effort to do sth. 为了做某事/试图要做某事
	with effort 努力地, 艰难地
	without effort 容易地, 不费力地
探究 结论	efforts; to do

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① We will make efforts (effort) to offer you the best service.

② We'll spare no effort to help (help) you, but you must get prepared to meet all kinds of difficulties.

③ I am sure that with great effort, you will enjoy a colourful and fruitful life here.

3. exist v. 存在, 实际上有

(教材原文) A fact is something that **exists** or has happened, for example, an object, event or experience.

事实是存在或已经发生的事情, 例如物品、事件或经历。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It **exists in** dreams rather than reality.

它存在于梦境而非现实中。

The worker earned little money a month, so he had to **exist on** only instant noodles.

这个工人一个月挣的钱很少, 因此他不得不只靠方便面度日。

No one knows when such a custom first **came into existence**.

没有人知道这种风俗是什么时候开始有的。

The **existing** guidelines are simply inadequate.

现存的指导方针完全不适用了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) exist in 存在于……(相当于 lie in) exist _____ 依靠……生存, 依靠……生活(相当于 live on) (2) _____ n. 存在 come _____ existence 开始存在; 产生; 成立 (3) _____ adj. 现存的, 现行的
探究结论	(1) on (2) existence; into (3) existing

名师点拨

exist 是不及物动词, 不用于被动语态, 通常不用于进行时。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It was impossible for them to exist on such a low income (收入).

② Happiness does not exist in wealth.

③ *The Book of Songs*, also known as *Shijing*, is the oldest existing (exist) collection of Chinese poetry.

④ As is known to all, matter exists (exist) in three states: solid, liquid and gas.

(2) 完成句子

How did the universe first come into existence?
宇宙最初是怎么形成的?

4. not only... but (also)...

(教材原文) It was **not only** for the delicious food that we seldom got to eat, **but** for the opportunity to have our whole family gathered together.

不仅是因为我们可以吃到平时难以吃到的美食, 而

且全家人也能因此有机会团聚在一起。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Not only the students **but also** their teacher likes playing football.

不仅学生们而且他们的老师也喜欢踢足球。

Not only did he point out my shortcomings, **but also** he helped me to overcome them.

他不仅指出我的缺点, 而且还帮助我改正缺点。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) not only... but (also)... 表示“不但……而且……”, 用于连接平行结构: 名词、代词、动词(短语)、非谓语动词、介词短语、句子等。 (2) not only... but (also)... 连接两个并列主语时, 谓语动词与 but (also) 后的 _____ 在人称和数上保持一致。 (3) not only... but (also)... 连接两个并列分句, 且 not only 位于句首时, not only 后的分句需 _____, but also 后的分句不用倒装。
探究结论	(2) 主语 (3) 部分倒装

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

Not only you but also he is (be) going to attend the meeting tomorrow.

(2) 句型转换

Smartphones not only take up our valuable time, but also do great harm to our health. (改为倒装句)

→ Not only do smartphones take up our valuable time, but also they do great harm to our health.

写作探究

一封表达看法的书信

一、写作指导

本单元的写作目标是写一封信, 就一种社会问题(现象)发表自己的观点。在写作时应注意以下三个方面:

1. 文体: 应用文——表达个人看法;
2. 目的: 针对当今某种社会现象或问题进行分析, 表明自己的看法、态度并说明理由;

3. 内容: 陈述自己的观点及理由, 理由要充分合理, 有说服力。

二、典题示例

假如你是李华, 现在有不少人喜欢过一些西方的节日。请你用英语给报社的编辑写一封信来分析产生这种现象的原因, 并就这种现象可能带来的影响简要阐述自己的看法, 表达自己的观点。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Editor,

Yours,

Li Hua

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 开门见山,引入这种社会现象 2. 阐述理由,分析产生这种现象的原因和影响 3. 总结全文,陈述自己的看法

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇

- ① be fond of 喜欢
 ② celebrate 庆祝
 ③ Western festivals 西方节日
 ④ account for 对……做出解释
 ⑤ the policy of reform and opening-up 改革开放政策
 ⑥ influence 影响
 ⑦ tradition 传统
 ⑧ identity 身份

(二)完成句子

- ① Many people may have failed to notice the fact (可能没有注意到这个事实)。
 ② An increasing number of Chinese are fond of (越来越多的中国人喜欢) celebrating some Western festivals today.
 ③ A lot of traditional Chinese festivals lost their attraction (失去吸引力)。
 ④ Many people tend to find joy in Western festivals (倾向于在西方节日里寻找快乐)。
 ⑤ While we are enjoying the atmosphere brought by those Western customs (在我们很享受那些西方习俗带来的氛围时), we might also lose our own tradition and identity.

(三)句式升级

① 用同位语从句合并(二)中的句①②

Many people may have failed to notice the fact that an increasing number of Chinese are fond of celebrating some Western festivals today.

② 用 with 复合结构合并(二)中的句③④

With a lot of traditional Chinese festivals losing their attraction, many people tend to find joy in Western festivals.

③ 用状语从句的省略改写(二)中的句⑤

While enjoying the atmosphere brought by those Western customs, we might also lose our own tradition and identity.

(四)连句成篇

Dear Editor,

Many people may have failed to notice the fact that an increasing number of Chinese are fond of celebrating some Western festivals today. For instance, on Valentine's Day, many people give flowers or chocolate to the one they love.

A number of factors account for the phenomenon. On the one hand, due to the policy of reform and opening-up, Chinese people tend to know more about Western culture and be influenced by it. On the other hand, with a lot of traditional Chinese festivals losing their attraction, many people tend to find joy in Western festivals.

In my opinion, while enjoying the atmosphere brought by those Western customs, we might also lose our own tradition and identity.

Yours,

Li Hua

五、学以致用

春节正在成为一个全球性节日,越来越多的国家和地区参与到春节的庆祝活动中来,有的国家甚至将春节定为法定假日。假定你是李华,请你针对这种现象给报社编辑写一封信来表达你的看法。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Editor,

Yours,

Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Editor,

It seems that more and more countries around the world are holding celebrations of Chinese Spring Festival. I think the reasons are as follows.

First, millions of Chinese spend their holiday overseas during the Spring Festival, bringing huge tourism benefits to their popular destinations. This greatly contributes to the spread of Chinese Spring

Festival. Second, with Chinese economy developing rapidly, more and more people realise they must learn more about Chinese culture if they want to cooperate with their Chinese partners.

All in all, I think this phenomenon is a reflection of China's economic boom and I believe more Chinese culture will be accepted by the world.

Yours,

Li Hua

课后素养评价(十)

I. 单句语法填空

- Scientists have many theories about how the universe first came into existence (exist).
- He admitted failing/having failed (fail) in the exam again.
- We must make efforts to improve (improve) the quality of the products.
- Children's Day is a joyful (joy) occasion for children.
- He became a keen golfer after his retirement (retire) from politics.
- The college attracts students of all nationalities (nation).

II. 完成句子

- When and why the accident happened hasn't been found yet.
事故发生的时间和原因还没有查到。
- My sister is keen on physics and was admitted to her dream university last year.
我的妹妹热衷于物理,去年被她梦寐以求的大学录取了。
- Not only does sun give us light but also it gives us heat.
太阳不仅给我们光,而且给我们热。
- Some people exist on melons or coconuts for weeks at a time.
有些人一度数周靠各种瓜或椰子生存。

III. 语法填空

The Mid-Autumn Festival is a harvest festival,
1. celebrated (celebrate) in most East Asian countries, such as China and Vietnam. The festival

2. takes (take) place on the fifteenth day of the eighth lunar month. In 2022, it was on September 10th.

It is 3. the second most important festival in China after Chinese New Year. To the Chinese, the festival means family reunion and peace. It is also called "the Moon Festival" as it is celebrated when the moon is believed to be the 4. biggest (big) and fullest.

Chinese people celebrate the Mid-Autumn Festival 5. with many traditional and meaningful activities, such as eating dinner with family, hanging lanterns, guessing lantern riddles, and worshipping the moon. Since 2008, the Mid-Autumn Festival 6. has been (be) a 3-day public holiday in China.

New celebrations have developed in recent years. The younger generations prefer 7. travelling (travel), surfing the Internet, and using smartphone apps to celebrate with their families.

Mooncakes are the must-eat Mid-Autumn food in China. They are a kind of traditional Chinese pastry. Chinese people see in the roundness of mooncakes a symbol of reunion and 8. happiness (happy). Other foods eaten during the festival are harvest foods, such as crabs, pumpkins and grapes, which are the freshest and most nutritious at this time of the year.

Festival food traditions are also changing. The younger generations have 9. their (they) own ideas about what should be eaten. Besides moon cakes, they also choose 10. what they like to eat.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的美国笔友 Mike 对中国的重阳节很感兴趣,想要了解一些相关内容。请你给 Mike 写一封信,简要介绍重阳节并邀请他来中国亲自感受节日氛围。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:重阳节 Double Ninth Day; 菊花 chrysanthemum

Dear Mike,

How is everything going these days? _____

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Mike,

How is everything going these days? So delighted to learn from your last letter that you are interested in the Double Ninth Day. Now I'd like to tell you some details about this festival.

Just as the name indicates, this festival comes on the ninth day of the ninth month of the Chinese lunar calendar. It can date back to the Spring and Autumn Period. On that day, family members always climb the mountains together, enjoying colourful chrysanthemums, tasting delicious desserts and respecting the old in their families.

If possible, why not come to China and enjoy the approaching Double Ninth Day with me? I am sure you will have a good time here.

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

A Father's Day Surprise

"Mano, do you know when Father's Day is celebrated?" Ali asked his sister.

"Yes, it is going to be celebrated on June 19 this year. Yesterday my friend and I were talking about it," Mano replied.

"Do you have any idea how we should celebrate this day and make it memorable for Dad?" Ali asked.

"Hmm... I was thinking about it too and have some ideas," Mano answered excitedly.

"What are you kids talking about?" their mum asked, entering their room.

"Mum, we were wondering how to celebrate Father's Day," Mano said.

"Oh, I am surprised you kids remembered! Well, I am thinking of cooking some favourite dishes for your father. You both should think of ways to decorate the house beautifully," Mum said.

"That would be great!" said Mano and Ali together. Both of them got up smiling, thinking of hundreds of ways to celebrate Father's Day. Mum went to the kitchen, and Mano and Ali started doing their homework. But soon Ali noticed Mano deep in thought, so he asked what the matter was. "Ali, I am thinking that our parents do everything for us and in return they want nothing. Isn't it bad that we never think about them and are always concerned about our needs?" Mano replied. "Sometimes we are so busy with our lives that we don't pay proper attention to our parents. We should listen to whatever they say properly and answer them. We must also study hard to get good grades." Ali nodded.

The next day, all three of them, Mano, Ali and their mum, got busy preparing their surprise celebration for Father's Day. Mano drew a family

picture with her crayons. Ali bought balloons and candles and began writing a poem which he planned to sing that day. In short, a lot of things were being planned and prepared.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Finally, when Father's Day came, both Ali and Mano came home from school and started decorating the house. _____

Ali and Mano cried out together, "Happy Father's Day!" _____

【参考范文】

Finally, when Father's Day came, both Ali and Mano came home from school and started decorating the house. Ali quickly cleaned the living

room and continued with the decoration, putting up the colourful balloons and presenting the birthday cake. At the same time, Mano took out the family picture. They were about to practise singing the poem when the delicious smell came from the kitchen. Surely it was Mum that prepared the big meal. French toast and chicken porridge, both of which were Father's favourite dishes, were ready. Eventually, everything was settled. Ali and Mano stood beside the door, waiting for their father eagerly. Then Dad came in.

Ali and Mano cried out together, "Happy Father's Day!" Hearing the words, so glad was Dad that his face lit up. "We have a surprise for you!" added Ali, pointing at the decorations. When Dad saw the dinner, his eyes widened and twinkled with excitement. He couldn't help tasting a bit of chicken porridge, explaining that it was the best dish he had ever had. Mum grinned heartily and exchanged a gentle glance with Ali and Mano. What a beautiful and sweet surprise! The room was filled with happiness.

读后续写技能养成 || 动作描写之“眼和眉”

「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之“眼和眉”:是指对人的眼睛、眉毛等的动作描写,如看、看见、瞪眼、闭眼、睁眼、凝视、怒视、一瞥、环视、偷窥、眺望、皱眉等。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住“眼和眉”的动作特点进行描写,也可以使用一些描述心理活动的词汇辅助描写眼和眉的动作。

「范例体悟」

The principal looked at me, biting his lip, as if thinking. Finally, after what seemed like a century, he decided that he would make an exception for me. I could hardly believe it. Looking into his eyes,

which brimmed with smiles, I stood up and bowed low to him.

找出文中“眼和眉”的动作描写并写下来。

looked at; looking into his eyes; brimmed
with smiles

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. frown v. 皱眉
2. peep at 偷窥
3. look up/down 抬/低头看
4. look at/into 朝……方向/里面看
5. have a look at 看一看

6. catch sight of 看见
7. catch/take a glimpse of 瞥一眼
8. glance/glimpse at 瞥一眼
9. stare/glare at 凝/怒视
10. stare into one's eyes 凝视
11. fix/focus one's eyes on 盯着看
12. drop/lower one's eyes 眼睛朝下看
13. lift/raise one's eyes 眼睛朝上看
14. cast/take a glance at 瞄了一眼
15. one's eyes shine/spark with excitement
眼里闪烁着兴奋的光芒
16. can't take one's eyes off 目不转睛地看
17. look at sb. straight in one's eyes 直视某人

II. 佳句背诵

1. I looked at him with a bright smile, like a deer jumping for joy.
我带着灿烂的微笑看着他,就像一头欢快跳跃的鹿。
2. Full of expectation and eagerness, Jerry stared at Eric with obvious pleasure.
杰瑞满怀期待和渴望,盯着埃里克,显然很开心。
3. Stealing a glance at Grandpa, I saw him standing embarrassedly, casting a cloud of gloom over his face.
我偷偷瞥了爷爷一眼,看见他局促不安地站在那里,脸上蒙上了一层愁云。
4. Failing to catch sight of it, he grew uneasy.
他没有看到它,变得不安起来。
5. Looking to the right, I took a glimpse of Mike.
我向右望去,瞥见了迈克。
6. He glared at us as he ran forwards.
他一边向前跑一边瞪我们。
7. She frowned with her funny eyebrows, and then smiled back at him.

她皱起了滑稽的眉毛,然后对他笑了笑。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. She saw Alison looking up, in wide-eyed admiration.
她看到艾莉森抬起头,眼睛睁得大大的,满是羡慕。
2. As she reached the top, she glanced at her fellow students below.
到达山顶时,她看了一眼下面的同学。
3. Gradually, she took her eyes off the floor and responded to us with smiles and small talk.
渐渐地,她把目光从地板上移开,用微笑和寒暄来回应我们。
4. When he dared (to) look up again, he saw that Brian and other kids were giggling, hiding their faces, so Ms Barringer wouldn't see.
当他敢再次抬头时,他看到布莱恩和其他孩子在咯咯地笑,他们把脸藏起来,不让巴林杰女士看见。

II. 用“眼和眉”的动作描写完成下面的语段

Tom sat beside the desk, with **1. his eyes fixed on** (两眼盯着) a book. When he finished the book, he **2. raised/lifted his eyes** (眼睛朝上看) and **3. looked out of the window** (向窗外看去). Singing happily, he **4. gazed/stared at** (凝视着) the surroundings **5. with innocent and curious eyes** (用天真而好奇的眼神). Then, **6. noticing someone approaching** (注意到有人靠近), Tom stopped singing and **7. lowered/dropped his eyes** (眼睛朝下看). **8. When recognising** (当认出) who the visitor was, Tom opened his mouth **9. with his eyes widening** (瞪大眼睛).

第二单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解 (共 15 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 37.5 分)

A

No matter where you go around the globe, everybody loves to celebrate. And when it comes to celebration, festivals offer something for everyone.

Mardi Gras (New Orleans, Louisiana)

Also known as Fat Tuesday, Mardi Gras in New Orleans is a cultural event. Though the celebration is held every year, the festivities last for months. And if you love music, check out the annual Galactic concert at the world-famous Tipitina's on Lundi Gras (the day before Mardi Gras).

La Tomatina (Valencia, Spain)

Launched way back in 1944 or 1945, La Tomatina is one of the oldest festivals on our list. It's also easily the happiest but the messiest, coming off like the world's biggest food fight.

Legend has it that the whole thing started when some local boys joined a parade alongside musicians. The boys made the performers so angry that they tried to hit the boys, and a vendor's (摊贩) vegetable stand fell victim to the incident.

If you go, please follow some simple rules. Don't throw hard objects; squash the tomato before throwing it; keep a safe distance from tomato trucks and stop in time.

Montreux Jazz Festival (Switzerland)

Founded back in 1967, Montreux is one of the oldest music festivals in the world. It is also the second largest jazz festival, after the Montreal International Jazz Festival. That Canadian concert may attract more visitors—around 2 million annually. But Montreux benefits from its pretty location on the attractive shores of Lake Geneva.

The area is particularly beautiful in late June/early July, when the festival is held.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了世界上几个知名的节日,包括路易斯安那州新奥尔良的狂欢节、西班牙巴伦西亚的西红柿节以及瑞士的蒙特勒爵士音乐节。

1. When is the Galactic concert held?

- A. On Mardi Gras.
- B. On Lundi Gras.
- C. On Montreux Jazz Festival.
- D. On La Tomatina.

B 细节理解题。根据题干关键词“Galactic concert”定位至“**Mardi Gras (New Orleans, Louisiana)**”部分;根据该部分中的“**And if you love music, check out... on Lundi Gras (the day before Mardi Gras).**”可知,在“狂欢节”前一天可以欣赏该音乐会。

2. What do people do on La Tomatina?

- A. Punish naughty boys.
- B. Enjoy musicians' performance.
- C. Throw tomatoes without hurting.
- D. Catch people who destroy tomatoes.

C 细节理解题。根据题干关键词“La Tomatina”定位至“**La Tomatina (Valencia, Spain)**”部分;根据该部分最后一句中的“**Don't throw hard objects... from tomato trucks and stop in time.**”可知,人们在西红柿节上互相扔西红柿取乐,但并不造成伤害。

3. Where can you read the passage probably?

- A. In a news report.
- B. In an academic journal.
- C. In a concert brochure.
- D. In a travel magazine.

D 文章出处题。通读全文可知,本文主要介绍了三个知名的节日,重点介绍了这些节日的特色、起源等。由此可知,本文最可能摘自一本旅行杂志。

B

Following the New Year dinner, my family was relaxing around the kitchen table. We were discussing the delicious meal we had just had. Dad had risen from his chair and was standing nearby.

My nephew began playing with his new basketball around the table. Upon nearing Dad, he stopped. With shaking, wrinkled hands, Dad had reached out for the ball. He did not speak, and the boy looked at us in confusion. After a few seconds, he carefully passed the ball to Dad. I watched my father closely to see what he would do. A playful smile appeared on his face. Holding the ball and reaching forward, Dad bounced it on the floor and then caught it.

This action was repeated. Smiling with satisfaction, he then turned towards us. Gently tossing (投掷) the ball away, Dad began a game of catch.

The ball continued to be passed through pairs of outstretched hands. Cries of "Over here!" rang through the warm kitchen. Dad's active participation in this game was remarkable to me, since he had dementia (痴呆). This disease had robbed him of many memories and the recognition of people, places and points in time. Despite this, Dad clearly recognised the ball and what he could do with it.

In my younger years, playing with Dad was rare. He worked hard and provided what we needed for us, but never showed or shared much emotion. His favourite game was chess, which he once taught me how to play. But after his illness, the connecting moments between father and son had been few before he took the basketball.

I'm not sure how long we played the game. Watching the clock was not important. Dad happily led us until he began to tire. I know that that moment will certainly last forever. This New Year, Dad gave me a special memory — one that I will always treasure.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的父亲患了痴呆,认不清大家的面孔,也记不清楚地点

和时间段。但是,在一个新年之夜,爸爸居然跟孩子们一起玩起了接球游戏。这是作者记忆中最难忘也最美好的新年。

4. The method the writer uses to develop the second paragraph is _____.

- A. offering analyses
- B. providing details
- C. giving examples
- D. making a comparison

B 推理判断题。第二段描述了小侄子玩球时看到父亲的困惑以及父亲看到球又是如何反应的。这些都是细节描写,故选 B。

5. The author's father's active participation in the game surprised the author because _____.

- A. it was the first time he had taken part in such a game
- B. he was able to recognise his family members clearly
- C. he could have a rest and relax by playing the ball game
- D. he could recognise the ball and react accordingly, despite his illness

D 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,在患了痴呆之后,父亲几乎忘记了所有事情,而在新年之夜,他却能够反应敏捷,并跟家人们玩接球游戏,这才是最令作者记忆深刻并为之触动的,故选 D; A、C 项文中没有提到;根据第四段中的“This disease had robbed him of many memories and the recognition of people”可知 B 项错误。

6. What can we learn about the author's father from the text?

- A. His sickness made it difficult for him to recognise people.
- B. When the author was young, he spent a lot of time playing with him.
- C. He taught the author how to play basketball and the game of catch.
- D. He worked hard and liked to share his feelings with his family.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“This disease had robbed him of many memories and the recognition of people”可知 A 项正确;根据第五段

中的“In my younger years, playing with Dad was rare.”可知 B 项错误；根据第五段中的“His favourite game was chess, which he once taught me how to play.”可知，父亲教作者下棋，但没有提到教作者打篮球或者玩传球游戏，所以 C 项错误；根据第五段中的“never showed or shared much emotion”可知 D 项错误。

7. What would be the best title for this text?

- A. A Son's Love
- B. A Father's Smiles
- C. The Happiness of a Sick Father
- D. Unforgettable Memories at New Year

D 标题归纳题。本文主要讲述的是在新年发生的、关于父亲的难忘的事，故选 D。

C

The Chongyang Festival falls on the ninth day of the ninth month of the Chinese lunar calendar, so it is also known as the Double Ninth Festival.

The festival is held in the golden season of autumn, at harvest-time. The bright clear weather and the joy of bringing in the harvest make for a happy atmosphere. The Chongyang Festival is usually perfect for outdoor activities. Climbing a mountain, carrying a spray of dogwood (茱萸) and drinking chrysanthemum (菊花) wine have become the traditional activities of the festival.

The dogwood is a plant with a strong fragrance (香气), and is often used as a Chinese herbal medicine. People in ancient times believed it could drive away evil spirits and prevent one from getting a chill (寒意) in late autumn. So its history as a medicine goes back many centuries. But the custom of carrying a spray of dogwood during the Double Ninth Festival is slowly dying out and many people in the cities do not even know what a dogwood spray looks like.

Early in the Han Dynasty, about 2,000 years ago, people used to climb a high platform outside the capital city of Chang'an on the occasion of the Chongyang Festival. For many, it was the last outing of the year before the onset of winter. The custom evolved (发展成) into the present form, when people go climbing to get some exercise as well as enjoy the autumn scenery.

But what about those people who live in plains far from any mountain? The problem is solved by going for a picnic and eating cakes. The Chinese word for “cake” is *gao*, a homonym (同音异义词) of the Chinese word for “high”. Mountains are high, so eating cakes can, by a stretch of the imagination, take the place of going for a climb.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了重阳节的起源和相关习俗。

8. Why do people carry a spray of dogwood at the Chongyang Festival?

- A. Because the dogwood is a plant with a strong fragrance.
- B. Because the dogwood can be used as a Chinese herbal medicine.
- C. Because the dogwood has a long history as a medicine.
- D. Because people believed the dogwood could drive away evil spirits and prevent one from a chill.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The dogwood is a plant with a strong fragrance (香气), and is often used as a Chinese herbal medicine. People in ancient times believed it could drive away evil spirits and prevent one from getting a chill (寒意) in late autumn.”可知，重阳节带茱萸是因为人们相信茱萸可以驱邪、防寒。故选 D。

9. People now climb mountains on the Chongyang Festival to _____.

- A. have a last outing of the year before the onset of winter
- B. get some dogwoods
- C. climb a high platform
- D. get some exercise as well as enjoy the beautiful autumn scenery

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“The custom evolved (发展成) into the present form, when people go climbing to get some exercise as well as enjoy the autumn scenery.”可知，现在人们在重阳节登山是为了锻炼身体，欣赏美丽的秋景。故选 D。

10. People living in plains far from mountains eat cakes because _____.

- A. the Chinese word for “cake” is *gao*
- B. the Chinese word *gao* for “cake” has the same sound with the Chinese word for “high”
- C. they often take cakes to go for a picnic on the festival
- D. they like eating cakes

B 细节理解题。根据第五段的内容可知,住在远离大山的平原上的人吃糕点是因为“cake”的汉语“糕”字发音与“高”相同,所以平原上的人们通过吃“糕”来代替登高。故选 B。

11. Which of the following is TRUE?

- A. The Double Ninth Festival is on September 9th.
- B. People climbed mountains to celebrate the Chongyang Festival in the Han Dynasty.
- C. People often celebrate the Chongyang Festival in the open air.
- D. Eating cakes is just like climbing mountains.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The Chongyang Festival is usually perfect for outdoor activities.”、第四段中的“The custom evolved (发展成) into the present form, when people go climbing to get some exercise as well as enjoy the autumn scenery.”和最后一段中的“But what about those people who live in plains far from any mountain? The problem is solved by going for a picnic and eating cakes.”可推知,人们经常在户外庆祝重阳节。故选 C。

D

Insects have difficulty handling the rising temperature brought on by climate change. The ability to reproduce is also strongly affected by rising temperatures, even in northern areas of the world, according to a new study from Lund University in Sweden.

Insects cannot change their own body temperature, which is strongly influenced by the temperature in their immediate environment. In the current study, the researchers studied two closely related species of dragonflies in Sweden. The goal was to understand their ability to adapt to changes in temperature.

To study this, the researchers used a combination of fieldwork in southern Sweden and thermography, a technology that makes it possible to measure body temperatures in natural conditions. The information was then connected to the survival rates and reproductive success of the dragonflies in their natural populations.

The study shows that the survivorship of the dragonflies is high at relatively low temperatures (15°C~20°C). The reproductive ability is higher at temperatures between 20°C and 30°C.

“There is therefore a temperature-dependent problem between survival on the one hand and the ability to reproduce on the other hand,” says Erik Svensson, professor at the Department of Biology at Lund University, who led the study.

The study also shows that the dragonflies' ability to handle heat-related stress is limited. Insects are cold-blooded animals, so they rely on outside sources such as the sun or hot stones to raise their body temperature.

“Our results show that cold-blooded animals can suffer from overheating even if they live far up in the northern areas, and that their ability to change their body temperature against the rising outside temperature is limited. The results also challenge a popular theory that animals' plasticity can help them survive under the harsher environment, such as during heat waves,” says Erik Svensson.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要说明了气温上升也会严重影响昆虫的繁殖能力,并介绍了研究开展的过程。研究结果表明,即使生活在遥远的北方地区,冷血动物也会遭受高温的困扰,它们应对外界温度上升的能力是有限的。

12. What is the purpose of the study?

- A. To find the relationship between the survival rate and temperature.
- B. To figure out the difficulties of northern insects' adaption.
- C. To show dragonflies' ability to deal with changes in temperature.

D. To prove animals' plasticity in the hot environment.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“In the current study, the researchers studied two closely related species of dragonflies in Sweden. The goal was to understand their ability to adapt to changes in temperature.”可知,这项研究的目的是揭示蜻蜓应对气温变化的能力。故选 C。

13. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?

- A. The way of the study.
- B. The result of the study.
- C. The importance of the study.
- D. The object of the study.

A 段落大意题。通读第三段,尤其是“To study this, the researchers used a combination of fieldwork in southern Sweden and thermography”可知,本段主要介绍研究方法。故选 A。

14. What can be learned from Erik Svensson's study?

- A. Insects' survival has nothing to do with temperature.
- B. Insects show low survival rates at lower temperatures.
- C. Insects change body temperatures to improve survival rates.
- D. Insects have higher reproductive ability between 20°C and 30°C.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“The reproductive ability is higher at temperatures between 20°C and 30°C.”可知,昆虫在 20°C 和 30°C 之间具有较高的繁殖能力。故选 D。

15. What does the underlined word “harsher” in the last paragraph probably mean?

- A. More comfortable.
- B. More difficult.
- C. More suitable.
- D. More pleasant.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词上文“The results also challenge a popular theory that animals' plasticity can help them survive under”以及下文“environment, such as during heat waves”可知,

研究结果也挑战了一个流行理论,即动物的可塑性可以帮助它们在如热浪这种更艰难的环境下生存,因此画线词的意思是“更艰难”。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Here are four principles (行为准则) I live by. Whenever I follow these rules, I am at my very best, feeling productive and happy.

Devote time.

No matter how gifted we may be, it's wrong to think we can do it all. 16 The value of our achievements is greatly determined by what we spend our time on. We need to realise that every day we should devote the time to what matters and have the courage to let the unimportant things go.

Focus your attention.

Very often it seems that we just can't focus our attention, even though we know what we should be doing, right? Resistance (阻力) makes us get disturbed by distractions (分散注意力的事). 17 Developing a plan for overcoming resistance is important for high productivity.

18

We need to make a balance between work and play, between creation and pleasure. 19 Even if we feel energetic to work long hours, the most effective long-term way is to hold ourselves back when we feel crazy and follow a proper pace instead.

Keep moving on.

More important than setting big goals is to just keep going. I know this goes against most of the “set great goals for yourself” advice, but it's what works for me. 20 And it always made me more worried than it helped. Now, what does work for me is to think about how to improve my life and take small steps to make it happen.

- A. Develop a proper pace.
- B. Actually, we can do something, but not everything.
- C. Take a one-minute self-judgement at the end of the day.
- D. These are obstacles (阻碍) even for the most determined people.

E. It's in each step that you learn and change your direction.

F. We should take our leisure time as seriously as our work time.

G. Going after a "big aim" was something that made me feel uncomfortable.

答案: 16~20 BDAFG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

I was walking home from school one day and it happened to be a particularly cold and windy day. It was 21 and I was crazy enough to forget my hats and scarf. You can imagine my cheeks were rosy 22 and my hands were as numb (麻木的) as they can be.

All of a sudden, an old lady 23 up beside me and asked if I would like a ride 24. At first, I said it was OK and her 25 smile melted (融化) away the thought that I should never talk to 26! We had an amazing chat and she was just 27 a good woman. She told me her 28 and she dropped me off.

I didn't see her or talk to her for about a month and one night as I 29 her kind gesture, I decided to return the favour. So, I made a lot of 30 and walked down to her house with my friend. At first I was a bit 31 she wouldn't remember me or think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies but luckily, I was 32 wrong. She was so happy, and she hugged me and kissed me and seemed so 33 that someone would do something like that!

When I got home my mum told me that she 34 and told my mum on the phone that she 35 because she was so touched. She said she would never forget the kindness that was given to her!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者去看望在一个寒冷的天气里让自己搭车回家的老妇人的经历, 并认识到没有什么事情比帮助他人更能让人感到快乐了。

21. A. blowing B. freezing
C. flowing D. flying

B 根据上文"a particularly cold and windy day"可知, 天气非常寒冷(freezing)。

22. A. red B. pure
C. white D. pale

A 根据上文"forget my hat and scarf"可知, 在这么冷的天气里没有戴帽子和围巾, "我"的脸被冻得通红(red)。

23. A. picked B. turned
C. drove D. took

C 根据下文"asked if I would like a ride"可知, 一位老妇人开车(drove)到"我"身旁, 问"我"是否需要搭车。

24. A. hospital B. family
C. school D. home

D 根据上文"I was walking home from school"可知, "我"是在放学回家(home)的路上。

25. A. warm B. easy
C. simple D. strange

A 根据下文的"melted (融化) away the thought"可知, 这位老妇人温暖的(warm)笑容打消了"我"原有的想法。

26. A. women B. drivers
C. strangers D. neighbours

C 根据上文内容可知, "我"与这位老妇人素不相识, 此处是说她温暖的的笑容打消了"我"不应该与陌生人(strangers)说话的想法。

27. A. so B. such
C. that D. as

B 通过聊天"我"发现她是如此好的一个人。"such+a(n)+形容词+单数名词"为固定结构, 表示"如此……的一个……"。

28. A. numbers B. car
C. family D. address

D 根据下文"walked down to her house with my friend"可知, 这位老妇人告诉了"我"她的地址(address)。

29. A. remembered B. forgot
C. repeated D. regretted

A 根据下文"I decided to return the favour"可知, 一个月后的一个晚上"我"想起了(remembered)这位老妇人的善行, "我"决定为她做一点事情。

30. A. bread B. salad
C. cookies D. sweets

C 根据下文"think that I was a bad man who

poisoned cookies”可知,“我”为她做了很多饼干 (cookies)。

31. A. nervous B. disappointed
C. confused D. worried

D 根据空后的“she wouldn't remember me or think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies”可知,“我”担心(worried)她不记得“我”或把“我”当成坏人。

32. A. generally B. completely
C. hardly D. usually

B 根据下文“She was so happy, and she hugged me and kissed me”可知,事实证明“我”的想法完全(completely)错误,她看到“我”很高兴并热情地拥抱、亲吻了“我”。

33. A. puzzled B. surprised
C. satisfied D. fearful

B 根据空后的“that someone would do something like that”可知,“我”的做法让她感到很惊讶(surprised)。

34. A. visited B. came
C. drove D. called

D 根据下文的“told my mum on the phone”可知,这位老妇人打电话(called)给“我”妈妈。

35. A. cried B. slept
C. left D. laughed

A 根据空后的“because she was so touched”可知,她感动得哭了(cried)。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

The history of Chinese Teachers' Day **36. dates** (date) back to the Han Dynasty. It is a day of respecting teachers and education. In the past, on the birthday of Confucius, the emperor, **37. followed** (follow) by court officials, would go to the Confucius Temple in honour of the ancient philosopher and would also invite royal teachers to the court for a feast. And on this day, teachers around the nation enjoyed **38. a** day's break and **39. were given** (give) dried meat as gifts.

Excellent teachers would be chosen from academies and **40. institutions** (institution) across the kingdom to report **41. their** (they) deeds to the royal court and be presented with 500 *liang* silver coins as awards. In the Qing Dynasty, well-

performing teachers would be promoted to **42. higher** (high) positions than before or obtain a salary rise.

The customs to show respect to teachers varied from region to region. Today, the goal of Teachers' Day is to form a social climate **43. where** teachers are respected and knowledge is valued. And its date is **44. officially** (official) set at the beginning of the school year. The celebration includes congratulations **45. from** students, recommending outstanding teachers, the exchange of ideas among teachers and so on.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

“传承中华优秀传统文化,满足人民日益增长的精神文化需求”是党的二十大报告中的重要内容。为了传播中华文化,元宵节你要带你的美国朋友 Tom 去街上看花灯,并向他介绍该节日的一些相关知识。你可以根据以下要点进行介绍:

元宵节是中国的传统节日,每年正月十五人们都要举办许多活动,比如吃汤圆、赏花灯、猜灯谜、踩高跷、舞狮等。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:猜灯谜 guess riddles; 踩高跷 walk on stilts; 舞狮 perform lion dance

【参考范文】

The Lantern Festival is a traditional festival in China. It falls on the fifteenth day of the first month of the Chinese lunar calendar. As every Chinese person knows, families get together on the day of the festival and eat *tangyuan*. In the evening, people go out to view the bright and colourful lanterns, which is relaxing and pleasant. In some parts of China, people take part in activities, such as guessing riddles, walking on stilts and performing lion dance.

On the whole, the Lantern Festival is an important festival in China, marking the end of the Spring Festival.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once, many years ago, I pulled a family out of a burning car somewhere in the middle of Wyoming. Last week I received a telephone call from a woman who could not stop crying as she told me that one of my stories had saved her son from committing suicide. In the end, she called me a hero.

That got me thinking about what a hero really is. Was I a hero because I pulled a family from a burning car? If so, how could I be a hero just because I wrote a story that saved someone's life?

Today I decided to look up the word "hero" in the dictionary to see what it exactly meant. It read "a person who does something brave". As I read on, it also said "a person who is good and noble".

That statement impressed me more than the part about being brave.

It got me thinking about something very important. Say I was walking into the local supermarket and I happened to open, and hold the door for someone out of politeness. As they passed me by, I said, "How are you today?" Most of the time that would be no big deal, but this time let's say it was for someone who was deeply depressed and near the end of the rope. That may well be the only kindness or politeness shown to them in a very long time.

Having been near "the end of my rope", after my marriage of twenty years ended, I was in such a condition. I was within hours of trying to get up enough nerve to end the pain and misery. When I returned home, someone had sent me a card in the mail which told me how much they appreciated me as a friend. That wonderful card probably saved my

life. That person, without even knowing it, saved a life and became a hero.

I went on to write many stories like the one that last week saved the life of a teenage boy. In turn that makes the person who sent me the card a double hero.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I suppose that is why I fight so hard to help the children now living in orphanages (孤儿院). _____

Well, who would have ever thought that anyone can become a hero? _____

【参考范文】

I suppose that is why I fight so hard to help the children now living in orphanages (孤儿院). As is known to us all, most teenage boys come out from there with a very hard and offensive attitude against the world. It is true love and kindness that they are lacking in. Luckily, the gifts we send them let them know that they have not been forgotten. They will change for the better seeing someone appreciate them in the world. Hopefully, most of them will never hurt anyone because of the kindness shown to them by those of us who care. Similarly, if it works, we will also become "heroes".

Well, who would have ever thought that anyone can become a hero? What exactly is a hero? Now we have made it clear that being a hero is no big deal. Anyone possibly saves a life, just by being kind and polite to others. If so, our politeness or kindness shown must be felt by people. All in all, what is the best of all is that opportunities to become a hero are accessible to everybody.

Unit 3

On the move

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 略读课文内容,在文中快速找到有关足球的信息;
3. 了解英国流行的五项体育运动及常见的体育运动,并初步思考体育运动能够给人们带来的好处。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. goal *n.* 球门
2. represent *v.* 代表,表示
3. basis *n.* 基础;根据
4. content *n.* 满意,满足
5. defend *v.* (在比赛中)防守,防卫
6. equipment *n.* 装备,设备,用具
7. death *n.* 死,死亡

8. given that 考虑到,鉴于;假定

9. go back 追溯到

10. take... for example 以……为例

11. put down 放下;写下

(二)阅读词汇

1. surfing *n.* 冲浪(运动)

2. factor *n.* 因素,要素

3. soldier *n.* 士兵,军人

4. conflict *n.* 武装冲突,战斗,战争

5. to one's heart's content 尽情地;心满意足地

「课文速览」

表格填空

A Game 1. <u>for the World</u>		
Introduction	2. <u>Reasons</u>	3. <u>Summary/Conclusion</u>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Football enjoys 4. <u>popularity</u> all over the world. • Its history goes 5. <u>back</u> over two thousand years to Ancient China. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It is a simple and 6. <u>cheap</u> game. • It is a game with 7. <u>creativity</u> and excitement. • It is one of the best 8. <u>ways</u> for people to 9. <u>communicate</u>. 	Football is much more than just a 10. <u>sport</u> .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. Which country did today's football start in?

- A. Ancient China.
- B. Great Britain.

C. Germany.

D. America.

2. Which of the following options is NOT the reason for the popularity of football?

- A. Creativity.
- B. Simple.
- C. Professional.
- D. Passion.

3. Soldiers from which two countries played football together on Christmas Day 1914?

- A. Britain and Germany.
- B. Britain and France.
- C. Germany and France.
- D. Germany and Russia.

4. What does the author mainly talk about?

- A. Football is popular because it is simple to play.
- B. Football can bring us excitement.
- C. Football can help people to communicate.
- D. Football enjoys its popularity all over the world.

答案:1~4 BCAD

II. 课文语法填空

Football is popular all over the world. Its history can go back 1. to Ancient China. There are three reasons for football's 2. popularity (popular).

First, football is 3. a simple and cheap game. You don't need expensive 4. equipment (equip). Second, the creativity and excitement 5. on the field make football popular. Even if you can't recognise the skill of 6. professional (profession) players, you still enjoy the game. What's more, football is one of the best ways for people 7. to communicate (communicate). It breaks 8. down walls and brings people together. For example, on Christmas Day 1914, British and German soldiers put down their guns and 9. played (play) football together, 10. which was a moment of peace during years of conflict. All in all, football is popular and more than just a sport.

III. 阅读升华

1. When and where did people begin to play football?

People began to play football about two thousand years ago in Ancient China.

2. What benefits can you get from doing sports?

略

课后素养评价(十一)

I. 阅读理解

Girls should take part in competitive sports to build confidence, and the leaders of a group of girls' schools will argue this week. Helen Fraser, director of the Girls' Day School Trust (GDST), will tell the group that sports can help girls cope with failure.

"All girls, not just the sporty ones, should take physical exercise," Ms Fraser says. "Research that girls are far less active than boys is worrying," she argues. Ms Fraser will tell the group that she supports "sports for all". "That's why I love it when our schools have A, B, C and D teams and beyond," she says.

The GDST draws on research from the Women's Sport and Fitness Foundation which suggests only a quarter of girls in England meet basic levels (水平) of physical activity each week. "One in five girls doesn't do physical activity at all,

twice the proportion (比例) of boys," the research suggests.

Ms Fraser says other research suggests that more than 80% of women business leaders played sports while growing up. She uses the examples of US Secretary of State Condoleezza Rice, who once was a skater and tennis player, and the head of the International Monetary Fund, Christine Lagarde, who was once in the French national swimming team. Ms Fraser says Olympic medallists like Jessica Ennis, Katherine Grainger and Nicola Adams are excellent role models for young women but says women's sports need more money and more news reports.

Valerie Dunsford, head of Sheffield High School, part of GDST, said it was important to offer a large number of sports to attract different types of girls. "Not everyone wants to be out playing hockey

(曲棍球),” said Ms Dunsford.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。研究表明竞技运动有助于女孩们建立信心和增强承受力,帮助她们成功,因此本文鼓励女孩们多参加体育锻炼。

1. Which of the following ideas would Ms Fraser agree with?

- A. Those taking part in sports are always failures.
- B. More should be done to make girls do sports.
- C. Girls are less confident than boys.
- D. Boys are born to be sports lovers.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段第一句““All girls, not just the sporty ones, should take physical exercise,” Ms Fraser says.”和第四段最后一句“Ms Fraser says Olympic medallists like Jessica Ennis, Katherine Grainger and Nicola Adams are excellent role models for young women but says women’s sports need more money and more news reports.”可知,Ms Fraser 认为所有女孩都应该参加体育锻炼,但是鼓励女性参加运动需要更多的资金和更多的新闻报道来给予支持。故 B 项符合 Ms Fraser 的观点。

2. What’s the proportion of boys who never take exercise?

- A. 1/10. B. 1/4.
- C. 1/5. D. 2/5.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段最后一句““One in five girls doesn’t do physical activity at all, twice the proportion (比例) of boys,” the research suggests.”可知,五分之一的孩子根本不参加任何体育锻炼,是男孩比例的两倍。由此可知,不参加体育锻炼的男孩的比例是十分之一。

3. Why does Ms Fraser mention those famous women?

- A. To show hard work will pay off.
- B. To show it’s not easy to be great.
- C. To show sports can help girls to succeed.
- D. To show it’s necessary to balance work and sports.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段第一句“Ms Fraser says other research suggests that more than 80% of women business leaders played sports while growing up.”可知,研究表明,80%以上的女性商业领袖在成长过程中都从事了体育运动。下文紧

接着列举了具体例子,由此可知,Ms Fraser 举例是为了说明运动能够帮助女性成功。

4. What’s the purpose of the text?

- A. To explain the key to success.
- B. To show the importance of sports.
- C. To introduce more games to girls.
- D. To encourage more girls to do sports.

D 写作意图题。文章列举了女性参加体育锻炼的好处和锻炼在许多女性成功的过程中所起的重要作用,并分析了现状,其目的是鼓励女孩们多参加体育锻炼。

II. 七选五

Wouldn’t it be wonderful to be able to afford all of that fancy equipment used in the gyms? 1 Now here are some effective exercises that you can do at home, without the need for any equipment.

Jumping jacks (开合跳)—These are always fun, as they bring back memories of being a kid!

2 They are also great aerobic (有氧的) exercise, and good for warming up, too.

Push-ups—While they can be hard to do, you can find easier ways to do them. You don’t need to pretend you’re “Rocky”, and do them with one hand; just do what works for you. 3 Or, do them standing up against a wall. You will be building up arm strength and working out muscles (肌肉) in your chest area.

Light weightlifting—No, you don’t need to go out and buy expensive weights for this! Just use whatever you can find in your house. Start out with something lighter, such as a can of peas. 4

Step exercises—Using the steps in your home, you can do repetitions which will strengthen your leg muscles. (Just remember to be careful!)

5 You needn’t join a gym, paying a large amount in membership fees each month. You don’t even need the expensive equipment. Use what you have in your house, and work out in the comfort of your home. You will be more likely to keep up with the exercise when you’re comfortable, so just get up and start exercising!

- A. Now you have no excuses!
- B. Getting some exercise is important.
- C. And work yourself up to heavier items little by little.
- D. Who has not done jumping jacks for fun as a child?
- E. Nice as it sounds, it just isn't an option for most people.
- F. Do them on your knees, instead of keeping your legs straight.
- G. To make these exercises even more fun, you can watch TV while doing them.

答案: 1~5 EDFCA

【微点写作】关于运动的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 现在我已经爱上了跑步。

Now I've fallen in love with running.

2. 最初我坚持跑步只是想在前五名里找到我的名字。

At first I kept running just to see my name in the top five.

3. 无论是在体育馆还是在上学的路上,我都可以高兴地跑步。

Whether I'm at the gym or on the road to school, I can run happily.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,找出并理解足球这项运动风靡世界的三个原因;
3. 阅读课文,了解介绍运动类文章的基本特征;
4. 基于课文内容,思考哪些体育运动与足球一样在中国盛行,并分析其背后的原因。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Plastic** is a material that is produced from oil by a chemical process. 塑料
2. Your **goal** as a parent is to help your child become an independent adult. 目标
3. Physical activity is an important **factor** in maintaining fitness. 因素
4. A **soldier** is a member of an army, especially a person who is not an officer. 士兵
5. **Conflict** is fighting between countries or groups of people. 冲突

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>surfing</u> <i>n.</i> 冲浪(运动)	surf <i>v.</i> 冲浪;网上冲浪,浏览因特网
	surfer <i>n.</i> 冲浪者;网上冲浪者

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
	basic <i>adj.</i> 基础的;基本的
<u>basis</u> <i>n.</i> 基础;根据	base <i>v.</i> 以……为根据 <i>n.</i> 基础
<u>defend</u> <i>v.</i> (在比赛中)防守,防卫	defence <i>n.</i> 防御,保卫
<u>equipment</u> <i>n.</i> 装备,设备,用具	equip <i>v.</i> 配备;装备
<u>death</u> <i>n.</i> 死,死亡	die <i>v.</i> 死亡
	dead <i>adj.</i> 死的
<u>represent</u> <i>v.</i> 代表,表示	representative <i>n.</i> 代表;代理人 <i>adj.</i> 代表(制)的;典型的
	representation <i>n.</i> 代理,代表;描绘;表现

III. 补全短语

1. go back 追溯到; 回去, 返回
2. take... for example 以……为例
3. given that 考虑到, 鉴于; 假定
4. to one's heart's content 尽情地; 心满意足地
5. put down 放下; 写下
6. break out 爆发, 突然发生
7. more than 多于; 不仅仅; 非常

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作后置定语

It was then known as *cuju* (kick ball), a game using a ball of animal skins with hair inside.
当时这项运动被称为蹴鞠(意为“以脚踢球”), 使用的球是由动物皮革填充毛发制成的。

2. 句型公式: as 引导方式状语从句

Football as we know it today started in Great Britain, where the game was given new rules.
我们今天所知道的现代足球始于英国, 在那里这项运动被赋予了新的规则。

3. 句型公式: be+*adj.*+to do

It is also a game that is very cheap to play.
它也是一项花费很少的运动。

4. 句型公式: see+宾语+宾语补足语

All over the world you can see kids playing to their hearts' content with a ball made of plastic bags; just like Pelé did when he was a boy.
在世界各地, 你都可以看到孩子们尽情地踢着用塑料袋团成的球——就像贝利小时候那样。

任务型课堂

1. represent v. 代表, 表示; 象征; 描绘, 描述; 正式提出(意见等)

(教材原文) Talk about what you think these things **represent** in a football game.
谈谈你认为这些东西在足球比赛中代表着什么。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **represented** himself **as** a philosopher.
他把自己描述成一个哲学家。

They **represented** their concerns **to** the authorities.
他们向当局陈述了他们关心的问题。

Is a questionnaire answered by 500 people truly **representative of** the population as a whole?
由 500 人参加的问卷调查能真正代表所有民众吗?

The clock in the painting is a symbolic **representation** of the passing of time.
画上的时钟象征着光阴的流逝。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) represent sb./sth. _____ ... 把某人/某物描述为…… represent sth. _____ sb. 向某人说明/传达某事
	(2) representative <i>n.</i> 代表; 代表性人物 <i>adj.</i> 典型的, 有代表性的 be representative _____ (= be typical of) 是……的代表
	(3) representation <i>n.</i> 代表, 代理; 描绘, 表现; 抗议, 陈述

续表

探究
结论

(1) as; to (2) of

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It took the monitor fifteen minutes to represent the key points of the meeting to his classmates.

② It is reported that a high fever is the representative (represent) symptom (症状) of the flu.

③ As a matter of fact, the painting is not representative of his work of the period.

(2) 同义句转换

On behalf of our school, I'm glad to tell you something about the coming volleyball game.

→ Representing our school, I'm glad to tell you something about the coming volleyball game.

2. basis *n.* 基础; 根据

(教材原文) That football is such a simple game to play is perhaps the **basis** of its popularity.

足球是一项如此简单的运动, 这也许是它受欢迎的根本原因。

一感 读句子感悟用法

As far as I'm concerned, common hobbies are the **basis** of making friends.

就我个人而言, 共同的兴趣是交友的基础。

We hope to trade with you **on the basis of** equality and mutual benefit.

我们希望在平等互利的基础上和你方进行贸易。

I suggest that we should meet **on a weekly basis** to discuss progress.

我建议我们每周碰头来讨论进展情况。

The theory he put up **was based on/upon** his many years' research, so it was practical.

他提出的理论是以他多年的研究为依据的,因此是切实可行的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)on the basis _____ 根据;在……的基础上 on a daily/weekly basis 每天/每周 (2)base <i>v.</i> 以……为根据 <i>n.</i> 基部;基地;基础 base... on/upon... 以……为……的基础 be based _____ 以……为基础/依据 at the base of 在……的底部 (3)basic <i>adj.</i> 基本的;基础的
探究结论	(1)of (2)on/upon

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① You'd better learn some basic (base) Chinese before you study for a degree in Chinese culture.

② One should always base his opinion on/upon facts.

③ She was chosen for the job on the basis of her qualifications.

(2)一句多译

这部电影是根据一个真实的故事改编的,非常值得一看。

① The film is based on a real story and it is well worth watching.

② Based on a real story, the film is well worth watching.

③ The film, which is based on a real story, is well worth watching.

3. equipment *n.* 装备,设备,用具

(教材原文) You don't need expensive **equipment**;

even the ball doesn't have to cost much money. 你不需要昂贵的装备,即使是球也不需要花很多钱。

一感 读句子感悟用法

My mother bought a useful **piece of equipment** for the kitchen yesterday.

昨天我妈妈买了一件有用的厨房设备。

I have been busy repairing all the broken **office equipment** these days.

这些天我一直忙着修理所有坏掉的办公设备。

Having **equipped** himself **with** necessary knowledge and skills, the young man went to the job market with much confidence.

具备了必要的知识和技能后,这个年轻人满怀信心地去了就业市场。

The rooms **are equipped with** video cameras.

房间里都装有摄像机。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)a _____ of equipment 一件装备 office/computer equipment 办公/计算机设备 (2)equip... with... 用……装备…… be equipped _____ 配备着…… equip... for sth./to do sth. 为了(做)某事而装备……
探究结论	(1)piece (2)with

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Your training will equip you for your future job.

② Our school is equipped with much advanced equipment bought from abroad. (equip)

③ They are going to equip the workshop with new machines in order to increase output.

④ His work experience equipped him to deal (deal) with all kinds of people.

4. defend *v.* (在比赛中)防守,防卫

(教材原文)... how they use their bodies to pass, score and **defend** can be amazing to see...

……他们如何运用身体传球、得分、防守,这些就足以令人称奇……

一感 读句子感悟用法

All our police officers are trained to **defend** themselves **against/from** knife attacks.

我们所有的警官都受过自卫训练,能够对付持刀袭击。

When a dog attacked me, I **defended myself with** a stick.

当一只狗攻击我时,我拿起一根棍子保护自己。

They were all brave enough to take up arms **in defence of** their country.

他们都勇敢地拿起武器保卫祖国。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) defend... _____ (doing)... 保护……免受……
	defend oneself (with sth.) (用某物)保护自己, 自卫
探究结论	(2) defence <i>n.</i> 防御, 防卫
	_____ defence (of) 保护, 为了保卫;(为……) 辩护
	come to one's defence 出来保护某人
	in one's defence 为某人辩护;站在某人一边
探究结论	(1) against/from (2) in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The monument (纪念碑) was built in memory of the soldiers who died in defence (defend) of their country.

② The Great Wall built from the Qin Dynasty defended their land against/from the invasion (侵略) of the enemies.

③ We should learn how to defend ourselves (we) by the lawful means.

(2) 一句多译

看到这条蛇,他冲过去保护儿子。

① Seeing the snake, he rushed to defend his son. (defend)

② Seeing the snake, he rushed in defence of his son. (defence)

5. “be+adj.+to do”结构

(教材原文) It is also a game that **is very cheap to play**.

它也是一项花费很少的运动。

[句式分析] 本句中运用了“be+形容词+不定式”结构。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Writing **is difficult to teach**.

写作很难教。

The house **is comfortable to live in**.

这间房子住着很舒服。

I think the ice **is too thin to skate on**.

我认为这冰太薄,不能在上面溜冰。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	“be+adj.+to do”结构: 形容词多为表示主语的性质、特征的词,如 easy, hard, difficult, interesting, heavy, pleasant, good 等。 不定式和句子主语是逻辑上的动宾关系,但用 _____ 形式表示被动意义。 在这种结构中,当不定式与句子的主语有逻辑上的动宾关系且是不及物动词时,应该在该不及物动词后加上适当的 _____。
	探究结论 主动;介词

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Standing on the top of the mountain, he found the air was fresh to breathe (breathe).

② In my opinion, the plan designed by the manager is hard to carry (carry) out.

③ The TV programme is easy for us to understand (understand).

(2) 完成句子

① The problem is difficult to deal with.
这个问题很难处理。

② The sentence is easy to translate.
这个句子很容易翻译。

课后素养评价(十二)

I. 单词拼写

- Let me try to represent (表示) my ideas to you in another way.
- They came to a conclusion that exercising 150 minutes a week can help lower death (死亡) risk by 14%.
- His story is written on the basis (基础) of his own experience when he was studying in Harvard University.
- A number of factors (因素) decide whether a movie will be successful or not.
- With so many students taking part in the competition, it is difficult for you to defend (防守) your championship.
- It's probably one of the biggest reasons why roommates experience conflicts (冲突).
- It's a matter of setting your own goals (目标) and following them.
- All the equipment (设备) should be cleaned regularly.

II. 短语填空

go back; given that; break out; put down; to sb.'s heart's content

- Every five minutes, he puts down his pen and looks at the clock.
- A fierce fight broke out between the two brothers just because of a small thing.
- With the final exam finished, the boys played basketball to their hearts' content on the playground.
- It is said that the history of the old library in this town goes back as far as 1875.
- Given that there's little time left, you'd better take a taxi to go there.

III. 完成句子

- If I had the chance, I would make donations to orphans eager to gain future success through learning.
如果有机会,我想捐助那些渴望通过学习来获得未来成功的孤儿。
- As our life improves, we pay more attention to a balanced diet.

随着我们生活水平的提高,我们更注重均衡饮食。

- With more and more forests damaged, some animals and plants are facing the danger of dying out.
由于越来越多的森林遭到破坏,一些动植物正面临着灭绝的危险。
- Tom is an easy-going person while his brother is hard to get along with.
汤姆是一个很随和的人,而他的弟弟却很难相处。
- In the park there are lots of people enjoying themselves in the sunshine.
公园里有很多人在阳光下玩得很开心。

IV. 完形填空

It's my dream. I'm nine years old now, but have been 1 competitively since I was six. I love it, because it makes me feel good. I have a lot of 2 to use up and I can do it by just moving my legs.

One recent Sunday morning, my mum drove me to a 5-km race in Minnesota.

The starting line was 3 because there was also a 10-km race. That morning, I was running confidently and feeling 4. At one point, I came to a 5 in the course. A woman who was directing us 6 the route I thought I was meant to take and told me to go the other way. I was confused, but I had to follow her 7.

After a while I saw route directions for a 10-km race. I was worried, thinking I was 8, but had to keep going. My body started to get 9. I said to myself, "You're almost there. Just keep 10."

11 I saw the finish line. I couldn't believe it. I didn't even know I was running 10-km and I had 12 it. I didn't do this on purpose. It was a 13. I felt happy and proud. It was my first time running such a(n) 14.

It has made me want to do more 10-km races. I hope my story 15 other people to run, too.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者参加一次5千米的长跑比赛,结果阴差阳错,赢得了10千米比赛的励志故事。

1. A. hiking B. swimming
C. driving D. running
D 根据下文“*That morning, I was running confidently*”中的“*running*”可知,作者从六岁开始参加长跑比赛。故选 D。
2. A. time B. resources
C. energy D. patience
C 根据常识可知,长跑要消耗能量。故选 C。
3. A. separated B. crowded
C. prepared D. limited
B 根据下文“*there was also a 10-km race*”可推知,人很多,起跑线上挤满(*crowded*)了人。故选 B。
4. A. shallow B. strong
C. strange D. sensitive
B 根据上文的“*running confidently*”及连词“*and*”可知,作者应该是感觉自己很强壮(*strong*)。故选 B。
5. A. fork B. barrier
C. station D. bridge
A 根据下文“*A woman who was directing us*”可推知,应该是在岔路口(*fork*),才会有人引路。故选 A。
6. A. blocked off B. pulled off
C. tidied up D. gave up
A 根据下文的“*told me to go the other way*”可知,那个女人让作者走另一条路,挡住(*block off*)了作者原以为自己要走的那条。故选 A。
7. A. example B. heart
C. direction D. feeling
C 根据上文“*A woman who was directing us* 6 *the route I thought I was meant to take and told me to go the other way.*”可知,女人在给作者指方向,所以虽然作者很困惑,但是还是按照她指给的方向(*direction*)去跑。故选 C。
8. A. stuck B. lost
C. deserted D. involved
B 根据上文的“*worried*”可知,作者担心自己迷路(*lost*)了。故选 B。
9. A. fuelled B. adapted
C. tired D. relaxed
C 根据下文“*I said to myself, ‘You’re almost there. Just keep* 10 *.’*”可知,作者给自己加油打气。其原因应该是自己累了(*tired*)。故选 C。
10. A. waiting B. shaking
C. watching D. breathing

- D 根据常识可知,跑步的时候,应该调整呼吸,保持呼吸平稳。故选 D。
11. A. Initially B. Actually
C. Obviously D. Eventually
D 根据上文可知,作者之前感觉身体疲倦,一直给自己打气,所以到了终点后,用 *eventually*(终于)表达自己的欣喜之情。故选 D。
12. A. won B. quit
C. changed D. expected
A 根据上文“11 *I saw the finish line. I couldn’t believe it.*”以及下文“*I didn’t do this on purpose.*”可知,作者竟然赢得了(*win*)比赛。故选 A。
13. A. dream B. mistake
C. balance D. lesson
B 根据上文可知,作者本是参加 5 千米跑步的,但是却赢了 10 千米的比赛。所以这是一个“错误”。故选 B。
14. A. test B. risk
C. adventure D. distance
D 根据常识可知,10 千米是一段很长的距离(*distance*)。故选 D。
15. A. allows B. enables
C. inspires D. presses
C 根据上文“*It has made me want to do more 10-km races.*”可知,作者希望自己的经历也可以鼓励(*inspire*)他人去跑步。*inspire sb. to do sth.* 意为“鼓励某人做某事”。故选 C。

【微点写作】关于运动的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我常常劝说周围的人与我一同在业余时间跑步。
I often persuade the people around me to run with me in our spare time.
2. 最近我们学校举办了一场师生篮球赛,目的是改善师生关系。
Recently our school has held a basketball game between teachers and students to improve the relationship between us.
3. 为了鼓励同学们参加户外锻炼,我们学校于 4 月 10 日组织了一次爬山活动。
In order to encourage the students to take outdoor exercise, our school organised a mountain-climbing activity on April 10.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 了解不定式作定语和结果状语的用法,并在真实语境中加以运用;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 学习关于不同运动方式及其益处的词汇和表达;
4. 了解中国传统体育运动项目,加深对中国文化的理解,增强传播中国文化的意识。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Since you have a strong desire to learn Chinese culture, I think Beijing Language and Culture University is an **ideal** place for you.

理想的,最合适的

2. The screen itself can also be referred to as the **display**.

显示器

3. The patient's blood pressure was **monitored** regularly by the nurse.

监测

4. One doctor has **charted** a dramatic rise in local childhood asthma(哮喘) since the road was built.

记录

5. His **upper** lip was flat, but the lower one sagged (下垂的).

上面的

6. She was a **master** of the English language.

大师,能手

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>adjustable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可调整的, 可调节的	<u>adjust</u> <i>v.</i> 调整;(使)适合
	<u>adjustment</u> <i>n.</i> 调整,调节
<u>balance</u> <i>n.</i> 平衡;天平 <i>v.</i> 平衡;权衡	<u>balanced</u> <i>adj.</i> 均衡的
	<u>involved</u> <i>adj.</i> 参与的;卷入的;有关联的
<u>involve</u> <i>v.</i> 包含,需要;涉及;参与	<u>involvement</u> <i>n.</i> 参与;卷入;牵连

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>response</u> <i>n.</i> 回答,答复	<u>respond</u> <i>v.</i> 回答;响应;作出反应
<u>available</u> <i>adj.</i> 可用的,可获得的	<u>availability</u> <i>n.</i> 有效;有用;有益;可得到的人(或物);可用性

III. 补全短语

1. fit into (使)适合,适应;符合
2. keep track of 跟踪
3. work out 解决,解答;计算出;锻炼身体;制订出
4. due to 由于,因为
5. find out 弄清,查明

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:so that 引导结果状语从句

It also has a voice control setting that enables you to stay hands-free, while its waterproof band is fully adjustable so that it is comfortable to wear. 它还有一个语音控制设置,使您无需手持,同时它的防水带是完全可调节的,因此佩戴起来十分舒适。

2. 句型公式:keep+宾语+宾语补足语

You have to keep your body very still. 你必须保持你的身体静止不动。

任务型课堂

1. adjustable *adj.* 可调整的, 可调节的

(教材原文) It also has a voice control setting that enables you to stay hands-free, while its waterproof band is fully **adjustable** so that it is comfortable to wear.

它还有一个语音控制设置, 使您无需手持, 同时它的防水带是完全可调节的, 因此佩戴起来十分舒适。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **adjusted himself** quickly **to** the heat of the country.

他很快就让自己适应了个国家炎热的天气。

It took her a while to **adjust to** living alone.

她过了一段时间才适应独自生活。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) adjust <i>v.</i> (使)适应; (使)习惯; 调整, 调节 adjust oneself _____ sth. 使自己适应某事 adjust to (doing) sth. 适应(做)某事 adjust... (to sth.) (根据某事物)对……进行调整/调整
探究结论	(2) adjustment <i>n.</i> [C, U] 调整; 适应 make adjustment(s) (to...) (对……)进行调整; 做出调整(以适应……)
探究结论	(1) to

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① They should adjust their websites to the needs of younger users.

② We have made adjustment(s) (adjust) to our plan so that it can meet your request.

③ The height of the bicycle seat is adjustable (adjust).

④ As an exchange student, it took me a long time to adjust myself to using (use) chopsticks in China.

2. balance *n.* 平衡 *v.* (使)保持平衡; (使)平稳

(教材原文) Using only a rope, you can develop your footwork and **balance**.

只用一根绳子, 你就可以增强你的步法和平衡。

一感 读句子感悟用法

You are working too hard. You'd better **keep a balance between** work **and** relaxation.

你工作太用功了。你最好使工作与休闲保持平衡。

When he was running after his sister, the boy **lost his balance** and had a bad fall.

当这个男孩追赶他的妹妹的时候, 他失去了平衡, 狠狠地摔了一跤。

Before making the decision, you'd better **balance** the advantages **against** the disadvantages.

在做出决定之前, 你应当权衡利弊。

You'd better **keep a balanced diet** for the benefit of your health.

为了有益于身体健康, 你最好均衡饮食。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) keep _____ / one's balance 保持平衡 keep a balance between A and B 保持 A 与 B 之间的平衡 keep the balance of nature 维持生态平衡 lose one's balance 失去平衡
探究结论	(2) balance A _____ B 权衡 A 和 B (3) _____ <i>adj.</i> 平衡的 keep _____ balanced diet 保持均衡的饮食
探究结论	(1) a (2) against (3) balanced; a

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Before making the final decision, you'd better balance the advantages against the disadvantages.

② Keeping a balanced (balance) diet is of great importance, especially for teens who are growing up.

(2)完成句子

How important and necessary it is for us to keep the balance of nature and protect the environment!

对我们来说,维持生态平衡、保护环境是多么重要和必要啊!

3. response n. 回答,答复

(教材原文) During the interview, listen carefully to each question and try to understand the main ideas within the interviewee's **responses**.

在(听)采访(材料的)过程中,仔细听每个问题,试着理解参加被采访者所回答的主要观点。

一感 读句子感悟用法

She **made no response**, which made me very angry.
她没有回答,这使我非常生气。

His remarks came **in response to** the questions raised by the students.

他的评论是对学生所提出问题的回复。

Knowing basic first-aid techniques will help you **respond quickly to** emergencies.

知道基本的急救技能有助于你迅速应对紧急情况。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) make a response to 回答/响应……;对……作出反应 in response _____ 对……作出反应 (2) _____ v. 回答;响应;作出反应 respond to sth. 对某事作出回答/反应
探究结论	(1) to (2) respond

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Scientists say the results suggest that the heart is able to influence how the brain responds to a fearful event.

② The famous film star made no response (respond) to the questions asked by the reporters.

③ These comments came in response to specific questions.

(2) 一句多译

她没有回答我的问题。

① She didn't respond to my questions. (respond)

② She made no response to my questions. (response)

语法探究

动词不定式作定语和结果状语

「语法感知」

① That football is such a simple game **to play** is perhaps the basis of its popularity.

② It is fun enough **to attract** millions of people.

③ What's more, football has become one of the best ways for people **to communicate**.

④ This might sound funny, but one only has to think about the Earth **to realise** that our planet is shaped like a football.

1. 句①和句③中的动词不定式作定语。

2. 句②和句④中的动词不定式作结果状语。

「语法精讲」

一、概念理解

不定式的形式及意义

形式	主动语态	被动语态	意义
一般式	to do	to be done	不定式的动作与句中谓语动词的动作同时发生或在其后发生
进行式	to be doing	—	不定式的动作与句中谓语动词的动作同时发生
完成式	to have done	to have been done	不定式的动作发生在句中谓语动词的动作之前

Thousands of young people are learning **to ski**.

成千上万的年轻人在学习滑雪。(同时进行)

He asked me **to help** him with the task.

他让我帮他做这个任务。(不定式的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之后)

He is said **to be writing** a preface to the book.

据说他正在为这本书写前言。(同时进行)

The girl was reported **to have been lost** for a month.

据报道那个女孩已经失踪一个月了。(不定式的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之前)

名师点拨

一般而言,不定式的逻辑主语是构成不定式的动词所表示动作的执行者时,不定式用主动形式;不定式的逻辑主语是构成不定式的动词所表示动作的承受者时,不定式用被动形式。

The doctor recommended him to air the room.

医生建议他给房间透透气。

The doctor recommended the room to be aired.

医生建议给房间透透气。

二、语法规则

1. 不定式作定语

(1)不定式作定语常表示将来的动作。

The question **to be discussed** at the meeting is very important.

将在会议上讨论的那个问题非常重要。

(2)不定式常放在某些名词或代词后作定语。如果作定语的不定式是不及物动词,或者不定式所修饰的名词或代词是不定式动作的地点、工具等,不定式后需要加相应的介词。

He has no pen **to write with**.

他没有用来写字的钢笔。

(3)不定式用来修饰被序数词、最高级或 no, all, any 等限定的中心词,且与中心词之间为逻辑上的主动关系。

He is always **the first to arrive at** the school and **the last to leave** the school.

他总是第一个到校,最后一个离校。

(4)被修饰词是抽象名词时,常用不定式作定语。常见的该类名词有 ability, chance, idea, hope, wish, excuse, promise, attempt, way 等。

His **wish to buy** a car came true.

他要买辆车的愿望实现了。

2. 不定式作结果状语

(1)不定式作结果状语表示出乎意料的或不好的结果,表示的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之后时,通常用一般式。

Few days later he came back **to find** that the troops had left.

几天之后他回来了,却发现部队已经离开了。

(2)不定式前常有 only 或 just,而且不定式前可加上其自身的逻辑主语(for...)

He tried his best to prepare for the contest, **only to be told** it was cancelled.

他全力以赴地为这次竞赛做准备,结果却被告知竞赛取消了。

He earned a lot of money **only for his son to squander** it.

他赚了很多钱,却被儿子挥霍一空。

(3)不定式作结果状语,常用在“... enough to do”“too... to do”“so... as to do”“such... as to do”结构中。

名师点拨

现在分词和不定式作结果状语的区别:

现在分词作结果状语多表示结果在意料之中,其作用相当于一个非限制性定语从句;而不定式作结果状语通常表示结果在意料之外。

He dropped the glass, breaking it into pieces.

他把杯子掉在地上,结果摔成了碎片。

I hurried to his house, only to find him out.

我匆忙赶到他家,结果却发现他不在家。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

- John said he had an important meeting to attend (attend) so he couldn't come to visit me.
- He hurried to the train station, only to find (find) the train had left.
- To save (save) energy, we turn off the lights for Earth Hour on the last Saturday in March.
- When he left, he said to me, "I'm sorry to have troubled (trouble) you so much."
- The airport to be completed (complete) next year will help promote tourism in this area.
- He is wealthy enough to afford (afford) such a big house.

II. 完成句子

- I hurried to the post office, only to find it closed.
我匆忙赶到邮局,结果却发现邮局关门了。
- His eyesight is too poor to see such small letters clearly.
他的视力太差,看不清楚这么小的字母。

- She was the first woman to win the gold medal in the Olympic Games.
她是第一位在奥林匹克运动会上获得金牌的妇女。
- Will you please bring me a chair to sit on?
请给我拿把坐的椅子好吗?

课后素养评价(十三)

I. 选词填空

fit into; work out; due to; available; adjustable; balance; involve; master; response; keep track of

- If you want to have a happy school life, you'd better keep a balance between study and relaxation.
- Students should involve themselves in community activities where they can gain experience for growth.
- To stay in shape, Kathy takes exercise three times a week and keeps track of the latest information on health.
- The height of the bicycle seat is adjustable.
- "Sure, why not?" was his response to all of Bill's suggestions.
- The coast road is closed due to bad weather.
- I'll change my timetable to fit into with yours.
- Amazingly, they worked out how to do this successfully.
- It's reported that not enough information is available to scientists.
- I've completely mastered the use of all the words I've learned.

II. 单句语法填空

- His first book to be published (publish) next month is based on a true story.
- The freeway being built (build) now will lead to the city.
- To speak (speak) English well, one must have a lot of practice.
- The majority of British students leaving/to leave (leave) university in the coming month do not expect to get satisfying jobs for the weak employment market.
- The patient is well enough to sit (sit) up in

bed now.

- She is always the last to hand (hand) in homework.
- I was surprised to watch (watch) him eat so quickly.
- At last he had a chance to go (go) abroad.
- I've made a few minor adjustments (adjust) to the plan.
- Don't get involved (involve) in this kind of matter. It's none of your business.

III. 阅读理解

Beach volleyball is one of those sports that can be an exciting game to play and watch. It's really easy, and all you need is sand, a net and a group of people, of any age or fitness level, who want to have fun.

Beach volleyball can be played with as few as two people in each team, making a total of four people. However, if you are less skilled and experienced in the game, it will be easier to play with a larger team. The more players you have, the less ground each person will be responsible for covering and the more time they will have to recover between shots. If you only have a few players, each of you will get a lot of running for the ball after each volley (截球). If you are looking for a relaxing, fun and low-key experience, choose larger teams.

Beach volleyball is similar to regular volleyball in its rules. However, even experienced volleyball players do not realise how much more difficult it is to run and jump on sand. Since it is harder to move quickly on sand than a hard surface, play will be much slower than regular volleyball on a court. When an athlete trains for beach volleyball, he/she will focus on building lower body strength as well as

upper body strength. Strengthening his/her legs is extremely important. This improves the player's ability to move quickly and accurately on sand despite the resistance. The ability to jump high and land without injury is necessary for beach volleyball players.

Whether you are in it for the competition, or just to have a great time with your friends, beach volleyball can be very exciting and fun. You may start out with friends and may soon fall in love with the sport.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了沙滩排球是一项令人兴奋的体育运动,任何年龄的人都可以玩。

- When playing beach volleyball, in which situation will you feel most relaxed?
 - Playing in a 2-person team.
 - Playing in a 4-person team.
 - Playing in a 6-person team.
 - Playing in an 11-person team.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“If you are looking for a relaxing, fun and low-key experience, choose larger teams.”可知,参加沙滩排球的人数越多,你会感到越轻松。故选 D。
- What can we infer from Paragraph 3?
 - Experienced volleyball players know clearly it is hard to run and jump on sand.
 - Lower body strength is more important than upper body strength.
 - A person must have strong legs if he/she wants to run and jump quickly on sand.
 - The rules of beach volleyball are the same as those of regular volleyball.

C 推理判断题。第三段介绍了沙滩排球和常规排球的区别。根据本段中的“he/she will focus on building lower body strength as well as upper

body strength”可知,要想跳得高,运动员的下肢必须要强壮,所以 C 项正确。

- Why is playing beach volleyball much slower than playing regular volleyball?
 - Because it is not easy to move on sand.
 - Because beach volleyball has a larger court.
 - Because the teams of beach volleyball are larger.
 - Because beach volleyball players are not experienced.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Since it is harder to move quickly on sand than a hard surface”可知,在沙滩上快速运动比在坚硬的地面上困难,因此沙滩排球的进度要慢于普通排球。故选 A。
- What does the author think of beach volleyball?
 - It's a difficult sport.
 - It's an exciting and interesting sport.
 - It's a sport which only a few people love.
 - It's a sport which needs few skills.

B 推理判断题。根据文章首段以及最后一段的内容可知,沙滩排球是一项让人兴奋且充满乐趣的体育活动。故选 B。

【微点写作】关于运动的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 我 6 岁时,父母经常带我去游泳池。
When I was six years old, my parents often took me to a swimming pool.
- 沐浴在阳光里,我们高兴得跳起来。
Bathed in the sunshine, we jumped for joy.
- 由于很长时间没有进行体育锻炼了,我在运动会上跑得很慢。
Not having exercised for a long time, I ran very slowly in the sports meeting.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 初步了解柱状图的特点和功能,学会利用图表收集和整合信息；
- 深入理解体育运动这一主题,并能运用所学知识介绍一项体育运动,分析该项体育运动的规则,并说明自己推荐这项体育运动的理由。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- persuade *v.* 说服,劝服
- sweaty *adj.* 满是汗的,被汗水湿透的
- power *n.* 力量
- disappear *v.* 消失,不见
- inspire *v.* 鼓舞,激励
- ultimate *adj.* (目标等)最终的
- get in touch 取得联系
- die out 消失,绝迹,灭绝

9. as well as 也,还,而且

10. deal with 处理;对付,与……打交道

(二)阅读词汇

- interpret *v.* 理解,了解,解释
- tension *n.* 紧张,焦虑
- lung *n.* 肺
- network *n.* 人际关系网,联络网
- ache *v.* (持续而隐隐地)作痛
- champion *n.* (尤指体育比赛中的)冠军,第一名
- data *n.* 资料,数据
- in turn 依次,轮流;反过来
- around the corner 就在附近,即将发生

「课文速览」

表格填空

Name	Age	City	Information
Li Yue	16	Beijing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was born with asthma. • He joined the local 1. athletics club. • He took part in local races and 2. national competitions and won 3. silver.
Sarah	36	Montreal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She didn't do any exercise. • She 4. discovered an app called Running Power. • She kept 5. running just to see her name in the top five. • She 6. came across other runners in the same area running for the same purpose!
David	52	New York	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • As a computer engineer, there's always a new challenge. It can be stressful at times and he feels 7. anxious. • He goes running as often as possible. • By the end of the run, all his 8. stress has disappeared.
Grace	25	Manchester	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She entered the Great Gorilla Run in London — a programme to 9. raise money to save the world's last remaining gorillas from 10. dying out. • Each runner receives a gorilla suit and off they go!

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the main idea of the passage?
 - Running is the best sport all over the world.
 - This global site is very popular all over the world.
 - Reasons for starting running and benefits gained from running.
 - Running can cure your disease and make you better and better.
- Why does Li Yue start running?
 - He loves running since childhood.
 - He was born with asthma and has to start running.
 - Running can improve his lung function and help treat his asthma.
 - He wants to win gold in national competitions.
- Who kept running for the purpose of winning the top five?
 - David.
 - Li Yue.
 - Grace.
 - Sarah.
- In the course of running, the computer engineer _____.
 - removed his tension from work
 - recovered from his illness

C. came across other runners

D. helped to save gorillas

答案: 1~4 CCDA

II. 课文语法填空

Li Yue joined a local athletics club **1. because** exercise could improve how his lungs work. As his **2. fitness** (fit) and running improved, he started running in **3. national** (nation) competitions. Sarah discovered an app **4. called** (call) Running Power. At first, she kept running just **5. to see** (see) her name in the top five. But now she **6. has fallen** (fall) in love with running. For David, as **7. a** computer engineer, there's always a new challenge, so he goes running to reduce his stress. Grace entered the Great Gorilla Run in London, **8. which** is run by The Gorilla Organization to raise money to save the world's last remaining gorillas from **9. dying** (die) out. After the run, **10. although/though** she was sweaty and tired, she felt she had a great day.

III. 阅读升华

- What does David do when he feels stressful and nervous?
He goes running as often as he possibly can.
- How did Grace feel by helping to save gorillas?
Tired but happy.

课后素养评价(十四)

I. 单词拼写

- Although he is very stubborn (固执), I have determined to persuade (说服) him to change his mind.
- Writing a report may involve presenting data (资料) and linking complex ideas.
- As the living environment becomes worse and worse, many species (物种) are gradually disappearing (消失).
- Her eyes ached (隐隐地作痛) for lack of sleep.
- Our ultimate (最终的) goal must be the preservation of the environment.
- Through our lifetime we need to learn to recognise and interpret (了解) other people's

faces and facial expressions.

- It is believed that listening to light music can help ease (减轻) tension (紧张).
- He felt all hot and sweaty (满是汗的) during the two hours.
- The admiration and respect his uncle earned (赢得) inspired (激励) Nielsen to make a career in acting.
- People are confused about all the different labels (标签) on food these days.
- The young athlete knows that becoming the world champion (冠军) is a hard and long way.
- It's believed that a man should rely upon his own power (力量).

II. 短语填空

at first; as well as; at times; save... from...; die out; in turn; deal with

1. He was very nervous at first, but soon he calmed down.
2. The shop at the corner of the street sold books as well as newspapers.
3. If these animals and plants die out, we will never see them again.
4. The climate in our city is warm and wet, but it can be cold at times.
5. It is very important to teach the children how to deal with others' kindness and rudeness.
6. The change of the climate also makes the earth warmer. In turn, the warmth of the earth changes the climate, too.
7. We should take effective measures to save the endangered animals from extinction (灭绝).

III. 完成句子

1. He had saved enough money so that he could live in comfort.
他攒了足够的钱,足以舒舒服服地过日子。
2. It is very important to speak English more.
多讲英语是很重要的。
3. If you miss this chance, it may be years before you get another one.
如果你错过了这次机会,可能要过很多年你才能再获得一次。
4. We are going to visit the Water Cube together with the foreign guests tomorrow whether it rains or not.
无论明天是否下雨,我们都将和外国来宾一起参观水立方。
5. Good habits always lead to high efficiency, while bad ones bring the opposite.
好习惯总是产生高效率,而坏习惯则相反。

IV. 七选五

How to Deal with Losing in Sports?

Winning and losing go hand in hand when it comes to sports. Great athletes never let the highs get too high, or the lows get too low. The result of a match is uncertain. The only thing that is certain is the competition itself. 1 The result is just the result of all the hard work they put in.

Congratulate your opponents (对手) after a loss. Respect your opponents because they put in as much work as you, or more than you. This shows

the respect for the opponents and the contests.

Accept the fact that the loss is not one's fault. This is harder to do in an individual sport, and is absolutely important in a team sport. 2 Don't get down on yourself. If competing in an individual sport, accept that losing is a part of competing and move on.

Examine why you lose the competition. Ask yourself if you did everything possible to prepare for the competition. Ask yourself if you gave it all during the competition. 3 This is crucial (至关重要的) if competing in an individual sport. If competing in a team sport, recognise that everyone isn't perfect and examine the loss from the team opinion.

4 Practise more, and practise better. Correct whatever mistakes made during the match. Get stronger, faster and smarter and do whatever it takes.

Seek out the support and encouragement of teammates and coaches. Don't allow yourself to think negatively. Avoid negative people. 5 Never accuse a competitor of cheating, if it is not true. This will make you seem as if you are looking for excuses.

- A. Work harder to get better.
- B. Don't put blame on anyone.
- C. Train hard to achieve your aim.
- D. Winning is No.1 for great athletes.
- E. Great athletes love the competition.
- F. Stay positive and trust your work value.
- G. Analyse any mistakes you might have made.

答案:1~5 EBGAF

【微点写作】关于运动的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我们一赢得比赛,我就想到了一句古老的谚语——不劳则无获。

The moment we won the game, an old saying hit my mind—No pains, no gains.

2. 操场上所有人都站立着,欢呼声持续了5分钟。

Everyone on the playground stood, and the cheering went on for 5 minutes.

3. 总之,我们从这次活动中受益匪浅。

To sum up, we benefited a lot from the activity.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 基于文章内容,能运用所学知识描述自己或他人的运动故事;
3. 理解课文内容,通过复述跑步者的故事,从每个故事中体会积极的人生态度。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. We've been collecting **data** from all over the country to know the situation of the epidemic (传染病). 数据
2. **Tension** is a feeling of worry and anxiety which makes it difficult for you to relax. 紧张
3. A **label** is a piece of paper or plastic that is attached to an object in order to give information about it. 标签
4. My leg is giving me much less pain but still **aches** when I sit down. (持续而隐隐地)作痛
5. A **champion** is someone who has won first prize in a competition, contest, or fight. 冠军

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>interpret</u> v. 理解,了解,解释	interpretation n. 理解,解释; 演绎
	interpretative adj. 理解的,解释的
	interpreter n. 口译者
<u>power</u> n. 力量	powerful adj. 强大的;有力的
	powerless adj. 无力的
<u>disappear</u> v. 消失,不见	disappearance n. 消失
	appear v. 出现
	appearance n. 外观;外貌;出现
<u>sweaty</u> adj. 满是汗的,被汗水湿透的	sweat n. 汗,汗水 v. 出汗,流汗
<u>inspire</u> v. 鼓舞,激励	inspired adj. 受到鼓舞的
	inspiring adj. 令人鼓舞的,振奋人心的
	inspiration n. 灵感;鼓舞

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>persuade</u> v. 说服,劝服	persuasion n. 说服,劝服
	persuasive adj. 有说服力的
<u>ultimate</u> adj. (目标等)最终的	ultimately adv. 最终,最后

III. 补全短语

1. in turn 依次,轮流;反过来
2. by the end of 到……为止
3. take part in 参加,参与
4. die out 消失,绝迹,灭绝
5. at times 有时

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: before 引导时间状语从句
But before I knew it, I was taking part in local races.
但是我开始参加本地的比赛之后才知道这一点。
2. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句
As my fitness and my running improved, I started running in national competitions.
随着身体健康状况的改善和跑步能力的提高,我开始参加全国跑步比赛。
3. 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语
It can be quite stressful at times, though, which in turn makes me feel anxious.
然而,有时候工作的压力是非常大的,这也相应地会让我感到焦虑。
4. 句型公式: whether... or... 引导让步状语从句
Whether I'm at the gym or on the road, my nervous energy pushes me through mile one.
无论我是在健身房还是在路上,跑第一英里的时候我还能感受到神经的紧张。
5. 句型公式: as well as
I had a great day out in London, as well as helping to save gorillas!
我在伦敦度过了愉快的一天,同时也为拯救大猩猩出了力!

任务型课堂

1. power n. 力量; 权力; 动力; 能力

(教材原文) Then I discovered an app called Running **Power**.

后来我发现了一款名为“奔跑的力量”的应用软件。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

It has been two years since the party **came to/into power**.

这个政党上台执政已两年了。

She is said to **have the power of** foreseeing the future.

据说她有预测未来的能力。

I wish it were **in/within my power to** change the decision.

我希望有能力改变这个决定。

Never before has our country been so **powerful** as it is today.

我们的国家从未像今天这样强大。

二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) come _____/into power 掌权; 上台(表动作) be in power 掌权(表状态) have the power of 有……的能力 beyond/out of one's power 超出某人的能力 in/within one's power to do sth. 有权力/能力做某事
	(2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 强大的 powerless <i>adj.</i> 无力的; 没有能力的
探究结论	(1) to (2) powerful

三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It seems obvious that these have made humankind the most powerful (power) animal on earth.

② Though he has been in power for two years, he hasn't found an effective solution to the country's economic problems.

(2) 完成句子

① It is said that the new mayor will come to/into power next month.

据说新市长将于下个月上任。

② Unfortunately, it's beyond/out of my power to get through the work in such a short time.

不幸的是, 我无法在这么短的时间内完成这项工作。

2. inspire v. 鼓舞, 激励

(教材原文) End by saying why he/she **inspires** you.

最后说说他/她为什么会激励你。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

The teachers encourage us to build up our confidence and **inspire** us **to** improve our study.

老师们鼓励我们树立信心, 并且激励我们提高学习成绩。

She **was so inspired by** the people she met online that she decided to start an IT club to teach older people how to use computers and the Internet.

她受到网友的启发, 决定成立一个 IT 俱乐部来教老年人学习使用电脑和互联网。

He is regarded as one of the most **inspiring** figures in the world.

他被认为是世界上最鼓舞人心的人物之一。

二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) inspire sb. to do sth. 激励/鼓励某人做某事 inspire sb. with sth. = inspire sth. in sb. 激起某人的……(某种情感)
	be inspired _____ 受到……的启发; 由……得到灵感
探究结论	(2) inspiration <i>n.</i> 灵感; 鼓舞 (3) inspired <i>adj.</i> 受到鼓舞的 (4) _____ <i>adj.</i> 令人鼓舞的, 振奋人心的
	(1) by (4) inspiring

三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Inspired (inspire) by his words, they went on climbing the snowy mountains.

② I really wonder where his inspiration (inspire)

came from.

(2)完成句子

①The teacher inspires his students to give their opinions actively even if the opinions are different from his own.

这位老师鼓励学生们积极地发表他们自己的看法,即使这些看法与他的不同。

② His encouraging remarks inspired me with confidence/inspired confidence in me.

他的一番鼓舞人心的话激起了我的信心。

3. persuade v. 说服, 劝服

(教材原文) He then **persuaded** me to try ice hockey.

然后他说服我去打冰球。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Don't let yourself **be persuaded into** buying things you don't really want.

不要被说服买你并不需要的东西。

He **tried to persuade** me **to** give up smoking, but in vain.

他试图说服我戒烟,但是没有用。

McFadden must **persuade** the jury **of** her innocence.

麦克法登必须让陪审团相信她是无辜的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	persuade sb. to do sth.	} 说服某人 做某事
	(1) persuade sb. _____ doing sth.	
	persuade sb. not to do sth.	} 说服某人 不做某事
	(2) persuade sb. out of doing sth.	
(3) try to persuade sb. _____ to do sth.	} 试图说服某人 做某事(但未必 说服成功)	
advise sb. to do sth.		
	(4) persuade sb. _____ sth. 使某人相信某事	
探究结论	(1)into (4)of	

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① I managed to persuade him to support (support) my plan to sell popcorn from door to door.

② Get a coffee machine for your home or office, or persuade your company into buying (buy) one.

③ In a debate you need to persuade the listeners of the soundness of your argument.

(2)一句多译

他说服了她不去参加聚会。

① He persuaded her not to go to the party.

② He persuaded her out of going to the party.

4. before 引导时间状语从句

(教材原文) But **before** I knew it, I was taking part in local races.

但是我开始参加本地的比赛之后才知道这一点。

[句式分析]句中 before 用作连词,常用来表示从句动作发生之前的时间,译法灵活。

一感 读句子感悟用法

She and her family hid away for nearly twenty-five months **before** they were discovered.

她与她的家人躲藏了将近二十五个月之后才发现。

As a matter of fact, **it was a long time before** I knew the truth.

事实上,过了好长时间我才知道事情的真相。

It is/has been two weeks since you came here for the exchange, which has benefited us all.

你们来这儿参加这个交流活动已经两周了,这项活动对我们都有益的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)强调从句动作发生在主句之前, before 意为“_____”。
	(2)强调动作发生的时间长, before 意为“过了(多久)才……”。
	(3)在“It + be + 时间段 + before 从句”中,意为“_____”。
	(4)在“It + be + not + long + before 从句”中,意为“……不久就……”。
	(5)“It + be + 一段时间 + since 从句”中表示“自从……(到现在)有多长时间了”。
探究结论	(1)还没来得及……就…… (3)……之后才……

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① How time flies! Two weeks has gone by before we know it.

② John is sure that it won't be long before he is ready for his new job.

③ It is/has been (be) three years since Jack was a teacher.

(2) 完成句子

① It was a long time before I realised that only by trusting each other can we maintain a good relationship with others.

过了很长一段时间,我才意识到只有相互信任,我们才能与他人保持良好的关系。

② It wasn't long before they got the hang of skating on their own.

没过多久,他们就自己掌握了滑冰的窍门。

写作探究**关于运动的故事****一、写作指导**

本单元的写作话题是“关于运动的故事”,在体裁上属于记叙文。描写这类话题应主要使用叙述的方法,也可以穿插一些说明和议论。

1. 首先确定主题,然后围绕主题展开描写;
2. 列全要点,草拟提纲;先说明自己最喜欢的一项运动,然后描写这项运动带来的益处,最后进行简单总结;
3. 要注意语言准确、简洁平实,做到表达清晰、条理清楚、层次分明;
4. 注意把握时态,在这类写作中,各种时态可以兼用,但主要是一般现在时和一般过去时;
5. 按照要求确定好写作时的人称,一般情况下常用第一人称或第三人称。

二、典题示例

党的二十大报告指出:“广泛开展全民健身活动,加强青少年体育工作,促进群众体育和竞技体育全面发展,加快建设体育强国。”假如你是李华,你的朋友 Peter 上周写信告诉你,他对你的运动经历很感兴趣,请你写一封回信跟他分享你的一次运动经历。

注意:词数应为 80 左右。

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般现在时、一般过去时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 事件的背景信息,如时间、人物、环境等 2. 事件发生的经过 3. 自己的感受或得到的启示

四、遣词造句**(一) 核心词汇**

- ① share... with... 与……分享……
- ② run a marathon 跑马拉松
- ③ set off early 早早出发
- ④ get wet all through 全身被淋透
- ⑤ feel cold and tired 感到寒冷和疲惫
- ⑥ can't help doing sth. 禁不住做某事
- ⑦ give up 放弃
- ⑧ cheer... up 使……振作起来

(二) 完成句子

- ① I'm writing to share my sports experience with you (跟你分享我的运动经历).
- ② I still remember the day (仍然记得这一天) of last summer.
- ③ I went to run a marathon with my father (跟我爸爸去跑马拉松).
- ④ I got wet all through (被淋透了) and felt cold and tired.

⑤ So I couldn't help complaining (忍不住抱怨) and wanted to give up.

⑥ Just at that time, my father encouraged me not to give up (鼓励我不要放弃) and put his coat on me softly.

⑦ We got to the finish line at last (最终到达了终点线) and enjoyed the praise that I had never heard (从没听到过).

(三) 句式升级

① 用定语从句合并(二)中的句②③

I still remember the day of last summer when I went to run a marathon with my father.

② 用现在分词作状语改写(二)中的句④

I got wet all through, feeling cold and tired.

③ 用现在分词作状语升级(二)中的句⑦

We got to the finish line at last, enjoying the praise that I had never heard.

(四) 连句成篇

Dear Peter,

How's everything going these days? I'm writing to share my sports experience with you.

I still remember the day of last summer when I went to run a marathon with my father. We set off early in the morning. Unluckily, it began to rain on the halfway. I got wet all through, feeling cold and tired. So I couldn't help complaining and wanted to give up. Just at that time, my father encouraged me not to give up and put his coat on me softly. He told me, "We won't see the beautiful scenery unless we reach the destination." His words really cheered me up. We got to the finish line at last, enjoying the praise that I had never heard.

This experience taught me that perseverance is the key to success. Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,
Li Hua

五、学以致用

假定你是李华, 你的英国朋友 Emily 得知你最近在国际短跑比赛中获得冠军, 来信请你介绍一下你的运动经历。请你给她写一封回信, 要点包括:

1. 开始运动的时间;
2. 运动中遇到的困难;
3. 希望实现的运动目标。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯。

参考词汇: 领奖台 podium

【参考范文】

Dear Emily,

I am so delighted to hear from you. I was so excited when I stood on the podium again this year.

I won a place in the national team when I was 15 years old and won several championships after that. Hurting my waist again last year, I had to take time off to recover from the injury. It was a long time before my doctor told me that I could return to the game. With my coach's help, I started training again to regain my previous capabilities. To our happiness, I won the gold medal in the first competition of this year. And who knows, maybe I can break a world record one day!

Yours,
Li Hua

课后素养评价(十五)

I. 单句语法填空

1. Music can make you laugh, cry or shout. It's also a great source of inspiration (inspire).
2. More and more animals have been hunted, some of which are dying out.
3. It's no use trying to persuade him to have (have) a holiday because he is facing a challenge.
4. From my point of view, the disappearance (disappear) of dialects is the loss of our culture.
5. On average, a powerful (power) earthquake occurs less than once every two years.

II. 完成句子

1. As the final exam is around the corner, we are busy making full preparations for it.
随着期末考试即将来临,我们正忙着为此做充分的准备。
2. Listening to music always makes me feel relaxed and joyful.
听音乐总是让我感到放松和快乐。
3. All theories originate from practice and in turn serve practice.
任何理论都来源于实践,反过来为实践服务。
4. The activity is to raise money for the homeless people.
这次活动是为无家可归的人筹款。
5. As well as having difficulty adapting herself to the new school life, she found that the culture difference was another challenge for her.
除了难以适应新的学校生活之外,她发现文化差异对她来说是另一个挑战。

III. 语法填空

When we think about the value of exercise, we tend to focus on the physical benefits. But over the past decade, social scientists **1. have discovered** (discover) more benefits of regular exercise; its

impact **2. on** the way we think. Studies indicate that **3. putting/to put** (put) regular exercise into your routine can improve concentration, memory and help lower stress.

There is also evidence **4. suggesting** (suggest) that exercise during regular work hours may improve performance. Within the study, **5. researchers** (researcher) had over 200 employees at a variety of companies self-report their performance on a daily basis. They found that when employees visited the gym, their experience at work changed. They reported managing their time more **6. effectively** (effective), being more productive, and getting on well with their colleagues.

7. However, many of us can't take exercise regularly. The reason is that we don't have the time. But let's be clear—**8. what** we really mean when we say we don't have time for an activity is that we don't consider it a priority. Instead of viewing exercise as something we do for **9. ourselves** (we), it's time we **10. started/should start** (start) considering physical activities as part of the work itself.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华。你的英国朋友 Jim 在给你的邮件中提到他想强身健体,计划选择一项可以长期坚持的运动,并向你征询建议。请你给他回复一封英文邮件,内容包括:

1. 推荐的运动;
2. 推荐的理由。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Jim,

I am glad to learn that you would like to

exercise to keep fit. _____

Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Jim,

I am glad to learn that you would like to exercise to keep fit. I believe running is the best choice. My reasons are as follows.

First of all, the physical benefits from running have long been recognised as it helps increase the body's flow of blood and oxygen, which thus strengthens the immune system and reduces the risk of diseases. What's more, running can certainly become a long-term hobby, since it takes only a pair of running shoes and can easily and flexibly be added to your schedule. Last but not least, running can improve one's mood and particularly provide relief from the pain or tension.

Why not give it a try? I'm sure you will get a lot out of running.

Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Super Lungs

I was always a huge fan of football, and watching a game at the stadium was definitely one of the best ways to be free from work and relax. Therefore, the minute I heard the news that there would be a game of our home team against the team from Mississippi, I booked a front-row seat, excited

about having a fantastic weekend.

I was satisfied when I got seated in the stadium.

When the game began, however, I discovered that I was sitting directly in front of a Super Lungs. He seemed like a nice guy. But his idea of having fun at a football game was obviously nothing like mine, or most normal, well-behaved football fans'. It consisted of standing and yelling nonstop, as loud as he could. He yelled at the coaches, at the players, at the officials and at the Mississippi State fans in the next section. Always at the top of his lungs.

Super Lungs made an astonishing performance and kept it for us for the entire 45 minutes and never showed any sign of tiredness. He was so caught up in his world that he failed to notice he was ruining the experience of hundreds of others.

I felt that my eardrums almost got broken. His mouth was only two feet away from my ears. For a while I thought of shouting back and stopping him yelling. People around were turning to look at him, and I could read their thoughts: "Is he never going to stop?" And he seemed blind to those looks.

At half-time I escaped by walking for a few minutes outside the stadium. I was thinking of seeking an empty seat in the student section across the stadium but to my disappointment, the seats were all taken. I had no choice but to go back to Super Lungs.

To make matters worse, when returning to my seat, I missed my steps and fell heavily on the stairs. As I was struggling to stand up, a pair of huge hands helped me from behind.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I looked back and saw _____

Super Lungs kept his shouting for another 45 minutes. _____

【参考范文】

I looked back and saw Super Lungs' smiling face and concerned eyes. "Are you all right?" he asked me, with genuine care in his voice. "Oh, thank you. I'm OK." I smiled at him. Suddenly I felt he was gentle and kind. All that yelling was only his way of enjoying a football game. It might not please me, but it certainly did not fully reflect his

personality! Honestly, looking at him now, I couldn't help marvelling at how much passion he showed in a simple game. He surely was "enjoying life to the fullest".

Super Lungs kept his shouting for another 45 minutes. However, I felt it much easier to bear. The funny thing was that I found myself joining him in standing and shouting, too! It was one of the most unforgettable experiences of my life. I suppose it's important to tolerate and to love people around us. In that way we will be able to see them as real persons, rather than funny or annoying cartoons.

读后续写技能养成 || 动作描写之“臂和手”

「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之“臂和手”：是指对人的臂和手的动作描写，如拿、取、放、抓、握、举、挠、拍、拉、推、摸、抱、搂、打、挥、伸出、缩回、鼓掌、张开、交叉、挥舞等。
2. 续写技巧：描写时，可以根据事件发生的具体场景，抓住“臂和手”的动作特点进行描写，也可以使用一些描述心理活动的词汇辅助描写臂和手的动作。

「范例体悟」

Immediately, he took out a bandage from the kit, and tied it lightly around the wound. Slowly, he got the disabled into the back seat of the car, while the younger brother sitting beside to take care of him. Then the manager folded the wheelchair and put it into the trunk. Starting the car quickly again, he rushed towards the nearest hospital. On the way, he handed his smartphone to the younger brother to call their parents, and constantly comforted the two brothers to take it easy.

找出文中“臂和手”的动作描写并写下来。

took out; tied; got... into...; folded; put... into...;
handed... to...

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. take *v.* 拿走
2. bring *v.* 拿来
3. clutch *v.* 攥; 紧握
4. carry *v.* 扛, 挑
5. fetch *v.* 去取
6. lift *v.* 举
7. scratch *v.* 抓, 挠
8. hold *v.* 握着, 举
9. hit *v.* 打
10. take/pull out 取出
11. lie/put/place/lay 放
12. grasp/seize/catch/grab 抓
13. hold hands 拉手

14. hold/reach out a hand 伸出手来
15. take one's hand 牵某人的手
16. palms sweat 手心冒汗
17. reach for one's hand 伸手抓住某人
18. hand in hand 手拉手
19. arm in arm 臂挽臂
20. shake one's hand 握手
21. raise one's hand 举手
22. slide one's hands into 将手滑进
23. spread one's hands 摊开双手
24. rub one's hands together 使劲搓着双手
25. one's hands shake/tremble 某人的手颤抖着
26. catch at one's arm 抓住某人的手臂
27. with one's head in one's hands 双手抱着头
28. put a finger to one's lips 示意噤声
29. wave one's hands 挥动某人的双手
30. with crossed arms 双臂交叉
31. fold one's arms 某人交叉双臂
32. hold out/open one's arms 伸出/张开双臂
33. catch/grab one's arm 抓住某人的胳膊
34. take one's arm 挽住某人的胳膊
35. put/throw one's arms around sb. 搂住某人

II. 佳句背诵

1. But Jeff's hand touched the hot burner and he gave a cry of pain.
但是杰夫的手碰到了灼热的炉子,他痛苦地叫了一声。
2. I proudly took out my own money and handed it to Dad.
我骄傲地拿出我自己的钱,递给爸爸。
3. Under the colourful lights, I took his hands and

danced with him.

在五彩缤纷的灯光下,我拉着他的手,和他一起跳舞。

4. I thought of Joe's crazy act and started scratching myself—slowly at first and then faster and faster. 我想起乔的疯狂举动,开始抓挠自己——起初是慢慢地,然后越来越快。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. With shaking hands, I held that necklace in my arms and cried.
我用颤抖的手把那条项链抱在怀里哭了起来。
2. The man got up and quickly seized his bag.
那人站起来,迅速抓起他的包。
3. Upon arrival, Edmond quickly jumped off the truck and grabbed a long thick rope.
到达后,埃德蒙迅速跳下卡车,抓起一根又长又粗的绳子。

II. 用“臂和手”的动作描写完成下面的语段

Then June proudly 1. handed him (递给他) Scarlett's coins. He tightly 2. clutched them (攥着它们) in his dirt-stained hand and showed them to us with sincere blessings. Two quarters wasn't much, even to the man, but what mattered to him and us was 3. the loving gesture my girls made (我的女孩们做的可爱手势). On our way back home, June 4. put her hands on her heart (把手放在她的胸前), closed her eyes, and told her little sister, "It feels so good to help someone, doesn't it, my baby sister?"

第三单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

At Beaver Meadows Resort Ranch on Red Feather Lakes, Colorado, there is a long list of outdoor winter activities for the entire family. Take a winter vacation there.

Ice Fishing

For \$10 a day, visitors can try their hand at ice fishing. Ice fishing is available from 9:30 am to 4 pm seven days a week. You will need to bring your own ice fishing equipment because it cannot be rented. You will need to have your fishing license too. For more about it, call 800-462-5870.

Hot Chocolate & Cookies Sleigh Ride

Passengers take a 15-to 20-minute sleigh ride through beautiful Colorado country. During the sleigh ride, you'll have the experience of stopping at an old-time cabin, warming yourself by a fire and eating cookies while drinking hot chocolate. You will need to contact them at 970-231-1955 to set up a time for your sleigh ride.

Winter Horseback Riding

Experience winter horseback riding while viewing the breathtaking beauty of the surrounding 840 acres where Beaver Meadows Resort Ranch makes its home. You'll be guided on a tour by one of the expert wranglers (牧马人) when the weather permits. One-hour rides cost \$35 per person and two-hour rides cost \$50. For more information, contact them at 866-881-7679 to set up your horseback riding winter activity.

Other Winter Activities Information

For more information about Beaver Meadows Resort Ranch, or if you'd like to book a room for an adventurous holiday, call 970-881-2450. It's not very often you can find a one-stop adventure spot full of winter activities. Take advantage of your free time this winter season and enjoy the outdoor scenery in Colorado.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了 Beaver

Meadows Resort Ranch 的几种冬季户外活动,涉及活动内容、费用和联系方式。

1. If you want to enjoy sleigh rides, you will call _____.

- A. 800-462-5870
- B. 970-231-1955
- C. 970-881-2450
- D. 866-881-7679

B 细节理解题。根据题干中的关键词“sleigh rides”可知,应该去第二项活动 **Hot Chocolate & Cookies Sleigh Ride** 中寻找联系方式。故选 B。

2. How much does a couple have to pay if they want to have a two-hour horseback ride?

- A. \$50.
- B. \$70.
- C. \$100.
- D. \$140.

C 细节计算题。根据 **Winter Horseback Riding** 中的“*One-hour rides cost \$35 per person and two-hour rides cost \$50.*”可知,如果一对夫妇想骑两个小时的马,需要支付 $50 \times 2 = 100$ 美元。故选 C。

3. Where can you most probably read this passage?

- A. In the latest news.
- B. In a children's book.
- C. In a travel guide.
- D. In a sportsman's diary.

C 文章出处题。本文介绍了几种 Beaver Meadows Resort Ranch 的冬季户外活动,因此最有可能出自一本旅游指南。故选 C。

B

When Thomas Panek lost his eyesight more than 25 years ago, the anxious runner doubted he would ever pursue his lifelong passion again. “It was too scared to run,” he said.

Indeed, although Panek had been running since high school, the idea of running blind seemed altogether too difficult. But he did manage to keep his dream alive—with help from human guides who assisted him on each run.

Even so, he lost the real joy of the run—the thrill of independence that comes from completing a course on his own. “When you're tied to another

person, it's no longer your own race," the 48-year-old said. "The independence isn't quite there."

But Panek found a friend—indeed, man's best friend—who would help him regain that sense of purpose. Not only did Panek rediscover his love for running, but, along the way, he founded Guiding Eyes for the Blind, an organisation dedicated to providing service dogs for the visually damaged.

On March 16, Gus glided across the finish line with his human at the New York City Half Marathon. At that moment, they were both recorded in the history books. Panek, who finished the course in a little more than two hours and 20 minutes, became the first blind runner to complete the race led by dogs.

Panek pointed out that it wasn't just Gus who provided the wind beneath his running shoes. In fact, three guide dogs helped him see his way to the finish line. Siblings Westley and Waffle picked up the early parts of the course, each running between five and eight kilometres of the 21-kilometre race. Along the way, the whole team got plenty of support from event host New York Road Runners.

With retirement approaching, it would be the faithful yellow labrador's last race. But for Panek, the road ahead remains long and bright—not only for him, but for anyone with a disability who still hopes to realize his or her dream.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了帕内克失明后,在导盲犬的帮助下依然坚持跑步,最终以2小时20多分钟的时间跑完了纽约半程马拉松,成为第一位由狗带领完成该比赛的盲人赛跑者。他的故事给那些仍希望追逐梦想的残疾人带来了希望。

4. What happened to Panek 25 years ago?

- A. He gave up his dream.
- B. He became blind.
- C. He found running blind easy.
- D. He won the first prize.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*When Thomas Panek lost his eyesight more than 25 years ago*”可知,25年前,帕内克失明了。故选B。

5. From the passage, we know that Gus _____.

- A. is an instructor of Panek
- B. is a good marathon competitor
- C. is a dog for the visually damaged

D. is an organiser of the running event

C 细节理解题。根据第五段的内容可知,当他们冲向终点时,帕内克成为第一个在狗狗引导下完成该比赛的盲人选手,由此可知Gus是一只导盲犬。故选C。

6. Which of the following can best describe Panek?

- A. Firm and positive.
- B. Kind and confident.
- C. Calm and faithful.
- D. Honest and ambitious.

A 推理判断题。根据文章主要讲述了帕内克在失明后利用各种方法重拾自己对跑步的热爱,并在导盲犬的帮助下坚持跑步的故事,尤其是根据第二段中的“*But he did manage to keep his dream alive—with help from human guides who assisted him on each run.*”及第四段中的“*Not only did Panek rediscover his love for running, but, along the way, he founded Guiding Eyes for the Blind, an organisation dedicated to providing service dogs for the visually damaged.*”可推知,帕内克是一个坚定且积极的人。故选A。

7. What does the passage mainly tell us?

- A. Failure is the mother of success.
- B. Where there is a will, there is a way.
- C. All things are difficult before they are easy.
- D. We can make a difference by helping others.

B 推理判断题。文章讲述了帕内克失明后,在导盲犬的帮助下依然坚持跑步,最终以2小时20多分钟的时间跑完了纽约半程马拉松,成为第一位由狗带领完成该比赛的盲人赛跑者。是他的坚持不懈,给他带来了成功。由此可知,本文主要告诉我们一个道理,“有志者事竟成。”故选B。

C

Staying active and fit could help to reduce some of the bad health effects usually from bad sleep, according to a large study of 380,055 middle-aged people who took part in the UK Biobank research project.

We all know that a healthy life means getting both plenty of exercise and enough good-quality sleep, but reality often gets in the way. The new research shows that doing enough exercise could make up for some of the unhealthy impacts of bad sleep.

While the health benefits from exercise and

sleep are nothing new, it's the relationship between them that is interesting in this particular study — it could even give doctors another way to suggest for patients dealing with sleep problems.

“We found those who had both the poorest sleep quality and who exercised the least were most at risk of death from heart disease and cancer,” says the expert, Bo-Huei Huang, from the University of Sydney in Australia. “The finding suggests an interplay (相互影响) between the two behaviours.”

The weekly amount of exercise recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) is 150 minutes of moderately intensive (密集的) activity, or more than 75 minutes of extremely intensive physical activity. Those with the highest risk of dying from cancer or heart disease during the study period were those with the worst quality of sleep and who didn't meet the WHO recommended guidelines for exercise. That risk went down for people with poor-quality sleep who did meet the exercise guidelines.

The research has been published in the *British Journal of Sports Medicine*.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了锻炼和睡眠之间的关系。

8. What is the purpose of the first paragraph?

- A. To give examples.
- B. To lead to the topic.
- C. To attract readers' attention.
- D. To compare two things.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Staying active and fit could help to reduce some of the bad health effects usually from bad sleep”，结合下文主要介绍锻炼和睡眠的关系可推知，第一段的目的在于引出文章的话题。故选 B。

9. What does the underlined word “impacts” mean in the second paragraph?

- A. Factors.
- B. Effects.
- C. Quality.
- D. Reality.

B 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的“Staying active and fit could help to reduce some of the bad health effects usually from bad sleep”可推知，画线词所在句意为“新的研究表明，做足够的运动可以弥补睡眠不足带来的一些对健康不利的影 响”，由此可知画线词与 effects 同义。故选 B。

10. According to the WHO, what is the suitable amount of time for moderate exercise?

- A. 150 minutes daily.
- B. More than 75 minutes weekly.
- C. 150 minutes weekly.
- D. More than 75 minutes daily.

C 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“The weekly amount of exercise recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) is 150 minutes of moderately intensive (密集的) activity, or more than 75 minutes of extremely intensive physical activity.”可知，世界卫生组织建议的中等强度的锻炼为每周 150 分钟。故选 C。

11. Where does the text most probably come from?

- A. A medical journal.
- B. An entertainment magazine.
- C. A sports textbook.
- D. A travel brochure.

A 文章出处题。通读全文，尤其是最后一段的内容可推知，文章很有可能来自一份医学杂志。故选 A。

D

Sport is not only physically challenging, but can also be mentally challenging. Criticism from coaches, parents and other teammates, as well as pressure to win, can create too much anxiety or stress for young athletes. Stress can be physical, emotional, or psychological and a research has indicated that it can lead to burnout. Burnout has been described as dropping or quitting of an activity that was at one time enjoyable.

The early years of development are critical years for learning about oneself. The sport setting is one where valuable experiences can take place. Young athletes can, for example, learn how to cooperate with others, make friends, and gain other social skills that will be used throughout their lives. Coaches and parents should be aware, at all times, that their feedback to youngsters can greatly affect them. Youngsters may take their parents' and coaches' criticisms to heart and find fault in themselves.

Coaches and parents should also pay attention that youth sport participation should be about the process. The outcome of the game should not be

more important than the process of learning the sport and other life lessons. In today's youth sport setting, young athletes may be worrying more about who will win instead of enjoying themselves and the sport. After a game, many parents and coaches focus on the outcome and find fault with youngsters' performances. Positive support should be provided regardless of the outcome. Research indicates that positive support motivates and has a greater effect on learning than criticism. Again, criticism can create high levels of stress, which can lead to burnout.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。体育运动既是对人的体力的挑战,也是对人的心理的挑战。在体育运动中,父母和教练应对孩子多鼓励,少批评,让孩子用积极的心态去迎接挑战。

12. An effective way to prevent the burnout of young athletes is _____.

- A. to make sport less competitive
- B. to increase their sense of success
- C. to reduce their mental stress
- D. to make sport more challenging

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Stress can be physical, emotional, or psychological and a research has indicated that it can lead to burnout.”可知 C 项正确。

13. According to the passage, sport is positive for young people in that _____.

- A. it can help them learn more about society
- B. it enables them to find fault in themselves
- C. it can provide them with valuable experiences
- D. it teaches them how to set realistic goals for themselves

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The sport setting is one where valuable experiences can take place.”可知答案选 C。

14. According to the passage, parents and coaches should _____.

- A. pay more attention to letting children enjoy sport
- B. help children to win every game
- C. train children to cope with stress
- D. enable children to understand the positive aspect of sport

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可总结出:父母和教练应该变批评为鼓励,以减轻孩子们的心理压力,使他们拥有积极的动机,从而更喜欢体育运动。所以 A 项正确。

15. The author's purpose in writing the passage is _____.

- A. to teach young athletes how to avoid burnout
- B. to persuade children not to worry about criticism
- C. to stress the importance of positive support to children
- D. to discuss the skill of combining criticism with encouragement

C 写作意图题。纵观全文可知,作者通过写压力对孩子参加运动的诸多负面影响,使父母和教练们意识到只有更加积极地鼓励孩子,减少批评,才能让孩子喜欢体育运动。

II. 七选五 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 12.5 分)

For some people, choosing which sports to play throughout high school is hard because they have never really played an organised sport before and aren't sure what they'll enjoy most. 16

17 If you're great at basketball but would rather play football because you think it's more fun, then give it a go (just make sure it's cool with Mum and Dad).

Sports are meant to be fun. 18 What's the worst that can happen? If you get cut, you can always try another sport. And sports like track don't typically cut participants from the team. You can still participate even if you're not in the team for the competition.

Some sports, like baseball or basketball, require every person on the field to be working well together. 19 Sports like tennis, track and field, swimming, gymnastics, and wrestling are all sports where individual performances are tallied (计算) into team scores. 20 However, for the most part, it's possible to win a solo event in these sports and still have your team lose, and vice versa (反之亦然).

No one knows you better than you do. Maybe you enjoy the spotlight. Maybe you get annoyed by the way teammates act. Luckily, there are many individualised sports to choose from.

- A. Many people are attracted to team sports.
 B. Besides swimming, try fishing, sailing, skiing and surfing.
 C. Of course there are exceptions, like relays in track and swimming.
 D. For others it's tough because their friends don't like to play the same sports.
 E. No matter what your problem is, you have to make the decision that is best for you.
 F. If there is a sport you really enjoy but you aren't sure if you can make the team, try out anyway.
 G. Sure, certain people perform much better than others, but superstars don't necessarily make a good team.

答案:16~20 DEFGC

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Mae ran into Jon before he could run away. Jon fell and Mae piled on top of him. It was a perfect tackle (擒抱) for a rugby (英式橄榄球) game. I 21.

While they were in the 22 for the rugby ball, another player attacked Mae and she fell. The cheer was stuck in my throat. After a few moments, Mae got up and 23 the game and the game went well. I felt a sense of 24.

When Mae, my 13-year-old daughter, first asked if she could play rugby, I was terrified. 25, I did not like the sport because the game was violent (激烈的) and it had the most 26 of all school sports.

However, Mae wanted to play rugby so much that she kept asking for my permission whenever I said no. Mae was 27 and full of confidence. She was strong and 28 for her age at 170 cm. If she were to 29 till she turned fifteen, the boys would 30 over her and be stronger than her. She argued that it might be the only 31 for her to do well in this sport.

Touched by her determination, I 32 finally. I watched all her matches. I hoped that my 33 at her games would encourage her. I was 34 of her for not giving up the sport.

She loved the sport 35 there were so many challenges.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章从一位家长的视角,讲述了女儿 Mae 非常有决心和毅力,一直坚持

从事英式橄榄球并改变了自己家长态度的故事。

21. A. whispered B. cheered
 C. complained D. regretted
 B 根据上文“*It was a perfect tackle (擒抱) for a rugby (英式橄榄球) game.*”可知,作者看到后欢呼。故选 B。
22. A. group B. name
 C. charge D. struggle
 D 根据下文“*another player attacked Mae and she fell*”可知,当他们在争夺橄榄球时,另一个球员袭击了 Mae,她摔倒了。故选 D。
23. A. began B. finished
 C. continued D. paused
 C 根据上文“*Mae got up*”和下文“*the game went well*”可知,Mae 站起来继续比赛,比赛进行得很顺利。故选 C。
24. A. relief B. humour
 C. responsibility D. failure
 A 根据上文“*the game went well*”可知,比赛进行得很顺利,所以作者感到如释重负。故选 A。
25. A. Additionally B. Personally
 C. Luckily D. Sadly
 B 根据下文“*I did not like the sport*”可知,作者个人不喜欢这项运动,空格处意为“就我个人而言”。故选 B。
26. A. failures B. growth
 C. successes D. injuries
 D 根据上文“*the game was violent (激烈的)*”可知,比赛很激烈,而且在所有学校运动中受伤人数最多。故选 D。
27. A. amazed B. determined
 C. excited D. confused
 B 根据下文“*full of confidence*”可知,Mae 很坚定,充满信心。故选 B。
28. A. clever B. suitable
 C. tall D. unique
 C 根据下文“*at 170 cm*”可知,她很高。故选 C。
29. A. wait B. organise
 C. injure D. change
 A 根据下文“*till she turned fifteen*”可知,如果等到十五岁,男孩子们就会比她高。故选 A。
30. A. turn B. watch
 C. get D. tower
 D 根据下文“*over her and be stronger than her*”可知,如果等到十五岁,男孩子们就会比她高,比

她强壮。故选 D。

31. A. chance B. advice
C. balance D. space

A 根据下文“for her to do well in this sport”可知,她认为这可能是她在这项运动中取得好成绩的唯一机会。故选 A。

32. A. gave up B. gave out
C. gave in D. gave away

C 根据下文“I watched all her matches.”可知,作者被她的决心所感动,最终屈服了。故选 C。

33. A. absence B. patience
C. presence D. confidence

C 根据上文“I watched all her matches.”可知,作者希望自己去观看她的比赛能鼓励她,空格处意为“出席”。故选 C。

34. A. proud B. ashamed
C. afraid D. tired

A 根据下文“for not giving up the sport”可知,作者为她没有放弃这项运动而感到骄傲。故选 A。

35. A. unless B. although
C. if D. when

B 该句前后部分为转折关系,应用 although 引导让步状语从句。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

When it comes to exercise, less is not more—but it's certainly better than none. Physical inactivity makes up nearly 23 percent of all **36. deaths** (death) from major chronic (慢性的) diseases, yet almost one of every three Americans spend a lot of time sitting down. They usually say they have no free time **37. for** physical activity at all.

Light activity can improve physical and mental well-being. While light activity is good, moderate (适度的) activity is even **38. better** (good). And you don't have to head to a gym. As recent studies have suggested, “lifestyle” activities, such as walking, house cleaning and gardening, are as **39. effective** (effect) as a structured exercise programme in improving heart function (功能), lowering blood pressure **40. and** keeping or losing weight.

In one study, overweight, sedentary (久坐的) middle-aged men and women, **41. who** learned behavioural skills to make them more physically active, such as **42. walking** (walk) around airports

or train stations while waiting for a departure, reduced their body fat percentage and improved their blood pressure and heart function as much as individuals (个人) working out at a **43. fitness** (fit) centre.

There are different types of activities in a centre, **44. where** people do aerobic and muscle exercise to build up their health. But actually multiple short periods of exercise during the day **45. are** (be) nearly as beneficial as one long session.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是校排球队队长李华,请你写一封英文邮件告知你的队友 Chris 球队近期将参加比赛,内容包括:

1. 比赛信息;
2. 赛前准备;
3. 表达期待。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Chris,

I'm writing to inform you of the upcoming volleyball game that you are supposed to prepare for.

The game is scheduled to be held in the newly built stadium of our school next Friday afternoon. As a member of the team, you should be well prepared for it. Firstly, please come up with a workout schedule and stick to it so that you can get in shape soon. Secondly, you should attend the team training sessions and meetings to study the rules together with the teammates.

Since our school attaches great importance to this game, I hope we can devote ourselves to becoming a stronger team and beat our opponent.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Craig watched his elder sister, Riley, and her friend Liz race up and down the lake on their skates, avoiding other hockey (曲棍球) players. Their skate blades looked like silver smoke. When the game was over, the girls skated up to the bench where Craig was sitting. Craig asked Riley what skating felt like.

“When I go really fast, I feel like I’m flying,” she said.

That’s silly, thought Craig. Flying is something birds do in the air, not something people do on ice skates.

Then he watched Riley go back out on the ice. She skated around and around the edge of the lake with her arms pumping and her scarf trailing behind her. Soon she went so fast that her arms looked like wings and her scarf looked like a feathery tail. Maybe skating really was like flying.

When Riley sat down to take her skates off, Craig said, “I wish I could fly.”

Riley retied her skate laces and crouched next to Craig. “Get on my back,” she said, and Craig did. Riley started skating, but Craig didn’t feel like he was flying. It just felt like a shaking piggyback ride.

“You’re too heavy,” Riley said. “I can’t go fast when I’m carrying you.” She skated slowly back to the bench. Craig got off her back. “Even if you could go fast, I wouldn’t be flying,” he said sadly. “I need skates to fly.”

Riley didn’t say anything on the walk home, but a few days later she asked Craig if he wanted to go skating.

“To watch?” he asked. “No, to skate,” she said cheerfully. “Mum and I found a pair of my old skates. They might fit you.” The skates were a little big, but when Riley stuffed newspapers in the toes, they fit. Craig couldn’t stop smiling. He didn’t want to take them off, but he had to so he could walk to the lake. Riley and Liz went with him. They carried

their hockey sticks and a wooden chair. Hardly had they got to the lake when Craig put his skates back on and Riley helped him onto the ice.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Then she put his hands on the back of the chair.

After a while, each girl took one of Craig’s hands.

【参考范文】

Then she put his hands on the back of the chair. “Hang on this and you won’t fall,” she said. Craig tried to move cautiously with his hands grabbing the chair firmly. Riley and Liz cheered him on as he started to move forward. But Craig slowly lowered his head, frowning, as he inched along and he even couldn’t skate without the chair. This wasn’t like flying at all. Realising his sadness, Riley patted his shoulder and comforted, “It takes practice. Someday you will.” Then she winked at Liz and whispered something to her.

After a while, each girl took one of Craig’s hands. “Someday you’ll fly on your own,” Riley said. “But today Liz and I will help you.” They started skating, pulling Craig with them. The girls went faster and faster, and so did he. Craig felt the wind touching his face merrily with tears in his eyes. When he looked down, his skate blades looked like a silver light. “I’m flying!” he yelled, and the words blew away in the wind like a bird’s happy song.

Unit 4

Stage and screen

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文, 获取课文大意;
3. 了解常见的中外文娱活动, 讨论感兴趣的文娱活动以及喜欢的原因;
4. 对中外具有代表性的表演艺术形式进行对比, 初步形成跨文化意识。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. technique *n.* 技巧, 手法
2. universe *n.* 宇宙, 天地, 万物
3. incredible *adj.* 难以置信的
4. emotion *n.* 强烈的情感
5. combine *v.* (使) 结合, (使) 组合
6. explosive *adj.* 爆炸(式)的, 爆发的
7. movement *n.* 运动, 动作
8. female *adj.* 女(性)的
9. energetic *adj.* 精力充沛的, 充满活力的
10. poetry *n.* 诗, 诗歌

11. anger *n.* 愤怒, 怒火
12. get across 解释清楚, 传达
13. be familiar with 熟悉
14. date back to 追溯到

(二) 阅读词汇

1. opera *n.* 歌剧
2. version *n.* 版本
3. aspect *n.* 方面
4. clap *v.* 拍(手), 鼓(掌)
5. transform... into... 把……转变成……
6. on the edge of one's seat 极为激动
7. tick all the right boxes 事情发展如人所愿, 一切顺利

「课文速览」

表格填空

The Revenge of Prince Zidan				
Orchestra	Costumes and 2. <u>masks</u>	Performers	7. <u>Stage</u>	Audience
It was playing 1. <u>traditional</u> Chinese instruments.	They were amazing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They sang in 3. <u>Chinese</u>. • They used music, 4. <u>movements</u> and mime to help get the meanings 5. <u>across</u> to the audience. • They had 6. <u>unique</u> voices. • They did backflips. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It was simple. • A 8. <u>decorated</u> whip represented a horse. • A screen with Chinese characters represented a 9. <u>study</u>. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They were clapping and 10. <u>excited</u>.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. What do we know from the first paragraph?
 - A. The author majored in English literature at university.
 - B. Shakespeare's *Hamlet* is the most popular play in the world.
 - C. The author had seen the Peking Opera before.
 - D. The author thought he knew a great deal about *Hamlet*.
2. What made the author amazed when watching the Peking Opera?
 - A. The traditional Chinese instruments.
 - B. An instrument with two strings called *jinghu*.
 - C. The costumes and masks of the actors.
 - D. The exaggerated movements and mime.
3. What did the author like best about the play?
 - A. The unique voices of the actresses.
 - B. The movements of the performers.
 - C. The music made by Chinese instruments.
 - D. The screen with Chinese characters.
4. What does the phrase "on the edge of my seat" probably mean?
 - A. Very anxious.
 - B. Really puzzled.
 - C. Quite bored.
 - D. Very excited.

答案: 1~4 DCBD

II. 课文语法填空

Hamlet is a famous play **1. written** (write) by Shakespeare. *The Revenge of Prince Zidan* is the

Peking Opera version of *Hamlet*. It brought a **2. completely** (complete) new experience to the Westerners. The costumes and masks were **3. amazing** (amaze). A **4. decorated** (decorate) whip represented a horse, and a screen with Chinese characters represented a study. The music, movements and mime of the **5. performers** (perform) made the audience understand the meanings of the play easily. The movements of the performers were **6. so** dazzling and energetic that the audience were always clapping. The strong emotions of love, **7. anger** (angry), fear and grief in the performance made people easily recognise **8. the** theme of *Hamlet*. *The Revenge of Prince Zidan* combines music, singing, drama, poetry and costume design **9. with** explosive effect. We can't help **10. thinking** (think) highly of Peking Opera.

III. 阅读升华

1. Why does the author think he knows a lot about *Hamlet*?
Because one of the author's major subjects is English literature.
2. How could you help a friend overseas understand Peking Opera?
I can introduce some knowledge about Peking Opera such as the orchestra, costumes and masks, stage sets, performers' movements and recommend some excellent Peking Opera works to them.

课后素养评价(十六)

I. 阅读理解

Sesame Street is an educational children's television series designed for preschoolers, and is recognised as a pioneer of the contemporary standard which combines education and entertainment in children's television shows.

Sesame Street uses a combination of puppets

(木偶), animation, and live actors to teach young children the fundamentals of reading (letter and word recognition) and arithmetic (numbers, addition and subtraction), as well as basic life skills such as how to cross the road safely and the importance of proper hygiene (卫生) and healthy eating habits.

Sesame Street was produced in the United States by Sesame Workshop, formerly known as the Children's Television Workshop. It first appeared on November 10, 1969 on the National Educational Television network, and later that year it was moved to the Public Broadcasting Service.

Because of its widespread influence, *Sesame Street* has earned the distinction of being one of the world's first and most highly regarded educational programmes of young people. Few television series can match its level of recognition and success on the international stage. The original series has been televised in over 120 countries.

However, some educators criticised (批评) the show when it first appeared, claiming that its design would contribute to shortening children's attention spans. This concern still exists today, although there's no conclusive proof of this being the case.

Boston University's professor of education Frank Garfunkel commented, "If what people want is for their children to memorise numbers and letters without regard to their meaning or use, then *Sesame Street* is truly responsive. To give a child thirty seconds of one thing and then to switch it and give him/her thirty seconds of another is to develop irrelevance."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章从多个方面介绍了《芝麻街》这一电视节目以及教育学家对这一节目的不同看法。

1. What CANNOT children learn from *Sesame Street* according to the second paragraph?

- A. To recognise numbers.
- B. To recognise letters.
- C. To write compositions.
- D. To form good eating habits.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,《芝麻街》教孩子们字母、单词、数字、简单的加减法及一些基本的生活技能,并没有提到 C 项。故选 C。

2. According to the passage, some educators worry that *Sesame Street* _____.

- A. doesn't teach children any useful skills
- B. is not good for children's long-time concentration

C. is too simple for most children

D. is a waste of time for children

B 推理判断题。根据最后两段的内容可知,有些教育家认为该节目不利于孩子长时间集中注意力,而且也不利于帮助孩子建立事物之间的联系。故选 B。

3. Which of the following statements about *Sesame Street* is TRUE according to the passage?

- A. It was designed to entertain children at first.
- B. There are no live actors in the *Sesame Street* TV series.
- C. It was created by the Public Broadcasting Service.
- D. It has gained a large audience in the world.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,《芝麻街》已在全世界超过 120 个国家播映,这说明该节目在世界范围内已拥有很多观众。故选 D。

4. The purpose of this passage is to _____.

- A. tell people the disadvantages of *Sesame Street*
- B. introduce *Sesame Street* to people
- C. show the advantages of *Sesame Street*
- D. encourage more people to watch *Sesame Street*

B 写作意图题。文章前四段从内容、历史、观众群及收视率等方面介绍了《芝麻街》这个节目,后两段提到了一些教育学家对这个节目的不同看法,使读者对这个节目有了全面、客观的了解。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Painting

The art of creating pictures using colours, shapes and lines is called painting. Museums and galleries show the paintings of professional artists. But painting is also a popular form of entertainment and creative expression.

1 Experienced painters usually use a brush to apply oil paints to a canvas cloth surface. Young painters usually use watercolours on pieces of paper. Very young children may use finger paints to create paintings.

Painters can use their art to tell a story, to express feelings and ideas, or simply to present a pleasing picture. Some common paintings have been famous legends and events in history, as well as scenes from daily life. Artists also paint portraits or

pictures of people. 2 All of these types of paintings show the human figure in some way.

Some kinds of paintings do not focus on people. In landscape painting the focus is on scenes from nature. Artists also paint still objects such as fruit and vegetables. 3 Some artists communicate their ideas through pictures that do not represent any object.

4 Paintings dating back around 15,000 years have been found on the walls of caves in France and Spain. 5 Samples of painted pottery (陶器) from at least 5,000 years ago have been found in China and Iran. The ancient Egyptians decorated their temples with beautiful paintings. People in ancient Greece painted decorative objects such as vases in addition to the walls of temples.

- A. These works are called still-life paintings.
 B. These works can communicate a special feeling.
 C. Humans have been making paintings for thousands of years.
 D. People of all ages create pictures using a variety of materials.

- E. Cave paintings generally show animals that early humans hunted.
 F. The design of a painting is the plan of its lines, shapes and colours.
 G. Sometimes artists make portraits of themselves, which are called self-portraits.

答案:1~5 DGACE

【微点写作】影评

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 《公主日记》是一部关于一个名叫米娅·瑟莫普利斯的少女的电影。

The Princess Diaries is a movie about a teenager named Mia Thermopolis.

2. 这部电影以一个偏远的山村为背景。

The film is set in a remote mountain village.

3. 这部电影以智慧和幽默的方式探讨了责任这个主题。

The movie explores the theme of responsibility in an intelligent and humorous way.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，理解作者情感的前后变化，学习并掌握与话题相关的语言表达；
3. 基于课文内容联系生活实际，运用与话题相关的语言知识，就歌剧和京剧发表自己的观点。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. An **opera** is a play with music in which all the words are sung. 歌剧
2. Climate and weather affect every **aspect** of our lives. 方面
3. The new **version** of this dictionary is not in use yet. 版本
4. He went off to change a guitar **string**. 弦
5. All the **female** workers in this factory got a

present on March 8th.

女(性)的

6. When you **clap**, you hit your hands together to express appreciation or attract attention.

拍(手), 鼓(掌)

7. Don't put that glass so near the **edge** of the table.

边缘

8. The **poetry** *Thoughts on a Tranquil Night* (《静夜思》) by Li Bai is popular with people from home and abroad. 诗, 诗歌

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>movement</u> <i>n.</i> 运动, 动作	<u>move</u> <i>v.</i> 移动, 搬动; 搬家, 搬迁; 迁移; 使感动 <i>n.</i> 行动, 举措; 移动
	<u>movable</u> <i>adj.</i> 活动的; 可移动的
<u>transform</u> <i>v.</i> 使改观, 使变形, 使转化	<u>transformation</u> <i>n.</i> 转变; 转换
<u>universe</u> <i>n.</i> 宇宙, 天地, 万物	<u>universal</u> <i>adj.</i> 宇宙的; 全世界的; 共同的; 普遍的
<u>energetic</u> <i>adj.</i> 精力充沛的, 充满活力的	<u>energy</u> <i>n.</i> 能量; 精力
<u>emotion</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈的情感	<u>emotional</u> <i>adj.</i> 情感(上)的; 情绪(上)的
<u>anger</u> <i>n.</i> 愤怒, 怒火	<u>angry</u> <i>adj.</i> 生气的, 愤怒的
<u>technique</u> <i>n.</i> 技巧, 手法	<u>technology</u> <i>n.</i> 科技; 工艺, 技术, 技艺
	<u>technical</u> <i>adj.</i> 技术(上)的; 技巧的
	<u>technician</u> <i>n.</i> 技师; 技术人员; 工匠
<u>combine</u> <i>v.</i> (使)结合, (使)组合	<u>combination</u> <i>n.</i> 结合; 联合
<u>explosive</u> <i>adj.</i> 爆炸(式)的, 爆发的	<u>explode</u> <i>v.</i> 爆炸
	<u>explosion</u> <i>n.</i> 爆炸; 爆发; 激增
<u>incredible</u> <i>adj.</i> 难以置信的	<u>credible</u> <i>adj.</i> 可靠的, 可信的

III. 补全短语

1. date back to 追溯到
2. transform... into ... 把……转变成……
3. at first 最初; 首先
4. be full of ... 充满……, 装满……
5. get across 解释清楚, 传达
6. in fact 实际上, 事实上
7. combine... with ... 把……与……结合起来

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在分词的完成式作状语

Having seen quite a few productions of *Hamlet* and read the play many times, I was full of confidence—until the Peking Opera came to town!

我看过好几部《哈姆雷特》的影视作品, 这部戏剧我也读过很多遍了, 因此我信心满满——直到城里来了京剧表演!

2. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作后置定语

Starting with an orchestra playing traditional Chinese instruments, the opera brought a completely new sound to my Western ears.

戏一开场, 是乐队弹奏中国传统乐器, 我这个西方人的耳朵听到了一种全新的声音。

3. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句

At first, I thought what I heard was a violin, but later I learnt that it was an instrument with two strings called *jinghu*.

起初, 我以为我听到的是小提琴的声音, 但后来我了解到那是一种有两根弦的乐器, 叫作京胡。

4. 句型公式: so... that... 引导结果状语从句

The voices themselves sounded really unique—some of the female voices were so high that I was sure they could break glass!

那些唱腔听起来非常独特——有的女声音调太高了, 以至于我觉得它们能震碎玻璃!

任务型课堂

1. transform *v.* 使改观, 使变形, 使转化

(教材原文) Using such techniques, the opera had **transformed** a small stage into the whole universe. 运用这样的技巧, 京剧把一个小小的舞台变成了整个宇宙。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

I'm fully aware that it's the experience from my life abroad that has totally **transformed** me.

我充分意识到, 是我在国外的生活经历完全改变了我。

Every moment of every day, energy **is being transformed from** one form **into** another.

每天每时每刻, 能量都在由一种形式转换成另一种形式。

We are living in a time of social **transformation**.

我们正生活在一个社会变革的时代。

续表

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) transform... into... 把……转变成…… be transformed from... _____ ... 由……转变成…… (2) _____ <i>n.</i> (外观或性质的) 改变; 变革
探究结论	(1) into (2) transformation

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The way in which we work has gone through a complete transformation (transform) in the past ten years.

② In only 20 years, the country has been transformed into an advanced industrial power.

(2) 完成句子

It was an event that would transform my life.

那是会改变我一生的一件事。

2. combine v. (使) 结合, (使) 组合

(教材原文) So, if you want to see a show that **combines** music, singing, drama, poetry and costume design with explosive effect, *The Revenge of Prince Zidan* ticks all the right boxes!

所以, 如果你想看一场融合了音乐、演唱、戏剧、诗歌以及惊艳服饰的表演, 《王子复仇记》再合适不过了!

一感 读句子感悟用法

Next, **combine** the flour **with** the margarine and salt.

接下来, 把面粉和人造黄油及盐调和在一起。

A number of factors have **combined to create** this difficult situation.

很多因素结合在一起导致了这种困难的局面。

The firm is working on a new product **in combination with** several overseas partners.

这家公司正在与几家海外合伙人联合开发新产品。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) combine... _____ / and... 把……与……结合起来 combine to do sth. 联合起来做某事
------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

探究要点	(2) _____ <i>n.</i> 结合, 联合, 组合; 联合体, 结合物 _____ combination (with) (与……) 联合/结合
探究结论	(1) with (2) combination; in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Learn to combine your knowledge with/and experience, and you are sure to succeed.

② The two old schools are to combine to form (form) one big new school.

③ Only when combined (combine) with goals can great efforts help people realise their full potential (潜力).

④ A combination (combine) of factors may be responsible for the increase in cancer.

(2) 完成句子

He carried on the business in combination with his friends.

他与他的朋友们合伙做生意。

3. date back to... 追溯到……

(教材原文) **Dating back to** the 18th century, Peking Opera has over two hundred years of history.

京剧的起源可以追溯到18世纪, 距今已有两百多年的历史。

一感 读句子感悟用法

My interest in stamp collecting **dates from/back to** my schooldays.

我从学生时代开始就爱好集邮。

The news you told me was **out of date** but you thought it was **up to date**.

你告诉我的新闻是过时的, 但你却认为是最新的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	date back to... = date _____ 追溯到…… out of date 过时的, 陈旧的 up _____ date 最近的, 新式的, 现代的 set a date for... 确定……的日期
探究结论	from; to

名师点拨

date from 和 date back to 常指“以现在为起点”向前推,故在句中作谓语时,常用一般现在时。该短语没有进行时态,也没有被动形式,常用其现在分词形式作后置定语。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It's said that the origin of facial makeup used in Peking Opera can date back to more than 1,400 years ago.

② Has the company set a date for its next round of product announcement?

③ The custom dates from the time when man wore swords.

④ Today almost everyone has a smart phone. Booths (电话亭) are out of date and seem to be useless.

(2) 句型转换

The festival is held in November every year. It dates back to the Ming Dynasty to celebrate the harvest in autumn.

→ The festival dating back to/which dates back to the Ming Dynasty to celebrate the harvest in autumn is held in November every year.

4. so... that... 引导结果状语从句

(教材原文)... some of the female voices were **so** high **that** I was sure they could break glass!

……有的女声音调太高了,以至于我觉得它们能震碎玻璃!

一感 读句子感悟用法

The kids have done **so** well **that** they deserve our praise.

孩子们做得那么好,他们值得我们表扬。

I have had **so** many falls **that** I'm black and blue all over.

我跌了这么多跤,全身青一块紫一块的。

It is **such** a difficult problem **that** I find it hard to solve.

这个问题如此困难,我发现很难解决。

It was **such** fine weather **that** all the children played outdoors.

天气那么好,所有孩子都在户外玩。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) so... that... 如此……以至于……</p> $\text{---} + \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{adj./adv.} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{a(n)} + \text{可数名词单数} \\ \text{many/few} + \text{可数名词复数} \\ \text{much/little(少)} + \text{不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{that...}$ <p>(2) such... that... 如此……以至于……</p> $\text{---} + \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{a(n)} + \text{adj.} + \text{可数名词单数} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{可数名词复数} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{that...}$
探究结论	(1) so (2) such

名师点拨

so/such... that... 结构中,so/such... 置于句首时,主句用部分倒装,从句不倒装。

- So cold is it that you can't go outside.
- Such a difficult problem is it that I find it hard to solve.

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① There were so many goods bought on November 11th that the delivery time was long.

② Besides, I have such a good command of English that I am elected as the assistant to my English teacher.

(2) 一句多译

乒乓球是一项非常有趣的运动,中国有很多人喜欢打乒乓球。

① Table tennis is so interesting a game that many people all over China like to play it.

② Table tennis is such an interesting game that many people all over China like to play it.

课后素养评价(十七)

I. 单词拼写

1. Over half of the workers in this factory are female (女性的).
2. As we all know, loose clothing gives you greater freedom of movement (活动).
3. Children should be brought into contact with poetry (诗歌) at an early age.
4. The recordings of her singing the well-known operas (歌剧) remain very popular today.
5. It seemed incredible (难以置信的) that people would still want to play football during a war.
6. With the development of science and technology, the house in the future will be smart and caring in many aspects (方面).
7. You'd better save some time every day for sports so that you can keep yourself energetic (精力充沛的).
8. I think it would be beneficial if you could share some of your inner emotions (情感) with your friends, parents or teachers.
9. It's believed that laughter is the most powerful medicine for anger (愤怒) or depression.
10. I often watched them carefully so as to learn their techniques (技巧).

II. 短语填空

get sth. across; on the edge of one's seat; date back to; transform... into...; combine... with...

1. The game had the crowd on the edge of their seats.
2. It is said that Chinese dumplings date back to the Southern and Northern Dynasties.
3. As we all know, solar energy can be transformed into power.
4. My sister working in a kindergarten often uses pictures and body language to get her point across to the children.
5. If you can combine your ability with hard work, you should be very successful.

III. 完成句子

1. What the teacher had said reminded me of the famous saying, "Where there is a will, there is a way."

老师说过的话让我想起了“有志者，事竟成”这句有名的谚语。

2. We did so well that we were invited to share our ideas and experience with all the students of our school. 我们做得那么好以至于被邀请与全校同学分享我们的观点和经验。
3. The people waiting for the bus are talking with each other. 正在等公共汽车的人们在相互交谈。
4. But I'm not sure if these articles are written well enough to catch their attention. 但我不确定这些文章是否写得足够好，可以吸引他们的注意。
5. Having lived in this city for three years, she knows it very well. 由于已经在这个城市住了三年，她对它非常了解。

IV. 完形填空

My head was full of digital noise that my brain was about to explode. As a writer, I was 1 to admit my love of books had been replaced by a brain that simply could not sit still. So, this year I 2 to return to books before the Internet broke my brain.

My goal was 52 books. It seemed like an impossible 3. A 400-page book will take an average person around 8 hours to read. Finding time to read was a challenge but I 4 it anyway. I treated my mind like a misbehaving child who needed some rules laid down. Then I read for an hour or two a time without 5 each day. It was something I hadn't done in years.

In *The Distracted Mind*, Larry D. Rosen says that the more we 6 spending time away from our electronic devices, the 7 and more focused we become. And this was what I found. Again, I would 8 bring myself back to the page, resisting the urge to reach for that screen. I drew inspiration from a book *On Quiet*, in which the author 9 how she bought a safe (保险箱) to lock away her family's devices for long periods, which opened up a space to reflect.

For me, finding that quiet time 10 finding

time just to read. It was a delightful moment between me and my book when I ordinarily would have reached for my 11. I read on the tram, in bed at night and during the lunch 12.

With my regained 13 for books, I created a space where I could press pause and find 14, knowledge and reflection. In our fast-paced world, reading for the sake of reading is not selfish but a powerful way to 15 and be ourselves.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。在如今这个快节奏的社会中,人们被各种电子设备所吸引,从而忽略了传统书籍阅读。作为一名作家,作者意识到自己对书的喜爱已经被电子产品所取代时,决心设定阅读目标,重拾对书籍的喜爱,并在读书中收获灵感、知识与深思。

1. A. wise B. ashamed
C. cautious D. numb

B 根据上文中的“*As a writer*”和下文中的“*to admit my love of books had been replaced*”可知,作者作为一名作家,自己对书籍的喜爱却被电子产品取代,这使作者感到惭愧。*ashamed*意为“羞愧的;惭愧的”,符合语境。

2. A. determined B. happened
C. seemed D. doubted

A 根据下文中的“*My goal was 52 books.*”可知,作者为自己设定阅读目标,决定重新开始阅读。*determine*意为“决定”,符合语境。

3. A. standard B. choice
C. expectation D. task

D 根据上文中的“*My goal was 52 books.*”和下文中的“*A 400-page book will take an average person around 8 hours to read.*”可知,作者的目標是52本书,而一本400页的书一般人需要大约8个小时才能读完。由此可知,作者的这个目标看起来是一个不可能完成的任务。*task*意为“任务”,符合语境。

4. A. received B. made
C. refused D. got

B 根据上文中的“*Finding time to read was a challenge*”及“*but*”一词可知,找时间阅读是一项挑战,但是作者还是达成了自己设定的目标。*make it*为固定搭配,意为“获得成功”,符合语境。

5. A. delay B. hesitation
C. permission D. disturbance

D 根据上文中的“*Then I read for an hour or two a time without*”可知,作者每天读书一到两小时,期间不受外界干扰。*disturbance*意为“干扰”,符合语境。

6. A. avoid B. practise
C. admit D. imagine

B 根据上文中的“*I treated my mind like a misbehaving child who needed some rules laid down. Then I read for an hour or two a time without* 5 *each day.*”可知,上文讲到作者对待自己的思想就像一个行为不端的孩子,需要制订一些规则,每天不受打扰地一次阅读一到两个小时。由此可推知,作者是在练习远离电子设备,从而回归阅读。*practise*意为“练习”,符合语境。

7. A. calmer B. stronger
C. tougher D. luckier

A 根据下文中的“*more focused*”可知,此处应为与其感情色彩相近的单词,再根据上文语境并结合选项可知,此处是指更加冷静。*calm*意为“冷静的”,符合语境。

8. A. hardly B. violently
C. easily D. difficultly

C 根据上文中的“*more focused we become*”和“*this was what I found*”可知,作者现在又可以轻松地让自己回到书中。*easily*意为“容易地,轻松地”,符合语境。

9. A. describes B. predicts
C. classifies D. declares

A 根据上文中的“*I drew inspiration from a book *On Quiet*, in which*”可知,此处指这本书的作者在书中描述了自己如何购买保险箱将家中的设备锁起来。*describe*意为“描述”,符合语境。

10. A. required B. suggested
C. meant D. divided

C 根据上文中的“*finding that quiet time*”及下文中的“*finding time just to read*”可知,对于作者来说,寻找安静的时间意味着寻找(用来)读书的时间。*mean*意为“意味着”,符合语境。

11. A. wallet B. book
C. phone D. pen

C 根据上文中的“*when I ordinarily would have reached for*”可知,此处指作者以前通常会去拿手机,*phone*意为“电话”,符合语境。

12. A. programme B. menu
C. option D. break

D 根据上文中的“*I read on the tram, in bed at*

night”可知,作者利用零散的时间读书,此处应指作者在午休时读书。break意为“休息”,符合语境。

13. A. value B. affection

C. recognition D. control

B 根据上文中的“admit my love of books had been replaced by a brain that simply could not sit still”可知,此处指作者重拾对书籍的喜爱。affection意为“喜爱”,符合语境。

14. A. instruction B. strength

C. inspiration D. encouragement

C 根据上文中的“I drew inspiration from a book”可知,此处指作者从书中找到灵感。inspiration意为“灵感”,符合语境,此处为原词复现。

15. A. slow down B. speed up

C. cheer up D. feel down

A 此处指阅读能够使人放慢节奏做自己。slow

down意为“放慢速度”,符合语境。

【微点写作】影评

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 令我们最感兴趣的是这个女性角色。

It's the female character that interests us most.

2. 从电影院里的热烈掌声和欢呼声来判断,大家一致认为这部影片的确是今年的最佳影片。

Judging from the wild clapping and cheers that filled the cinema, everybody agreed that it was indeed the best of the year.

3. 即使有这些小问题,这部电影仍然是一部很棒的电影,我非常喜欢它!

Even with these small problems, the film is still a great film, and I really enjoy it!

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握现在分词作状语的用法,并在真实语境中加以运用;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 学习描述电视节目的词汇,并运用这些词汇谈论自己喜欢的电视节目;
4. 了解音乐节的相关信息,掌握并运用与活动计划和安排相关的表达方式。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I would be very **grateful** if you are willing to help us.

感谢的,感激的

2. If you **overcome** a problem or a feeling, you successfully deal with it and control it.

克服

3. There's nothing like candlelight for creating a **romantic** mood.

浪漫的

4. A **comedy** is a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh.

喜剧

5. He began to tell me the **plot** of the film vividly.

情节

6. He was famous for writing the music for the **ballet** *Swan Lake* in 1876.

芭蕾舞剧

7. We were watching a **documentary** about the famous war.

纪录片

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>applaud</u> <i>v.</i> (为……)鼓掌	applause <i>n.</i> 鼓掌;喝彩
<u>extremely</u> <i>adv.</i> 极度,极其	extreme <i>adj.</i> 极度的
<u>absorbed</u> <i>adj.</i> 专心致志的	absorb <i>v.</i> 吸收;理解;吸引,使全神贯注
	absorbing <i>adj.</i> 十分吸引人的,引人入胜的
	absorption <i>n.</i> 吸收;并入;专注
<u>absolutely</u> <i>adv.</i> 完全地,绝对地	absolute <i>adj.</i> 绝对的,完全的对地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>appealing</u> <i>adj.</i> 有吸引力的, 有趣的	<u>appeal</u> <i>v.</i> 呼吁, 恳求; 上诉; 有吸引力 <i>n.</i> 呼吁, 恳求; 上诉; 吸引力; 感染力
<u>rude</u> <i>adj.</i> 粗鲁的, 无礼的	<u>rudely</u> <i>adv.</i> 粗鲁地, 无礼地 <u>rudeness</u> <i>n.</i> 粗鲁
<u>definitely</u> <i>adv.</i> 确切地, 肯定地	<u>definite</u> <i>adj.</i> 明确的; 确定的
<u>arrangement</u> <i>n.</i> 安排, 筹划	<u>arrange</u> <i>v.</i> 安排, 筹划
<u>transport</u> <i>n.</i> 交通运输系统, 运输方式; 运输, 运送 <i>v.</i> 运输, 运送	<u>transportation</u> <i>n.</i> 交通运输系统, 运输方式; 运输, 运送

III. 补全短语

1. stay up late 熬夜
2. thanks to 多亏; 由于

3. more or less 或多或少
4. put on 表演(节目); 上演
5. give up 放弃; 屈服
6. take place 发生; 举行

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导感叹句
What a rude person the host was!
这个主持人真是个粗鲁的人!
2. 句型公式: it 作形式主语
It's a wonder they didn't walk out of the studio.
他们没走出摄影棚真是个奇迹。
3. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语
Dating back to the 1970s, Glastonbury Festival is a music and arts festival that takes place on a large farm in Somerset in South-west England.
格拉斯顿伯里音乐节可以追溯到 20 世纪 70 年代, 是一个在英格兰西南部萨默塞特的一个大型农场里举行的音乐艺术节。

任务型课堂

1. appealing *adj.* 有吸引力的, 有趣的

(教材原文) Leopards are such **appealing** creatures and the cubs are adorable!

豹子是如此吸引人的动物, 幼崽多么可爱!

一感 读句子感悟用法

Sport has become an important form of entertainment, **appealing to** both men and women. 体育运动已成为一种重要的娱乐形式, 吸引着男男女女。

The Students' Union **appeals to us** students to do housework in our spare time.

学生会呼吁我们学生在自己的业余时间做些家务。

The police are **making an appeal to** the public for information about the crime.

警方呼吁公众提供有关这宗犯罪案件的信息。

Rock music **holds little appeal for** me.

摇滚音乐几乎不能引起我的兴趣。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) <u>appeal</u> <i>v.</i> 呼吁, 恳求; 上诉; 有吸引力 <u>appeal for</u> sth. 呼吁某事; 请求给予某物 <u>appeal</u> _____ ... 对……有吸引力; 呼吁……
------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

续表

探究要点	<u>appeal</u> _____ sb. for sth./to do sth. 向某人呼吁/恳求(做)某事 (2) <u>appeal</u> <i>n.</i> 呼吁, 恳求; 上诉; 吸引力, 感染力 <u>make an appeal to</u> sb. to do sth. 呼吁/恳求某人做某事 <u>hold little appeal for</u> sb. 对某人没什么吸引力
探究结论	(1) to; to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The *Harry Potter* books appeal to readers of all ages.

② I am writing to make an appeal to everyone to take (take) an active part in building a more beautiful school.

③ They're appealing for clothes and blankets to send to the disaster area.

④ The idea of a long holiday is rather appealing (appeal).

(2) 一句多译

为了强身健体, 我们学校呼吁学生们每天至少留出一个小时来进行锻炼。

①Our school appeals to the students to spare at least an hour every day to take exercise to build up our health. (appeal *v.*)

②Our school makes an appeal to the students to spare at least an hour every day to take exercise to build up our health. (appeal *n.*)

2. arrangement *n.* 安排, 筹划; 布置

(教材原文) Make **arrangements** to attend a concert in another city.

安排去另一座城市听一场音乐会。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I don't like the way he **makes arrangements** for everything.

我不喜欢他安排一切的方式。

We **arranged for** a car **to collect** you from the airport.

我们安排了一辆轿车到机场接你。

I have **arranged with** him **about meeting** at the restaurant.

我已经和他约好在饭店见面。

I have **arranged that** one of my staff will meet you at the airport.

我已经安排好一个职员去机场接你。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) make arrangements _____ ... 为……做出安排 make an arrangement with sb. 与某人商定或约好 come to/arrive at an arrangement 谈妥; 达成协议 (2) arrange <i>v.</i> 安排, 筹划; 整理; 布置; 排列 arrange (for sb./sth.) _____ sth. 安排(某人/某物)做某事 arrange with sb. about (doing) sth. 就(做)某事与某人达成协议 arrange that... 安排好……; 商定……
探究结论	(1) for (2) to do

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- I've arranged for a car to pick you up.
- Have you arranged with your team members about the coming performance?
- I arranged (arrange) with my parents that I would borrow their car.
- The Students' Union is making arrangements (arrange) for the coming Art Festival.

语法探究

现在分词作状语

「语法感知」

① **Having seen** quite a few productions of *Hamlet* and read the play many times, I was full of confidence—until the Peking Opera came to town!

② **Dating back to** the 18th century, Peking Opera has over two hundred years of history.

③ **Starting with** an orchestra playing traditional Chinese instruments, the opera brought a completely new sound to my Western ears.

④ Then, **seeing** the main characters come on stage, I was surprised!

⑤ **Using** such techniques, the opera had transformed a small stage into the whole universe.

⑥ **Feeling** the strong emotions of love, anger, fear and grief in the performance, I could easily recognise the theme of *Hamlet*.

1. 句①中**黑体部分**为现在分词的完成式,表示动作发生在谓语动词之前。句②~⑥中**黑体部分**为现在

分词的一般式,表示动作与谓语动词同时发生。

2. 句①~⑥中现在分词的逻辑主语都是句子的主语。

「语法精讲」

一、概念理解

现在分词作状语时,表示的动作是主语动作的一部分,用来修饰谓语,常表示动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、方式、伴随、让步等情况,并可以转换成相应的状语从句或并列句。

动词	形式	意义
以 do 为例	主动式 doing	与句子主语构成逻辑上的主谓关系,与谓语动作基本上同时发生
	被动式 being done	与句子主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系,且与谓语动作基本上同时发生

续表

动词		形式	意义
以 do 为例	完成式 having done	主动式 having done	与句子主语构成逻辑上的主谓关系,先于谓语动作发生
		被动式 having been done	与句子主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系,且先于谓语动作发生

二、语法规则

(一)现在分词作状语的用法

现在分词在句中作状语用来修饰谓语动词或整个句子,表示动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、方式、让步或伴随状况。

1. 作时间状语

现在分词作时间状语时,常放在句首,相当于一个时间状语从句。

Hearing the noise, I turned round.

= When I heard the noise, I turned round.

听到响声时,我转过身去。

2. 作原因状语

现在分词作原因状语时,相当于一个原因状语从句,也可以放在句首。

Having lived in the village for years, I know everyone quite well.

= Because I have lived in the village for years, I know everyone quite well.

因为我在这个村里住了很多年,所以我熟悉每个人。

3. 作条件状语

现在分词作条件状语时,相当于一个 if 引导的条件状语从句。

Working hard, you'll certainly succeed.

= If you work hard, you'll certainly succeed.

只要努力工作,你肯定会成功的。

4. 作结果状语

现在分词作结果状语时,通常放在句末,中间用逗号隔开,表示自然而然、意料之中的结果,分词前可接 thus。

More highways have been built in China, **making** it much easier for people to travel from one place to another.

中国建造了更多的公路,这使人们从一个地方到另一个地方变得更容易了。

名师点拨

现在分词作结果状语,是随着谓语动作的发生而产生的自然结果,其逻辑主语往往是前面整个句子所描述的情况,前面有时候可以加 thus。而不定式作结果状语常表示出乎意料的结果,有时候前面可以加 only。

5. 作让步、方式和伴随状语

现在分词作让步、方式和伴随状语时,说明动作发生的背景 and 情况。作伴随状语时,表示分词的动 and 作和谓语动作同时发生,此时可以转换成并列句。

Mary sat by the window of the classroom, **reading** a book.

= Mary sat by the window of the classroom and was reading a book.

玛丽坐在教室的窗边读一本书。

6. 作评论性状语

有些现在分词用于句首,没有逻辑主语而独立存在,作为句子的独立成分来修饰全句,表明说话者的态度、观点等,这被称为评论性状语或评注性状语。

常见的有 generally speaking 一般说来; roughly speaking 大致说来; frankly speaking 坦率地说; judging from/by 由……判断; considering... 考虑到……; supposing... 如果……; providing... 如果……; assuming... 假设……

Generally speaking, children are naturally curious. 一般说来,孩子天性好奇。

Judging from his accent, he is from Henan Province.

从其口音判断,他来自河南省。

Considering the budget, we decided to give up the travelling plan.

考虑到预算,我们决定放弃旅行计划。

(二)现在分词作状语的注意事项

1. 时态

现在分词作状语时,要注意分词的时间性,是用现在分词的一般式(doing),还是用完成式(having done)。

(1)当现在分词的动作与谓语动词的动作同时发

生时,用分词的一般式。

Walking in the street, I met an old friend of mine.

我正在大街上行走时,遇到了一位老朋友。

(Walking 和谓语动词 met 同时发生)

(2)当现在分词的动作先发生,而谓语动词的动作后发生时,用分词的完成式。

Having finished the letter, he went to post it.

他写完信后就把它寄了出去。(Having finished 是先发生的, went to post 是后发生的)

2. 语态

使用现在分词的主动式还是被动式,这主要取决于现在分词和句子主语之间的关系。句子的主语就是分词的逻辑主语。

Having been shown around the factory, they were very happy.

被领着参观了工厂后,他们很高兴。(现在分词的被动式)

Having finished his homework, he went to bed.

完成他的家庭作业后,他就去睡觉了。(现在分词的主动式)

3. 逻辑主语

现在分词作状语时,其逻辑主语必须与句子的主语一致。如果不一致,必须用独立主格结构来表示,也就是在分词前面加上它的逻辑主语。

My wife had a long talk with Sally, **explaining**

why she didn't want the children to play together.

我的妻子与萨莉谈了很长时间,解释她为什么不想让孩子们在一起玩。(explaining 是句子主语

My wife 做出的动作,它们之间是主动关系,即 explaining 的逻辑主语就是句子的主语 My wife)

The train **having gone**, we had to wait another day.

火车已经离开,我们只好再等一天。("The train having gone"为独立主格结构, having gone 的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致)

4. 否定式

现在分词的否定式是在分词前面加上 not, never 等否定词。

Not knowing how to find the subway, I asked a policeman for help.

我不知道怎样找到地铁,就去找警察帮忙。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. Hearing (hear) the signal, people ran out of the building.
2. The girl staring (stare) at him, he didn't know what to say.
3. Having been asked (ask) to work overtime that evening, I missed a wonderful film.
4. Having selected (select) the proper present, they sent it to their respectable professor.
5. When facing (face) so many options, the lion chose to wait instead of attacking the man.
6. Not knowing (know) what to do, the children had to wait for their parents to come back.
7. Judging (judge) from the appearance, it is very peaceful, but in fact, a war will break out soon.
8. The cooling wind swept through our bedroom windows, making (make) air conditioning unnecessary.

II. 完成句子

1. Not having finished her work in time, the boss fired her.
由于没有及时完成工作,老板解雇了她。
2. Personally speaking, I'm satisfied with your performance.
就个人而言,我对你的表现很满意。
3. There being no teacher in the classroom, the pupils began to talk freely.
由于教室里没有老师,学生们开始自由交谈。
4. Setting off earlier, you'll get to the town at dusk.
如果早点出发的话,你就会有在傍晚的时候到达小镇。
5. Having tried many times, he still couldn't succeed.
尽管尝试了多次,但他仍未成功。

课后素养评价(十八)

I. 选词填空

appealing; transport; definitely; grateful; stay up late; put on; overcome; more or less

- Please tell us definitely whether you will be coming or not.
- As long as we have a strong will, we will be able to overcome any difficulty.
- No words are strong enough to express how grateful I am to you for your help.
- We've tried to make the design more appealing to young people.
- With so many audience in front of us, we felt more or less nervous.
- A short play will be put on at the party.
- You shouldn't stay up late at night. It's bad for your health.
- The container could be transported on a ship, a train or a lorry (大卡车).

II. 单句语法填空

- Judith lay on the sofa, absorbed (absorb) in her book borrowed from the library.
- He made it absolutely (absolute) clear to me that he would help me with the work.
- We can come to an arrangement (arrange) over the price.
- The news shocked the public, leading (lead) to great concern about students' safety at school.
- Most people think that the local guide has been extremely (extreme) considerate and polite.
- Having worked (work) for two days, Steve managed to finish his report on schedule.
- Caught/Having been caught (catch) in a heavy rain, my daughter fell ill and had to ask for leave.
- I have a very busy life with no time to sit around feeling (feel) sorry for myself.
- Not knowing (know) her address, we can't get in touch with her.
- Having been shown (show) around the university, we then were taken to a building, where many scientists worked.

III. 阅读理解

Peking Opera is considered to be a Chinese

national treasure. Though it's called that name, it is not performed only in Beijing.

While we were in Yunnan, we watched a community performance of Peking Opera. The leader and the teacher of this group had retired from the Peking Opera Troupe. The rest of the group consisted of local retired men and women.

Our guide gave us an example of how each of the characters would be played. The male characters include an old man, a middle-aged man, a young man, and a small boy. Each of these characters will wear different costumes. The old man will move around like he has no sense of balance. The middle-aged man will walk slowly with large steps around the stage as if he owns the world. And the young man will dance around. Everyone laughed when the young man put on artificial hair and danced around the stage as if he was ten years old.

Our guide even told us about the different roles of women. The main differences with the women's ages are how a woman walks and her water sleeves. For the older women, they are more dignified (高雅的) in the way they walk. For the younger women, it is more about being graceful (优雅的) with the water sleeves.

The costumes of both the men and women hang according to the rank of the character being played and the age of the characters. It doesn't matter what age the actors are because the make-up will either make them look younger or older.

After seeing that performance, we began to fall in love with this great Chinese national treasure.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者在云南旅游时观看一场京剧表演的经历。

- What do we know about the guide?
 - He knew very well about Peking Opera.
 - He taught the author to sing Peking Opera.
 - He was good at performing Peking Opera.
 - He dreamed of performing Peking Opera.

A 推理判断题。根据第三、四段的内容可知,导游讲了很多关于京剧的知识。由此可知,他对京剧了解很多。

2. What mainly helps show the women characters' ages?
- The clothes they wear.
 - The colour of their hair.
 - The colour of their face.
 - The way they move.
- D 细节理解题。根据第四段第二句可知答案。
3. What does the author think of Peking Opera?
- It's simple and boring.
 - It's well worth seeing.
 - It's hard to understand.
 - It's helpful to his career.
- B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者认为京剧是很值得观看的。
4. What's the text mainly about?
- The author's opinion about Peking Opera.
 - How the retired people continued their career.
 - The author's experience of watching Peking Opera.

D. How to recognise different characters in Peking Opera.

C 主旨大意题。文章主要讲述了作者在云南旅游时观看一场京剧表演的经历。

【微点写作】影评

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 这部电影被认为是最伟大的卡通电影之一。
This film is considered to be one of the greatest cartoon films.
- 它在青少年中,甚至是成年人中都很受欢迎。
It is popular among teenagers, even the adults.
- 《流浪地球》是郭帆执导的科幻电影,改编自刘慈欣的同名小说。
The Wandering Earth is a science fiction film directed by Guo Fan and adapted from Liu Cixin's novel of the same name.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点;
- 通过扫读快速获取信息;
- 对戏剧、电影等艺术形式有一定的了解,尝试给别人推荐优秀的舞台艺术作品或影视节目,并能运用所学语言描述该作品或节目,说明推荐理由。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- brief *adj.* 短暂的
- disappointed *adj.* 失望的,沮丧的
- original *adj.* 原先的,最初的
- escape *v.* (从危险或糟糕的处境中)逃离,逃避,摆脱
- awkward *adj.* 紧张的;不舒适的
- behave *v.* 表现
- normal *adj.* 正常的,平常的

- responsibility *n.* 责任
- absence *n.* 缺乏,没有
- result in 引起,导致
- base... on... 把……建在……基础上
- live up to 符合(标准),不负(盛名)
- to some extent 在某种程度上

(二)阅读词汇

- turkey *n.* (电影或戏剧的)失败之作
- turn to 转向
- all too often 时常,经常是
- in one's own right 凭借自身,靠自己

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Details
Para. 1	All too often, great words 1. end up being turned into 2. cinematic “turkeys”.
Para. 2	Good movies need good 3. stories , strong characters and 4. impressive images.
Para. 3	One of the key 5. reasons is that while a book usually takes a few days to read, a movie 6. typically lasts under two hours.
Para. 4	Movies also 7. disappoint us when things don't look the way we 8. imagined them in the 9. books .
Para. 5	There are a thousand Hamlets in a thousand people's 10. eyes .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Which of the following is TRUE?
 - A good script is bound to make a good movie.
 - Good movies must have powerful characters.
 - A good script doesn't necessarily make a good movie.
 - Good movies must need impressive images.
- Which is one of the reasons why great words often end up as failures in movies?
 - It's harder to make a good movie than to write a good book.
 - Good books can make a deeper impression than movies.
 - The writers of good books are better than the directors of movies.
 - Good books can describe more plot details and characters.
- In the author's opinion, how should we judge the quality of a movie?
 - Whether the movie has received high praise from people.
 - Whether the movie is good or not by its own rules.
 - Whether the movie has more details and characters.
 - Whether the movie has a fascinating plot.
- What's the most controversial issue of the movie *Troy*?
 - The actress chosen to play Helen.

- The mixed reviews from the audience.
- The beautiful images of the movie.
- The background music of the movie.

答案: 1~4 CDBA

II. 课文语法填空

Rather often, people make very bad films **1. based** (base) on very good books. One of the key reasons behind this is **2. that** while a book usually takes a few days **3. to read** (read), a movie **4. typically** (typical) lasts under two hours. This is something that even the highly successful Harry Potter movies can't escape **5. from**, with fans of the books **6. disappointed** (disappoint) not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions. There are a thousand Hamlets in a thousand people's eyes. With this in mind, perhaps we shouldn't judge a movie against **7. its** (it) original source, **8. but** in its own right. In recent years, audiences **9. have turned** (turn) to television series such as *Sherlock* or *Mad Men*, **10. which** can have many characters and gradual plot development.

III. 阅读升华

- Why did audiences tend to watch TV series in recent years according to Paragraph 5?
Because TV series can have lots of characters and complete plots.
- Have you ever read the book *Dream of the Red Chamber*? What is it about?
略

课后素养评价(十九)

I. 单词拼写

1. He had a brief (短暂的) visit to the city last week.
2. His latest movie is a real turkey (失败之作).
3. To a certain extent (程度), we are all responsible for this tragic (不幸的) situation.
4. He broke down the locked door and escaped (逃走).
5. The writer's room still has many of its original (最初的) features.
6. He tried to dance, but he was too clumsy and awkward (不舒适的).
7. Most parents agree that it's hard to train children to behave (表现) well at the table.
8. With her parents' help, Lucy is generally able to live a normal (正常的) teenage life.
9. She noticed the absence (缺乏) of pictures in the book.
10. After hearing the news, a disappointed (失望的) look appeared on his face.

II. 短语填空

(be) based on; all too often; stand out; result in; take responsibility for; live up to; to some extent; turn to; in one's own right; in the absence of

1. Those with a vivid imagination tend to stand out in some creative work.
2. Research has shown that having a preference for junk food can result in obesity.
3. Have you ever seen the movies or TV plays based on these fictional stories?
4. She was full of anger and grief because he had failed to live up to his original promise.
5. There is no doubt that overusing the Internet to some extent does harm to people's mental and physical health.
6. Some people get awkward all too often because they are rude to others.
7. Advertising is not just propaganda (宣传). It has become an art in its own right.
8. After he left university he became a teacher, but later turned to journalism.
9. In the absence of teachers' instruction, I don't

know how to combine what I've learnt with practice.

10. We are supposed to take responsibility for our own behaviours and try our best to protect the environment.

III. 完成句子

1. My mother has me clean up my bedroom every day.
我妈妈每天都让我打扫我的卧室。
2. Determined to live up to my parents' expectations, I have to go all out.
决心不辜负父母的期望,我必须全力以赴。
3. With this in mind, you can find it easy to understand the long sentence.
记住这一点,你就会发现理解这个长句很容易。
4. Intelligence is to some extent something one is born with.
智力在某种程度上是一个人与生俱来的东西。
5. It's not what happens to you, but how you react to it that matters.
重要的不是发生了什么,而是你如何应对它。

IV. 七选五

What can you do to help people? The answer is—to be a volunteer! 1

Help yourself by helping others

When you volunteer to help others, you are helping yourself. 2 Lots of people really enjoy volunteering. Doing volunteer work means one important thing: You make a difference in the world. So where do you start? 3

Things to do with family members

Volunteering is a great way to have fun with your family. Talk to your parents, brothers, or sisters and see what they might be interested in. Find something you all agree on. You can do the things as a family like cleaning up a park and planting trees or flowers in your local community.

Invent your own opportunity

4 You can make and sell products, and donate the money. Volunteering gives kids a taste of responsibility. Volunteering can also help kids learn important things about themselves—like what kind

of things they're best at. A volunteer job can even help some kids decide what they want to do when they grow up. 5 Make a plan to start volunteering today!

A. School is a good place to start if you are looking for volunteer ideas.

B. Volunteering means spending time helping others.

C. If you're upset, doing something can be a great way to calm yourself down.

D. Why not come?

E. So what are you waiting for?

F. Kids can come up with their own ways to raise money or provide needed services.

G. Clean up a school or other public buildings.

答案:1~5 BCAFE

【微点写作】影评

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 这部电影讲述了在不久的将来,太阳即将消失的故事。

The film tells a story that in the near future the sun is dying out.

2. 最让我印象深刻的是“希望”和“永不放弃”的主题。

What impressed me most was the theme of “Hope” and “Never Give up”.

3. 这部电影是中国科幻电影的里程碑,自上映以来一直很受观众的欢迎。

The film is a landmark of Chinese science fiction films and has been popular with audiences since its release.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 通过读写活动,了解影评的写作特点,掌握影评的写作方法,并能运用所学知识写一篇影评;
3. 理解课文内容,思考“好书坏电影?”这一现象产生的原因,培养批判性思维。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you **escape** from a place, you succeed in getting away from it. 逃离

2. It is well-known to us that rainforests are disappearing to an alarming **extent**. 程度

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>brief</u> <i>adj.</i> 短暂的;简明的 <i>n.</i> 简介、指示	<u>briefly</u> <i>adv.</i> 短暂地;简明地
<u>disappointed</u> <i>adj.</i> 失望的,沮丧的	<u>disappoint</u> <i>v.</i> 使失望,使扫兴
	<u>disappointing</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人失望的
	<u>disappointment</u> <i>n.</i> 失望,沮丧

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>original</u> <i>adj.</i> 原先的,最初的	<u>originally</u> <i>adv.</i> 原先,最初
	<u>origin</u> <i>n.</i> 起源;出身,血统
<u>fictional</u> <i>adj.</i> 虚构的,编造的,小说(中)的	<u>fiction</u> <i>n.</i> 小说
<u>awkward</u> <i>adj.</i> 紧张的;不舒适的;令人尴尬的	<u>awkwardly</u> <i>adv.</i> 尴尬地
	<u>awkwardness</u> <i>n.</i> 尴尬

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>behave</u> <i>v.</i> 表现	behaviour <i>n.</i> 行为, 举止; 表现方式
<u>responsibility</u> <i>n.</i> 责任, 职责	responsible <i>adj.</i> 有责任心的
<u>absence</u> <i>n.</i> 缺乏, 没有	absent <i>adj.</i> 缺席的, 不在的; 缺乏的
<u>normal</u> <i>adj.</i> 正常的, 平常的	normally <i>adv.</i> 通常, 平常; 正常地
	abnormal <i>adj.</i> 不正常的, 反常的; 变态的

III. 补全短语

- base... on 以……为基础
- stand out 突出, 显眼; 杰出
- turn to 转向; 求助于
- result in 导致, 造成
- live up to 符合(标准), 不负(盛名)
- to some extent 在某种程度上
- all too often 时常, 经常是
- in one's own right 凭借自身, 靠自己

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: have + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

They say that “a picture is worth a thousand words”, but the briefest look at books and the movies based on them would have anyone questioning this common saying.

人们常说“一图胜千词”, 但是简单对照一下书籍

和由之改编的电影, 就会让人开始质疑这种说法。

- 句型公式: if so

If so, why has one of the earliest and greatest works in Western storytelling, Homer's *The Odyssey*, never had an equally great movie based on it?

如果是这样, 那为什么西方最早也是最优秀的叙事作品之一——荷马的《奥德赛》——从未产生过同样优秀的改编电影呢?

- 句型公式: 现在分词作结果状语

Many people thought she didn't live up to Helen's title of “the most beautiful woman in the world”, influencing opinions of the movie to some extent. 许多人认为她配不上海伦“世上最美女”这一称号, 这一定程度上影响了人们对这部电影的评价。

- 句型公式: find + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

Perhaps, one day, readers of F.Scott Fitzgerald's most admired work will find themselves glued to their screens by episodes of *The Great Gatsby*.

或许有一天, F. 斯科特·菲茨杰拉德最受推崇的作品的读者们会发现自己已被《了不起的盖茨比》的剧集牢牢地吸引住了。

- 句型公式: not... but...

Courage is not the absence of fear, but rather the judgement that something else is more important than fear.

勇气不是毫无恐惧, 而是一种判断, 认为有比恐惧更重要的东西。

任务型课堂

- escape** *v.* (从危险或糟糕的处境中) 逃离, 逃避, 摆脱; 被忘掉, 被忽视; 泄漏 *n.* 逃走, 逃脱

(教材原文) This is something that even the highly successful Harry Potter movies can't **escape** from, with fans of the books disappointed not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions.

这是连大获成功的《哈利·波特》系列电影也无法避免的事情, 有的书迷因为在电影中看不到自己最喜欢的一些角色而大失所望。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It was a prison **from** which no one **escaped**.

那是一座任何人都逃不出的监狱。

It is said that he narrowly **escaped being killed** in the traffic accident the other day.

据说前几天他在那场交通事故中死里逃生。

Last year I had **a narrow escape**, so I don't want to risk my life a second time.

去年我死里逃生, 因此我不想再去冒生命危险了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)escape _____ 从……逃脱;逃避 escape (doing) sth. 逃避(做)某事 escape one's attention/notice 逃过某人的注意 (2)make one's escape 逃跑 fire escape 太平梯,安全梯;安全出口 a narrow escape 九死一生;死里逃生
探究结论	(1)from

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)写出下列句子中 escape 的含义

- ①Bob looked back only to find an old classmate whose name **escaped** him for the moment. 被忘掉
- ②The thief jumped into a car and made his **escape**.
逃跑
- ③They tried to stop the **escape** of gas from the damaged pipe (管道).
泄漏
- ④He broke down the locked door and **escaped**.
逃走,逃离

(2)单句语法填空

- ①The young man was lucky enough to escape from the burning car.
- ②No one can escape being punished (punish) if he/she breaks the law.

2. responsibility n. 责任

(教材原文) The movie explores the theme of **responsibility** in an intelligent and humorous way. 这部电影以智慧和幽默的方式探讨了责任的主题。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We are supposed to **take the responsibility** to lead a low-carbon lifestyle, which is of great significance.

我们应该承担起低碳生活的责任,这意义重大。

You **have responsibility for informing** us of any changes.

= **It's your responsibility to inform** us of any changes.

你有责任告知我们任何变化。

Dog owners should be **responsible** if their dogs do an injury to other people or cause damage to their property.

如果狗伤害了他人或损害了他人的财产,狗的主人应该对此负责。

Furthermore, cars **are responsible for** a lot of traffic accidents.

此外,汽车造成许多交通事故。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)bear/take (the) responsibility for 承担对……的责任,为……负责 have responsibility for (doing) sth. 有(做)某事的责任 It's one's responsibility to do sth. 某人有做某事的责任。 a sense of responsibility 责任感 (2)_____ <i>adj.</i> 有责任的,应负责任的 be responsible _____ 应对……负责,对……有责任 be responsible to sb. 对某人负责
探究结论	(2)responsible; for

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

- ①The drunk driver is responsible for the accident that happened on a foggy morning.
- ②It is his sense of responsibility (responsible) and devotion (奉献) to the medical career that makes us admire him.
- ③Deeply moved, I made up my mind to follow their examples to take my own responsibility for protecting the environment.

(2)完成句子

- ① It is everyone's responsibility to build up a harmonious society.
建立和谐社会人人有责。
- ② Our department manager is directly responsible to the vice-president of sales.
我们的部门经理直接对销售副总裁负责。

3. stand out 突出,显眼;杰出

(教材原文) The characters do not **stand out**. 这些角色并不突出。

一感 读句子感悟用法

In mathematics, the letter X **stands for** an unknown number.

在数学中,字母 X 代表未知数。

Children should learn to **stand on their own feet**

rather than just depend on their parents.
孩子们应该学会独立,而不是只依靠他们的父母。

We must **stand up for** our rights.

我们必须维护自己的权利。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	stand by 站在旁边;袖手旁观 stand _____ 代表,表示;主张,支持;容忍 stand _____ one's own feet 自立,不依靠他人 stand up _____ 支持,维护 stand (doing) sth. 忍受(做)某事
探究结论	for; on; for

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Her bright clothes always make her stand out in a crowd.

② As is known to us all, red stands for happiness in traditional Chinese culture.

③ I'm not going to stand by and see her hurt.

(2) 完成句子

① She's never learned to stand on her own feet.
她从来都没学会自立。

② I can't stand people smoking around me when I'm eating.

我受不了吃饭时有人在我旁边吸烟。

4. absence n. 缺乏,没有;缺席,不在

(教材原文) Courage is not the **absence** of fear, but rather the judgement that something else is more important than fear.

勇气不是毫无恐惧,而是一种判断,认为有比恐惧更重要的东西。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He failed in the exam because of his **absence of mind**.

他因心不在焉而考试不及格。

If you are **in the absence of** social skills, it can lead to many problems.

如果你缺乏社交技巧,会导致很多的问题。

Dear Miss White, I am writing to apologise to you for **being absent from** the activity of the English Club on May 5th.

亲爱的怀特老师,我因没有参加5月5日的英语俱乐部活动而写信向您道歉。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) absence from 缺席,不在 absence of mind 心不在焉 in one's absence 某人不在时 _____ the absence of 在不存在……的情况下 (2) absent <i>adj.</i> 不在的,缺席的 be absent _____ 不参加,缺席
探究结论	(1) in (2) from

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is because of a long absence (absent) from school that I am a bit behind the other classmates.

② She had to be absent from the meeting, for she needed to take care of her sick mother.

(2) 句型转换

① Her absence from the meeting caused lots of doubts.

→ That she was absent from the meeting caused lots of doubts.

② I took pride in what I had done in my father's absence.

→ I took pride in what I had done in the absence of my father.

5. find + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

(教材原文) Perhaps, one day, readers of F. Scott Fitzgerald's most admired work will **find themselves glued to their screens** by episodes of *The Great Gatsby*.

或许有一天, F. 斯科特·菲茨杰拉德最受推崇的作品的读者们会发现自己已被《了不起的盖茨比》的剧集牢牢地吸引住了。

[句式分析] find oneself... 意为“发现自己处于某种境地”,而且含有“在不知不觉中……”的意思。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Dick **found himself walking** in the direction of Mike's house.

迪克发现自己正朝迈克房子的方向走去。

Even the best writers sometimes **find themselves lost for words**.

就连最好的作家有时候也会发现自己表达不出来。

However, when preparing for the English speech contest, I **found it very challenging** to collect information and use language correctly.

然而,为英语演讲比赛做准备时,我发现收集信息和正确使用语言非常具有挑战性。

After wandering around, we **found ourselves back at the hotel**.

四处漫步后,我们发现自己不知不觉回到了酒店。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	“find+宾语+宾语补足语”的结构形式归纳: find+宾语+ <table border="0" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 2em;">{</td> <td>_____ (表示主动、进行)</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>_____ (表示被动、完成)</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>_____ /副词</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>_____ 短语</td> </tr> </table>	{	_____ (表示主动、进行)		_____ (表示被动、完成)		_____ /副词		_____ 短语
{	_____ (表示主动、进行)								
	_____ (表示被动、完成)								
	_____ /副词								
	_____ 短语								
探究结论	现在分词;过去分词;形容词;介词								

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It was not until I got to the office that I found my key left (leave) at home.

② He hurried to the store, only to find the door closed (close).

③ When he came to himself, he found himself lying (lie) in hospital.

④ With so much noise around, he found it hard to settle down to his work.

(2) 句型转换

He found that his son was surrounded by papers and he was looking very worried.

→ He found his son surrounded by papers and looking very worried.

写作探究

影评

一、写作指导

写影评时,通常评论者可以从以下三个视角进行探讨:

- 主题思想。**主题思想即影片的主旨,是指影片通过人物塑造和生活场景描绘所表现出的中心思想。写影评时,应尝试挖掘影片的主题思想、发表独到见解。
- 人物形象。**影片中的人物通常是人们评论的重点,人物的塑造是否具有特色,是影片能否成功的关键。写影评时需思考影片中的人物有哪些突出特点值得评论。
- 艺术价值。**影片的艺术价值体现在镜头语言、剪辑手法、背景音乐等多方面,如使用蒙太奇的剪辑技巧可以丰富电影的表现力。写影评时,可对影片的艺术特色进行评价。

二、典题示例

假如你是李华,上周日你校组织观看了《长津湖》(*The Battle at Lake Changjin*),请就此写一篇影评。词数:150左右。

参考词汇:恶劣的 harsh; 牺牲 sacrifice; 繁荣 prosperity

三、审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 介绍该电影取得的成就 2. 简单介绍影片的主要内容 3. 发表评论

四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇

① play the leading role 主演

② move 使感动

③ extremely 很,非常

④ take advantage of 利用

⑤ deserve 应得,值得

(二) 完成句子

① Many famous actors play the leading roles in the film (主演这部电影) *The Battle at Lake Changjin*.

② The film makes many people moved (使很多人感动) and gets a huge box office success.

③ One of the most impressive scenes (最令人感动的一幕) is that the enemy took advantage of (利用)

the gap between the wars to enjoy delicious food, while each of our soldiers (而我们的每一名战士) could only be allocated one mouldy potato.

④ These heroes have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity (用他们的生命换来了现在的和平和繁荣).

⑤ Their stories deserve to be heard (值得被听到) by us and history should never be forgotten.

(三) 句式升级

① 用定语从句合并(二)中的句①②

The film *The Battle at Lake Changjin*, in which many famous actors play the leading roles, makes many people moved and gets a huge box office success.

② 用强调句改写(二)中的句④

It is these heroes who have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity.

(四) 连句成篇

The film *The Battle at Lake Changjin*, in which many famous actors play the leading roles, makes many people moved and gets a huge box office success.

In the film, under the extremely cold and harsh environment, the Chinese People's Volunteer Army went to Korea to fight. One of the most impressive scenes is that the enemy took advantage of the gap between the wars to enjoy delicious food, while each of our soldiers could only be allocated one mouldy potato. Although our soldiers did not have the advanced equipment of the enemy, they moved forward bravely with strong will and faith until the victory! They guarded the 38th parallel with their own blood and flesh to stop the enemy's attack.

It is these heroes who have exchanged their

lives for today's peace and prosperity. They are the most respectable and lovely people and we should remember them forever! Their stories deserve to be heard by us and history should never be forgotten.

五、学以致用

根据下列提示,用英语写一篇 80 词左右的关于《哈克贝利·费恩历险记》的评论。

《哈克贝利·费恩历险记》(*The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*)是马克·吐温(Mark Twain)的代表作(masterpiece)之一,讲述了白人小孩 Huckleberry Finn 从家中逃走,和黑奴 Jim 在密西西比河(Mississippi River)流浪的故事。Huckleberry Finn 遇见的人物涵盖了社会生活的各个阶层,因此这部小说生动地反映了当时的社会。《哈克贝利·费恩历险记》一直被称为美国文学史上最伟大的作品之一。

【参考范文】

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn is one of Mark Twain's greatest masterpieces. It tells that Huckleberry Finn runs away from home and wanders down the Mississippi River with a slave named Jim. But it is more than that. With the people Huckleberry Finn meets covering all walks of life, the novel vividly reflects the society at that time.

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn has been considered one of the greatest novels in American literature.

课后素养评价(二十)

I. 单句语法填空

- The police are trying to find out who is responsible (responsibility) for the terrible accident.
- He admitted that he had made an effort to escape being punished/punishment (punish).
- Normally (normal), the transport system in Paris carries 950,000 passengers a day.
- What you learn at school plays a very important part in shaping your behaviour (behave) in society.
- The movie based (base) on a true story is very moving.
- The children were disappointed (disappoint) to find the museum closed.
- The students who were often absent (absence) from classes failed their examinations.
- The decoration of the new house didn't live up to our expectations.
- Now would you please briefly (brief) introduce yourselves to each other?
- To some extent, I can understand their attitude.
- Although we try our best, sometimes our paintings rarely turn out as originally (original) planned.
- The best solution is to send a quick apology to explain your awkwardness (awkward).

II. 完成句子

- Film has a much shorter history, especially when compared to such art forms as music and painting. 电影的历史要短得多,尤其是与音乐、绘画等艺术形式相比。
- The main reason why people like travelling is that it can not only relax themselves, but also broaden their horizons.

人们喜欢旅游的主要原因是它不仅令人放松而且还可以开阔视野。

- He found the text difficult to understand so he turned to his teacher for help.

他发现这篇课文很难理解,所以向老师求助。

III. 语法填空

Shadow play has a long history and is **1. a** unique kind of art form. It is performed **2. by** sending shadows of puppets (木偶) on a piece of white cloth. The puppets made of leather (皮革) **3. are painted** (paint) in very bright colours, so that the shadows they make are very **4. colourful** (colour).

The players stand behind the cloth and move the puppets against strong light when **5. showing** (show) a shadow play, and the shadows of the puppets fall on the cloth. At the same time, the players talk or sing, telling a story with **6. musicians** (music) playing the drums and other instruments, such as *erhu*, *sanxian*, *sheng*, etc. People on the other side of the cloth can see the shadows of the puppets do all kinds of movements. It's just like the movie today.

Shadow play started in the Han Dynasty. **7. It** is said that Emperor Wu of Han was sad and didn't want to do anything because one of his favourite wives died. **8. To cheer** (cheer) him up, his officer made a puppet like the emperor's dead wife with leather. He moved it and made it **9. act** (act) behind a piece of cloth. The emperor enjoyed it very much. After that, shadow play became **10. popularly** (popular) known in China.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

根据下列提示,用英语写一篇 80 词左右的关于

《哈利·波特与魔法石》(*Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone*) 的影评。

哈利是一个前额有伤疤的、敏感的男孩。为了拯救自己和魔法世界,哈利和他的伙伴们与伏地魔(Voldemort)展开了激烈的较量。许多人抱怨电影太长了;在我看来,这是在突出电影特效,而无益于表现电影的情节。同时,让我失望的是一些有趣的情节没有在影片中展现出来。

虽然存在一些缺点,但《哈利·波特与魔法石》仍然是一部很棒的电影。

【参考范文】

Harry is a sensitive young boy who has a scar on his forehead. He and his partners have a fierce battle with Voldemort to save themselves and their magic world.

Many people have complained that the film is too long. I think this is more to highlight the special effects than to help the film's plot. Also, it disappoints me that several interesting scenes are not shown in the film.

Even with these slight drawbacks, *Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone* is still a great film, and I certainly recommend it!

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once, when I was a teenager, my father and I were standing in line to buy tickets for the circus (马戏). Finally, there was only one family between us and the ticket counter.

This family made a big impression on me. There were eight children, all probably under the age of twelve. You could tell they didn't have a lot of money.

Their clothes were not expensive, but they were clean. The children were well-behaved, all of them standing in line, two-by-two behind their parents, holding hands. They were excitedly talking about the clowns, elephants, and other acts they would see that night with their brothers or sisters in a low voice.

One could sense they had never been to the circus before. It promised to be the highlight of their young lives. The father and mother were at the head of the pack, standing proud as they could be. The mother was holding her husband's hand, looking up at him as if to say, "You are my knight in shining armor."

He was smiling and responding in pride, looking back at her as if to say, "You got that right." The ticket lady asked the father how many tickets he wanted. He proudly responded, "Please let me buy eight children's tickets and two adult tickets, so I can take my family to the circus."

The ticket lady gave the price. The man's wife let go of his hand. Her head dropped, and her lips began to shake. The father leaned a little closer and asked, "How much did you say?"

The ticket lady again quoted the price. The man didn't have enough money.

How was he supposed to turn and tell his eight children that he didn't have enough money to take them to the circus? Actually, we were not wealthy in any sense. So I understood how the kids would feel. I felt sorry for them.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Seeing what was going on, my dad put his hand in his pocket, pulled out a \$20 bill and dropped it on the ground. _____

That day my father and I went back to our car and drove home without any tickets. _____

【参考范文】

Seeing what was going on, my dad put his hand in his pocket, pulled out a \$20 bill and dropped it on the ground. Then he picked it up and tapped the man on the shoulder and said, "Excuse me, sir, this fell out of your pocket." The man turned around and saw the money. He knew what was going on. He looked straight into my dad's eyes, took my dad's hand in both of his, squeezed tightly onto the \$20 bill, and with his lip shaking and a tear running down his cheek, he replied,

"Thank you, thank you, sir. This really means a lot to me and my family."

That day my father and I went back to our car and drove home without any tickets. We didn't go to the circus that night. When I asked Dad why he did so, Dad said, "My child, it was a desperate, heartbreaking and embarrassing situation for a father. Surely he wasn't begging for a handout, but he reminded me of my father, when I was young." He paused for a while, as if wandering in his memory. "We should appreciate what we have obtained from life and seize every opportunity to help others. We didn't go to the circus tonight, but we didn't go without anything. Now, who wants an ice cream?"

读后续写技能养成 || 动作描写之“腿和脚”

「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之“腿和脚”:是指对人的腿、脚、膝和踝等的动作描写,如站、踩、蹬、踹、踢、跳、走、跑、跺脚、屈膝、跪下、扭伤等。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住“腿和脚”的动作特点进行描写,也可以使用一些描述心理活动的词汇辅助描写腿和脚的动作。

「范例体悟」

I was so exhausted that the gentle breeze of her passing was enough to knock me down. I staggered a few steps, and rushed across the finish line. I heard people cheering for the champions, not for me. They were probably joking about the lead I had lost. All my teammates pulled me to my feet. To my surprise, they were congratulating me.

找出文中“腿和脚”的动作描写并写下来。
staggered a few steps; rushed across; pulled me to my feet

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. walk *v.* 走
2. run *v.* 跑
3. jump *v.* 跳
4. rush *v.* 冲
5. stagger *v.* 蹒跚
6. pause *v.* 暂停
7. jog *v.* 慢跑
8. kick *v.* 踢
9. slip *v.* 滑倒
10. follow *v.* 跟着
11. limp *v.* 蹒跚;跛行

12. wander *v.* 闲逛
13. stroll *v.* 溜达, 散步
14. tiptoe *v.* 踮着脚走
15. shoot across 飞快地穿过
16. march into 大步走进
17. sneak into 潜入
18. slide into 溜进
19. leap over 跳过
20. stand up 站起来
21. plant/root one's feet 稳稳地站住
22. jump/spring to one's feet 跳起来
23. stamp one's feet 跺脚
24. drag one's feet 拖着脚走路, 慢吞吞地走
25. rise to one's feet 站起来
26. cross one's legs 交叉双腿, 盘腿
27. struggle to one's feet 挣扎着站起来
28. step back 后退
29. pace up and down 来回踱步
30. trip over 被……绊倒

II. 佳句背诵

1. Disappointed and frustrated, the poor man dragged his feet back home.
这个可怜的人失望又沮丧, 慢吞吞地回家了。
2. He sprang to his feet/jumped up and rushed out of the living room.
他一跃而起, 冲出客厅。
3. She slipped out of bed and tiptoed to the window.
她溜下床, 踮起脚尖走向窗户。
4. He was so worn out that he lifted his feet to leave as if they weighed a tonne.
他是如此疲惫以至于抬脚离开时好像双脚有千斤重。
5. Jenny walked slowly to the front, with her legs trembling and her heart bumping nearly out of

her chest.

珍妮两腿发抖, 慢慢地走到前面, 心都快跳出来了。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. She stamped her feet impatiently.
她不耐烦地跺着脚。
2. She had sprained her ankle and was limping.
她扭伤了脚踝, 一瘸一瘸地走着。
3. She planted/rooted her feet firmly to the spot and refused to move.
她牢牢地站在原地, 一动也不动。
4. Jill crossed her legs and rested her chin on one fist, as if lost in deep thought.
吉尔盘着腿, 一个拳头撑着下巴, 仿佛陷入了沉思。
5. He sprang from his chair and dashed to pick up the telephone.
他从椅子上一跃而起, 冲过去拿起电话。

II. 用“腿和脚”的动作描写完成下面的语段

The father 1. was running breathlessly (正气喘吁吁地跑) along the path, thinking of his daughter Cathy who was waiting for him at home. He 2. ran towards his house (朝家跑去), with his mouth dry and 3. his legs trembling (两腿发抖). All of a sudden, 4. his feet slipped (脚一滑), and he fell over, flat on his back 5. with his legs wide (两腿叉开). After a while, he 6. struggled to his feet (挣扎着站起来) to pick himself up. With a sinking heart, he 7. dragged his shaky and tired legs (拖着颤抖和疲惫的双腿) back home. He slowly 8. entered/walked into the room (走进房间), and at once Cathy 9. jumped up, ran to him and threw her arms around his neck (跳起来, 跑向他并搂住他的脖子).

第四单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解 (共 15 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 37.5 分)

A

Venice International Film Festival

The Venice International Film Festival takes place every year in late August or early September on the Lido in the historic Palazzo del Cinema, in Venice, Italy. Its main award is the “Leone d’Oro” (Golden Lion). Recently, a new award has been added, the San Marco Award for the best film.

Academy Awards

The Academy Awards are the most prominent film awards in the United States. The awards are granted by the Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences. Academy Awards are nicknamed “Oscars”, which is also the nickname of the statuette (小雕像). The name is said to have been born when Margaret Herrick saw the statuette on a table and said, “It looks just like my uncle Oscar!”

Berlin International Film Festival

The Berlin International Film Festival is one of the “A” festivals in Europe. The Berlin International Film Festival, also called the “Berlinale”, is held annually in February and started in 1951 after an initiative of the American, who occupied part of the city after World War II. The jury (专家评奖团) always placed special emphasis on representing films from all over the world, from the former Eastern Bloc (集团) countries as well as from Western countries. The awards are called Golden and Silver Bears (as the bear is the symbol of Berlin).

Cannes Film Festival

The Cannes Film Festival is a famous international film festival. It has been held annually in Cannes, in the south of France, since 1946 with a few exceptions. Given massive media exposure, the Festival is attended by many movie stars and is a popular venue for movie producers to launch their new films and attempt to sell their works to the

distributors who come from all over the world. The most famous award given out at Cannes is the “Palme d’Or” (Golden Palm) for the best film; this is sometimes shared by multiple films in one year.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四个世界闻名的电影节: 威尼斯国际电影节、奥斯卡电影节、柏林国际电影节、戛纳电影节。

1. Which award can be shared by multiple films in one year?

- A. Golden Lion.
- B. Golden Palm.
- C. Academy Awards.
- D. San Marco Award.

B 细节理解题。文章最后一句话提到, 戛纳电影节最著名的奖项“金棕榈奖(Golden Palm)”有时可由一年中的多部影片共同获得。故选 B。

2. Which award has the shortest history?

- A. Golden Lion.
- B. Golden Palm.
- C. Academy Award.
- D. San Marco Award.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段最后一句“Recently, a new award has been added, the San Marco Award for the best film.”可知答案为 D 项。

3. Why are the awards for the Berlin International Film Festival called “Golden and Silver Bears”?

- A. They look like a bear.
- B. They are made up of bear fur.
- C. The bear is the symbol of Berlin.
- D. The bear is rare in Berlin.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Berlin International Film Festival** 部分中的最后一句可知, 柏林国际电影节的奖项名叫金熊奖和银熊奖, 这是因为熊是柏林的象征。

B

As a child, Rob Stewart loved the natural world. “He loved everything in the sea, but sharks the most,” said his mother, Sandy Stewart.

Stewart spent his life studying and

photographing sharks and other sea creatures, and creating films. Sadly, he died in 2017 at the age of 37 in a diving accident. The accident happened while Stewart was filming *Sharkwater Extinction*, which members of his crew completed after his death.

Knowing that about 25% of shark species were endangered and sharks might soon be extinct, Stewart worked hard to raise awareness of people about sharks' key role in nature. Stewart believed that they should be protected against humans and other enemies. He studied how illegal shark finning has led to a great fall in the shark population.

When Stewart found out about the finning, he tried to end it. As an experienced diver and skilled cinematographer, he was able to raise awareness of the problem by filming sharks in their natural environment. "His films," said Sandy Stewart, "showed people how beautiful the underwater creatures are. People would fall in love with them and work to protect them."

As of 2013, 55 countries had banned shark finning. Stewart lived and died a hero in the pursuit of saving sharks and the sea. He is believed to have saved one-third of the world's sharks.

Stewart's parents hope kids will continue his story by supporting shark-friendly actions. They encourage kids to buy or ask their parents to buy shark-free products.

Another thing that young people can do is learn more about sharks. A good place to start is "Shark Database", an online resource that was created by Rob Stewart's friends.

"It's your generation that we want to make sure sees the world that Rob saw and does whatever you can to protect the big fish," said Stewart's father. "One person can make a big difference."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。Rob Stewart 喜欢海洋动物,尤其是鲨鱼,他通过拍摄相关影片来呼吁人们保护鲨鱼和维护海洋生态平衡。

4. What do we know about Rob Stewart?
- A. He died because of a shark attack.
B. He was interested in sea animals.

- C. He led a research team studying the sea.
D. He made *Sharkwater Extinction* in 2017.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“He loved everything in the sea, but sharks the most”和第二段中的“Stewart spent his life studying and photographing sharks and other sea creatures, and creating films.”可知,Rob Stewart 对海洋里的一切感兴趣,尤其是鲨鱼。故选 B。

5. What did Rob Stewart do to end illegal shark finning?
- A. He made films showing sharks living naturally.
B. He encouraged people to buy shark-free products.
C. He wrote to the government asking for a ban on shark finning.
D. He collected information to show the influence of illegal shark finning.
- A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“When Stewart found out about the finning, he tried to end it. As an experienced diver and skilled cinematographer, he was able to raise awareness of the problem by filming sharks in their natural environment.”可知,Rob Stewart 通过拍摄在自然环境下生存的鲨鱼使人们了解鲨鱼的困境。故选 A。
6. How may Rob Stewart's action to save sharks be described?
- A. Creative.
B. Successful.
C. Fruitless.
D. Unwelcome.
- B 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可推知,Rob Stewart 为保护鲨鱼所做的努力颇有成效。故选 B。
7. In the underlined sentence “the world that Rob saw”, _____.
- A. little action was taken to protect sharks
B. less than 50 countries banned shark finning
C. about a quarter of shark species were in danger
D. human behaviour was the main cause of shark extinction
- C 句意理解题。根据最后一段的内容以及第三段中的“Knowing that about 25% of shark species were endangered and sharks might soon be

extinct, Stewart worked hard to raise awareness of people about sharks' key role in nature.”可知,在 Stewart 看到的世界中,有四分之一的鲨鱼种类濒临灭绝。故选 C。

C

Many of the Earth's creatures die because of humans' choices. These choices have nothing to do with food or shelter or anything else that helps humans survive. What kills millions of wild animals all over the world is that humans want to make money by doing so.

People use parts of animals for almost everything, from handbags to jewellery. To protect wild animals, classifying a species as the endangered animal and making decisions to protect it are not enough. What matters is what we do and how long we can do it.

During the late 1980s, saving elephants became a popular cause. Wildlife protection groups made sure everyone saw pictures or films of elephants with their faces cut off for their tusks. These groups also proved that certain populations of elephants were decreasing. As a result, most people stopped buying objects made of ivory. Laws against poaching (偷猎) were made stronger. Many countries made importing ivory illegal. Killing elephants for their tusks became more risky and less profitable (有利可图的).

However, concern for certain species would become weak after a while. In the late 1970s, people protested (抗议) against the killing of seal babies. Everyone was shocked to see young seals being killed in their icy habitat. The cruel activity stopped. But ten years later, the number of seal babies killed was higher than ever.

Other animal protection movements have come and gone, such as saving the whales and protecting dolphins. The whale population appears to have increased for now. And the laws are finally changed in America to protect the dolphins that swim with tuna fish in parts of the Pacific Ocean.

In the years to come, people's attention will

probably turn to some other endangered species. Plenty of them urgently need attention. During this time, will the elephants be forgotten?

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。人类猎杀动物获利,当野生动物保护组织让人们了解到野生动物因被非法捕杀而数量不断减少时,人们才开始行动起来抵制用野生动物制作的产品,法律才更加严厉地制裁偷猎者。但是人们对动物的保护力度和关注度却在下降。因此作者希望对动物保护的关注和行动能够一直保持下去。

8. What leads to the disappearance of millions of wild animals?

- A. The growing human population.
- B. Humans' hope for making a fortune.
- C. Humans' too much need for wild food.
- D. Not having enough laws on wildlife protection.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段最后一句“What kills millions of wild animals all over the world is that humans want to make money by doing so.”可知,人类的贪财导致了数百万野生动物的消失。故选 B。

9. What can you infer from the text about what happened in the late 1980s?

- A. Wildlife protection groups did make great efforts.
- B. Importing ivory in all countries was illegal.
- C. Those who killed elephants all got caught.
- D. Hunting was completely not allowed.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,20世纪80年代末,人们开始拯救大象,再根据该段中的“As a result, most people stopped buying objects made of ivory. Laws against poaching (偷猎) were made stronger. Many countries made importing ivory illegal. Killing elephants for their tusks became more risky and less profitable (有利可图的).”可知,野生动物保护组织确实做出了巨大努力。故选 A。

10. Why are seal babies mentioned in Paragraph 4?

- A. To show the effort to protect seal babies.
- B. To show an increasing number of seal babies.
- C. To show the decrease of worry about certain species.

D. To show people's protest against the killing of seal babies.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段第一句“However, concern for certain species would become weak after a while.”可知,第四段提到海豹宝宝是为了表明人们对某些物种的担忧减少了。故选 C。

11. What does the author mean by using the underlined sentence?

A. Humans should choose some rare animals to protect.

B. Attention must be paid to saving some endangered wildlife.

C. Success has been achieved in quite a few cases of wildlife protection.

D. Concern and movements for animal protection should be always kept.

D 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“Other animal protection movements have come and gone...”和最后一段第一句“In the years to come, people's attention will probably turn to some other endangered species.”可推断出,作者说这句话的意思是,对动物保护的关注和行动应该一直保持下去。故选 D。

D

The spiders have long, scary legs. Some spiders even bite. But Spider-Man is another story. He might help people see spiders less negatively, a new study finds.

After Menachem Ben-Ezra, a proud fan of superhero movies and also a psychologist, saw the movie *Ant-Man and the Wasp*, he walked out with a sudden scientific idea that he should measure people before they went into the theatre, and afterwards to see if the fear of ants would be reduced or changed.

Ben-Ezra and his colleagues asked 424 people questions, about one-quarter of them about spiders, such as “Did you find them scary?” “Did seeing one make your heart race and palms sweat?” A second group received similar questions, this time about ants. The last two groups got the same questions about other insects. Afterwards, everyone watched videos. Group one got a *Spider-Man* movie. Group

two saw *Ant-Man and the Wasp*. Groups three and four watched an unrelated video — wheat waving peacefully in the breeze.

After viewing the movie, Ben-Ezra again asked the participants how they felt about spiders, ants or other insects in general — and found the ant and spider exposures seemed to make people insensitive and less afraid. Between 3.5 and 6.1 percent of people experience such a phobia (恐惧症) of spiders. Phobias can stop people from travelling, working and enjoying their lives.

Ben-Ezra hopes that their movie research might help people with phobias. But they caution that people with phobias shouldn't just run out and watch movies and expect their fear to go away. “What we did is only the first step in a very long road,” Ben-Ezra says. “We didn't say you'll be cured. We don't have evidence for that.” But eventually, presenting people's fears in a positive context — such as a superhero movie — might help people surmount their fear or disgust. After all, if spiders produce Spider-Man, maybe they're not so bad.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章讲述了心理学家 Menachem Ben-Ezra 发现,正能量的电影有助于帮助人们克服对某个事物的恐惧。

12. What method did Ben-Ezra use in his study?

A. By giving examples.

B. By asking questions.

C. By analysing causes.

D. By making assumptions.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Ben-Ezra and his colleagues asked 424 people questions, about one-quarter of them about spiders, such as ‘Did you find them scary?’ ‘Did seeing one make your heart race and palms sweat?’”可知, Ben-Ezra 是通过问问题的方式进行这项研究的。故选 B。

13. What does the underlined word “surmount” in the last paragraph mean?

A. Overcome.

B. Subscribe.

C. Intervene.

D. Estimate.

A 词义猜测题。根据最后一段中的“Ben-Ezra hopes that their movie research might help people with phobias.”,并结合画线单词所在的句子“But eventually, presenting people’s fears in a positive context—such as a superhero movie—might help people surmount their fear or disgust.”可知,画线单词 surmount 是“克服”的意思。故选 A。

14. What did Ben-Ezra advise people to do with phobias?

- A. They should travel, work and enjoy their lives.
- B. They should keep their phobias of insects a secret.
- C. They should adopt a positive attitude to their fear.
- D. They should watch more superhero movies.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘But eventually, presenting people’s fears in a positive context... might help people surmount their fear or disgust.’”可知,Ben-Ezra 认为将恐惧置于积极的语境中有助于克服恐惧。可推断出他建议人们要对自己的恐惧持有积极的态度。故选 C。

15. What is the best title for this passage?

- A. The Insect Phobia Cured with Wasp
- B. The Positive Energy of Superheroes
- C. Spider-Man’s Spider Fear
- D. Fighting Spider Fear with Spider-Man

D 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第一段中的“‘But Spider-Man is another story. He might help people see spiders less negatively, a new study finds.’”和最后一段的内容可知,本文主要讲述一位心理学家 Ben-Ezra 发现正能量的电影,比如关于蜘蛛侠的电影,有助于帮助人们克服对某个事物的恐惧。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Castles (城堡) and temples wear away after hundreds of years, but the symbols and words on the stone often survive. 16. E-books came from the development of science and technology, and can be read online. Many people believe that regular

books will be one day replaced by e-books.

Books and e-books share lots of similarities. They are both items created by great minds; 17. You can draw lines or highlight some details on books or e-books as notes. The notes can be kept for a long time.

18. Firstly, books don’t have to be charged, while e-books need electricity if we want to read them. Meanwhile, spending too much time reading e-books may do harm to our eyes. Moreover, e-books don’t share the same weight when held in the hand as regular books, nor do they give that sense of fulfilment that comes from finishing a thick book. However, e-book devices (设备) are easy to carry. 19.

A disadvantage of e-book devices is that people tend to get distracted (分心) when they’re using one, as many devices often have apps or games on them. 20.

Whichever you prefer, both books and e-books are just a way to help us gain knowledge and get to know other people’s experiences. They are both necessary, so it’s too early to say one will disappear.

- A. But they have differences as well
- B. They take less space than books
- C. Indeed our lives are formed by what books we read
- D. This is similar to how the words in books manage to live on
- E. they all have an index (索引) to introduce the main topic of each book
- F. But with a regular book, your mind is always absorbed in the words
- G. each individual can decide which reading method is best for them based on their own needs

答案:16~20 DEABF

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Mary and I, together with our husbands, helped look after our neighbours’ children this weekend. Our 21 have two children aged 3 and 6 and my husband and I chose the six-year-old child. What a pleasure! We 22 last night with Mary

who invited us to have dinner. They were looking after the 3-year-old boy for 23 at their dining table.

The 3-year-old child was 24 his parents who were overseas for the weekend. When he saw his sister, he 25 with tears flowing on his face. I had “Plan B” in the back of my head. When I saw that the child was 26 and my friends who were looking after him were also 27, I offered to take both of them with us.

I thought another 28 for the night wasn't the best idea, so we 29 made a decision to go back to our own house. Then I 30 the child's overnight bed 31, and we came back home together. I had a 32 night as the boy was awake 5 times through the night, crying for his mommy, and it took a while to 33 him down.

Mary and her 34 came over this morning with their own children who are under 2 years old 35 I could have a short break. At noon, they left. I had just got to get through the afternoon, baths and dinner, and then their parents would be back.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和朋友玛丽夫妇照看邻居家孩子的经历。

21. A. neighbours B. classmates
C. parents D. enemies
A 作者本周要照顾邻居家的孩子,由此可知,邻居家有一个3岁和一个6岁的孩子。故选A。
22. A. turned around B. dressed up
C. settled down D. met up
D 根据上文内容可知,Mary家和作者家分别照顾邻居家的一个孩子,昨晚Mary邀请我们见面,一块吃饭。故选D。
23. A. fun B. dinner
C. concern D. power
B 在餐桌上他们照顾3岁的男孩吃晚饭。故选B。
24. A. joining B. visiting
C. missing D. hating
C 这个3岁的孩子想念在国外度周末的父母。故选C。
25. A. smiled B. cried
C. drank D. played

B 根据空后的“with tears flowing on his face”可知,小男孩看见6岁的姐姐就哭了。故选B。

26. A. kind B. shocked
C. sad D. funny
C 作者看到小男孩伤心时她的朋友们也紧张不安,所以作者打算把他们两个都带走。故选C。
27. A. nervous B. quiet
C. excited D. moved
A 句意同上。故选A。
28. A. weekend B. overcoat
C. cab D. house
D 根据下文“our own house”可知,作者认为在另一所房子过夜不是最好的,所以作者一家很快决定回自己的家。故选D。
29. A. frequently B. hardly
C. quickly D. gradually
C 句意同上。故选C。
30. A. ate up B. packed up
C. made D. threw
B 然后作者把孩子晚上的被褥放在包里。故选B。
31. A. toys B. shoes
C. clothes D. foods
C 句意同上。故选C。
32. A. terrible B. peaceful
C. hopeful D. sweet
A 小男孩一晚上醒五次,所以作者说她过了一个糟糕的晚上。故选A。
33. A. send B. let
C. pull D. calm
D 小男孩晚上哭着找妈妈,使他冷静下来需要一段时间。故选D。
34. A. children B. husband
C. students D. sister
B 第二天早上Mary和她的丈夫带着他们的孩子来了,所以作者能休息一会儿。故选B。
35. A. but B. for
C. or D. so
D 第二天早上Mary和她的丈夫带着他们的孩子来了,所以作者能休息一会儿。故选D。
- IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)
- Dream of the Red Chamber*, **36.** an epic masterpiece in Chinese literature, **37.** will be staged

(stage) as an original ballet show by the National Ballet of China (NBC) this coming Friday, according to the troupe at a media event.

Considered as one of the four great classical **38. novels** (novel) of Chinese literature, *Dream of the Red Chamber*, through the perspective of Jia Baoyu, narrates a story about the fall of his large wealthy family and **39. his** (he) complex relationship with Lin Daiyu and Xue Baochai. It shows the beauty of women and complicated ancient Chinese society from all angles, **40. which** has a far-reaching influence and world-renowned reputation.

The ballet dance drama will present this Chinese classic novel through a romantic Western-style narration, **41. offering** (offer) a visual feast with a carefully designed winter snow stage setting and the costumes of the characters. By integrating Chinese silk into the ballet skirts, the designer Yang Donglin commits himself to achieving a **“42. combination** (combine) of Eastern and Western aesthetics (美学)”.

“You can imagine **43. how** appealing it is to see the use of Western ballet to tell a classic Chinese story,” chief choreographer Tong Ruirui told the *Global Times* on Thursday.

“NBC has done remarkably in adapting this wonderful classic **44. into** a ballet. It'll definitely help the story gain much **45. wider** (wide) recognition around the world,” commented Zhang Qingshan, president of the academic organization of *Dream of the Red Chamber*.

V. 写作(共两节, 满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

根据下列提示, 用英语写一篇关于影片《百万英镑》(*The Million Pound Note*)的评论, 词数 80 左右。

影片讲述了一个美国穷小子亨利·亚当斯(Henry Adams)在伦敦的奇遇。伦敦的两位富翁打赌, 把一张无法兑现的百万支票借给亨利, 看他在一个

个月内如何收场。一个月的期限到了, 亨利不仅没有饿死或被捕, 反倒成了富翁, 并且赢得了一位漂亮小姐的爱情。

参考词汇: 奇遇 fortuitous adventure; 讽刺的 sarcastic

【参考范文】

I am going to introduce a movie, *The Million Pound Note*, to you. It describes a fortuitous adventure of Henry Adams, a poor American lad in London. Two rich men in London had a bet on him and wanted to see what would become of him a month later if they gave him a million pound bank note which couldn't be cashed. A month later, Henry wasn't starved or arrested, but became a millionaire. What's more, he even won the love of a pretty lady.

Through humorous and sarcastic language, the movie successfully gave us the wonderful story. I think the movie is well worth watching.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

One weekend in July, Jane and her husband, Tom, had driven three hours to camp overnight by a lake in the forest. Unfortunately, on the way an unpleasant subject came up and they started to quarrel. By the time they reached the lake, Jane was so angry that she said to Tom, “I'm going to find a better spot for us to camp” and walked away.

With no path to follow, Jane just walked on for quite a long time. After she had climbed to a high place, she turned around, hoping to see the lake. To

her surprise, she saw nothing but forest and, in the distance, a snowcapped mountain. She suddenly realised that she was lost.

“Tom!” she cried. “Help!”

No reply. If only she had not left her mobile phone in that bag with Tom. Jane kept moving, but the farther she walked, the more confused she became. As night was beginning to fall, Jane was so tired that she had to stop for the night. Lying awake in the dark, Jane wanted very much to be with Tom and her family. She wanted to hold him and tell him how much she loved him.

Jane rose at the break of day, hungry and thirsty. She could hear water trickling (滴落) somewhere at a distance. Quickly she followed the sound to a stream. To her great joy, she also saw some berry bushes. She drank and ate a few berries. Never in her life had she tasted anything better. Feeling stronger now, Jane began to walk along the stream and hope it would lead her to the lake.

As she picked her way carefully along the stream, Jane heard a helicopter. Is that for me? Unfortunately, the trees made it impossible for people to see her from above. A few minutes later, another helicopter flew overhead. Jane took off her yellow blouse, thinking that she should go to an open area and flag them if they came back again.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

But no more helicopters came and it was getting dark again. _____

It was daybreak when Jane woke up. _____

【参考范文】

But no more helicopters came and it was getting dark again. Immediately, an absolute darkness ruled the forest. Jane, exhausted and scared, lay down near a stone, missing her family at a distance. All the fantastic memories crowded in and she couldn't help crying, “Hadn't I quarrelled with Tom, walked away and climbed to the high place, I wouldn't be trapped in this awful place, confronted with the danger of dying.” She regretted with endless anxiety, and then became asleep with shining tears in her eyes.

It was daybreak when Jane woke up. Weak as she was, she struggled to her feet, continuing searching for assistance. To her great joy, a helicopter was flying overhead again and again. Eager and excited, she flagged her yellow blouse and spared no effort to yell so as to attract others' attention. Fortunately, she was eventually noticed and brought into the helicopter. There, she saw her husband, a man staring at her, wearing an expression of relief. As tightly as possible, she hugged him and was too thrilled to say anything. Besides, they agreed never to quarrel again, determining to live life to fullest.

Unit 5

On the road

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文, 获取课文大意;
3. 思考并回答旅行调查问卷中的问题, 对旅游话题进行初步思考。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. profession *n.* 需要高等教育和训练的专业, 行业
2. previous *adj.* 以前的, 先前的
3. quit *v.* 离开(工作岗位、学校等); 离任
4. make an impact on 对……产生影响
5. be used to 习惯于
6. fall in love with... 爱上……

7. in particular 尤其, 特别

8. be aware of 意识到

9. set off 出发, 动身

(二) 阅读词汇

1. gallery *n.* 美术馆, 画廊

2. kangaroo *n.* 袋鼠

3. destination *n.* 目的地, 终点

4. over time 久而久之; 随着时间的推移

5. make a comment about 对……做出评论

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	Introduction	Until a few years ago I was a 1. chef , and then I began to travel and discovered 2. blogging and posted pictures on my blog. In less than 18 months, there were over 200,000 people reading my blog! In 2013, I was 3. determined to make my dream come true; I would become Australia's first 4. professional photo blogger. It was a challenging job.
Part 2 (Paras. 2-3)	Western Australia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I first visited Western Australia for work in 2013. I fell 5. in love with northern WA and have been back six times. • It is extremely beautiful and you can experience the 6. indigenous Australia there more than anywhere else.
Part 3 (Paras. 4-5)	Photography	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To work full time in travel, you have to love nature. I try to take every 7. opportunity to get outside and admire the 8. natural world. • I hope I can use my photography to make an impact 9. on people, especially when it 10. comes to environmental issues.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. What does the author mainly do now?
 - A. Protecting the environment in Australia.
 - B. Taking pictures of animals in Australia.
 - C. Sharing online pictures about Australia.
 - D. Doing nothing but travel all over the world.
2. What made the author become a professional photo blogger?
 - A. Taking pictures of people.
 - B. Liking writing blogs.
 - C. Wanting to challenge herself.
 - D. Being rewarded for her pictures.
3. What does the author have to do to photograph the rising sun?
 - A. Be close to nature.
 - B. Get up early in the morning.
 - C. Stay outside all night.
 - D. Climb onto the top of the mountain.
4. How does the author want to influence people?
 - A. By reminding people to love nature.
 - B. By posting pictures with warnings on them.
 - C. By commenting on how people act.
 - D. By giving some negative examples.

答案: 1~4 CDBB

II. 课文语法填空

A few years ago, Lauren Bath was a chef, 1. but then she fell in love with travel and started to post pictures on her blog. In less than 18 months, there were over 200,000 people 2. reading (read) her blog and companies started paying her to take 3. photos (photo) and publish them. She determined 4. to become (become) Australia's first 5. professional (profession) photo blogger, 6. which was a challenging job. She first visited Western Australia for work in 2013 and fell in love with northern WA. Some of her favourite photographs 7. were taken (take) there. It is 8. extremely (extreme) beautiful, and the Kimberley region, in particular, is unique and 9. untouched (touch). She tries to take every opportunity to get outside and admire the natural world. She wants to use her photography to make 10. an impact on people who haven't had any sense of environmental protection.

III. 阅读升华

1. What's special about the Kimberley region?
It is unique and untouched.
2. Do you agree with the saying "Travel broadens the mind"? Give some examples to support your opinion.

略

课后素养评价(二十一)

I. 阅读理解

It's great fun to explore new places, and it may be like an adventure, even when you know you're not the first to have been there. But to be sure not to get lost or waste time going round in circles, the following tips may be helpful.

- Do the map reading if you're being driven somewhere. It'll be easier if you keep the map following the direction you're travelling in. Keep looking ahead so that you can give the driver lots of warnings before having to make a turn or you'll have to move to the back seat.

- Get a group of friends together and go exploring. You'll need a good map, a compass, a raincoat, a phone to call for help in case you get lost, and a bit of spare cash for unexpected and dangerous situations. Tell someone where you're going before you set out and let him/her know what time you expect to be back. The purpose of the activity is not getting lost, or not seeing how fast you can go, so always stick together, waiting for slower friends to catch up.

- See if your school or a club organises orienteering (定向越野比赛) activities, in which

you need a map and a compass to find your way. This can be done as a sport, with teams trying to find the way from A to B (and B to C, etc.) in the fastest time, or simply as a spare-time activity. It enables you to be familiar with the use of maps and compasses and gain some practical skills. In some way, it's not only good fun, but also a great way to keep healthy.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一些在旅行时避免迷路的方法。

- What should you do sitting beside the driver?
 - Direct the driver when necessary.
 - Look ahead to see where there's a gas station.
 - Move to the back seat if feeling uncomfortable.
 - Keep looking at the map to find another place to go to.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Keep looking ahead so that you can give the driver lots of warnings before having to make a turn or you'll have to move to the back seat.”可知,当你坐在司机旁边的时候,你可以在必要的时候提前给司机警示,指导司机。故选 A。
- Why do you need to wait for the slower friends in the exploration?
 - To show them how fast you can go.
 - To avoid yourself or your friends getting lost.
 - To share the fun with them in exploration.
 - To tell them what's going on with the group members.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“The purpose of the activity is not getting lost... to catch up.”可知,等走得慢的朋友是为了避免有人走失。故选 B。
- What role can orienteering activities play?
 - Make people work fast.
 - Help people stay healthy.
 - Help people organise other activities.
 - Make people get prepared for sports.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段最后一句中的“... it's not only good fun, but also a great way to keep healthy.”可知,定向越野比赛可以让我们保持健康。故选 B。
- What does the text mainly talk about?
 - The fun of exploration.
 - What to bring for exploration.

- The way to use a map in exploration.
 - How to prevent people getting lost in exploration.
- D 主旨大意题。根据全文内容尤其是第一段中的“*But to be sure not to get lost or waste time going round in circles, the following tips may be helpful.*”可知,本文主要介绍了一些在旅行时避免迷路的方法。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Travelling is what makes your life complete. You may often complain that there is too much work and no time to travel. 1 There are hundreds of reasons why you should travel. Here are only four of them;

There is no tomorrow, so take a break now.

Be spontaneous and travel whenever you feel like leaving your daily routine. It is wrong to wait for certain time of the year so that you could spoil yourself.

Your company won't be bankrupt or disappear if you leave it for a week or two.

There are plenty of people who can substitute for you and do your job while you are away. 2 Here the point is to plan a week ahead. If you work hard, you can play hard. Always remember that the quality of your work will improve if you have a good rest and let yourself relax and recharge with energy and positive emotions.

You cannot be a good employee if you are unhappy and tense.

Your family suffers, too. When your mind is free you can perform at 200 percent. 3 You lose balance and harmony if you experience too much stress, perform a lot of demanding routine and constantly take responsibilities. Take care of yourself. Make sure that your well-being does not suffer.

4

We all want to excel in our profession. We want to be in charge even at home. We like to be appreciated by the community. Being such a person requires several important qualities. To gain the required qualities you must have a multidimensional personality. The more new activities you practise, the more chances you can have to become a better leader. 5

- A. Making excuses is much easier than acting.
 B. Finding balance isn't easy, yet it is worth trying.
 C. Have a richer life if you want to be a better leader.
 D. Travelling is also a means of broadening your horizons.
 E. You are useless as a worker if your body does not feel great.
 F. You can do some of it in advance or you can put it on hold.
 G. Be an instructor, inspire others and do what you would like others to do.

答案:1~5 BFECG

【微点写作】写明信片

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 走在乡间的小路上,我们享受着温暖的阳光和美丽的风景。

While walking on the country road, we enjoyed the warm sunshine and a beautiful view.

2. 这是多么壮观的景象呀!

What a magnificent sight it was!

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,理解旅游类话题的内在逻辑,学习并掌握与话题相关的语言;
3. 基于课文内容联系生活实际,运用与话题相关的语言知识发表对旅游景点与旅行的看法。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. The **destination** of someone or something is the place to which they are going or being sent.

目的地

2. The exhibition of Chinese painting will be held at the **gallery** next month.

美术馆,画廊

3. A **kangaroo** is a large Australian animal which moves by jumping on its back legs.

袋鼠

4. It is unwise of parents to **quit** their jobs in order to provide better conditions for their children.

离开(工作岗位)

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
profession <i>n.</i> (需要高等教育和训练的)专业,行业	professional <i>adj.</i> 职业的,专业的 <i>n.</i> 专业人员;职业选手
	professor <i>n.</i> 教授,(大学的)讲师
previous <i>adj.</i> 以前的,先前的	previously <i>adv.</i> 以前,先前

III. 补全短语

1. be aware of 意识到
2. come true 实现
3. make an impact on 对……产生影响
4. make/have a comment/comments about/on 对……发表见解
5. be familiar with 对……熟悉
6. be determined to do sth. 决心做某事
7. be used to sth. 习惯于某事
8. fall in love with 爱上;喜欢上

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: find that...

At that time I discovered blogging and found that I took pretty good pictures.
 就在那时我接触了博客,而且我发现自己拍照不错。

2. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作定语

In less than 18 months, there were over 200,000 people reading my blog!
 在不到 18 个月的时间里,就有 20 多万人看了我的博客!

3. 句型公式: make... do sth.

In 2013, I was determined to make my dream come true: I would become Australia's first professional photo blogger.

在2013年,我决心实现自己的梦想:成为澳大利亚第一位职业摄影博主。

4. 句型公式: when it comes to (doing) sth.

I use my photography to make an impact on people,

especially when it comes to environmental issues.

我通过摄影来影响人们,尤其是涉及环境问题的時候。

5. 句型公式: how 引导感叹句

When I post the picture online, I will make a comment about how bad it is to feed wild crocodiles. 当我把照片发到网上时,会附上评论,告诉人们投喂野生鳄鱼是非常糟糕的行为。

任务型课堂

1. quit v. 离开(工作岗位、学校等), 离任; 停止

(教材原文) Why Lauren Bath **quit** her job as a chef and chose a different profession.

为什么劳伦·巴思辞去了厨师的工作,选择了一份不同的职业。

一感 读句子感悟用法

You must **quit smoking**. Most importantly, you should start taking exercise.

你必须戒烟。最重要的是,你应该开始运动。

He has decided to **quit his job** and go abroad for further study recently.

最近他决定辞去工作出国深造。

What he said **quit** me **of** fear.

他的话使我摆脱了恐惧。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	quit _____ ... 停止做……; 放弃做…… quit one's job 辞掉某人的工作 quit office/school/smoking 离职/退学/戒烟 quit sb. _____ ... 使某人摆脱…… be quit of sth. 摆脱某事
探究结论	doing; of

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① No matter what happens, we shouldn't quit trying (try) to achieve our dreams.

② People now long to be quit of war.

(2) 完成句子

Even if you quit school you would need a place to sleep and food to eat.

即使你退学了,你也需要有睡觉的地方和吃的东西。

2. come true 实现

(教材原文) In 2013, I was determined to make my dream **come true**...

在2013年,我决心实现自己的梦想……

一感 读句子感悟用法

How did all of that **come about**?

这所有的一切是怎么发生的呢?

When this masterpiece **came out**, nobody cared for it.

这部杰作在它问世时无人注意。

When you **come across** something important, write it down.

当你遇到重要的事情时,把它记下来。

The housing problems **came up** at the meeting once again.

住房问题又一次在会上被提了出来。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	come _____ 发生; 产生 come across 偶遇; 无意中发现 come off 脱落; 分开; 结果; 表现 come on (表示鼓励、催促等) 快, 走吧; 开始, 发生; 进步, 进展 come _____ 发表, 出版; 出现, 显露; 结果是 come _____ 走上前来; 被提出; 出现
探究结论	about; out; up

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Where did you come across him?

② Can you tell me how the accident came about?

③ It is said that her new novel will come out next month.

④ The label had come off, so there was no way of knowing what was on the disk.

3. when it comes to (doing) sth.

(教材原文) I use my photography to make an impact on people, especially **when it comes to environmental issues**.

我通过摄影来影响人们,尤其是涉及环境问题的時候。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

When it comes to computers and the Internet, many people think they have brought us a lot of convenience.

当说到电脑和互联网的时候,许多人认为它们给我们带来了许多便利。

When it comes to learning a foreign language, many people wonder if they will be able to memorise enough vocabulary.

当谈到学习一门外语时,许多人想知道他们能否记住足够的词汇。

二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	when it comes to (doing) sth. 意为“一谈到; 就……而论; 当谈及……时”,是一个固定结构, to 是介词, to 后可跟动词-ing形式或 _____。
探究结论	名词

三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Carol is no match for her mother when it comes to cooking.

② When it comes to developing (develop) healthy habits, parents influence their children more than anyone else.

(2) 完成句子

When it comes to art, I almost know nothing.

谈到艺术,我几乎一无所知。

课后素养评价(二十二)

I. 单词拼写

- Ellis Island has become one of America's most popular tourist destinations (目的地).
- Due to poverty, he had to quit (离开) school and went to work at the age of 16.
- We should learn to apply what we learn in class to our future professions (职业).
- His work was exhibited in the best galleries (美术馆) in America, Europe and Asia.
- Later I decided to apply my previous (先前的) experience to learning how to read and write.

II. 短语填空

in particular; fall in love with; be aware of; be familiar with; be used to; come true; make an impact on; make a comment about

- Through the activity, we will be aware of the importance of preserving (保护) traditional Chinese culture.
- I am familiar with Chinese painting, for my father is a Chinese painter.
- I hope I will be an influential designer in the

future and make an impact on the fashion world.

- As a Chinese who is interested in travelling in particular, I would like to introduce my favourite city—Beijing.
- His wish came true, and the museum opened in 1759, six years after he died.
- I immediately fell in love with the English novel when my teacher first introduced it to me.
- He made a comment about the parking problems and many people agreed with him.
- She is used to dealing with all kinds of people in her job.

III. 完成句子

- I am determined to study harder from now on to make my dream come true.
我决心从现在开始更加努力学习,使我的梦想成真。
- At present, there are still many people living in poverty.
目前仍有很多人生活在贫困中。
- I thought so before, but not now.
我以前也这样认为,但现在不这样认为了。

4. You can't imagine how difficult it is to climb to the top of Mount Tai!

你无法想象登上泰山之巅是多么困难!

5. When it comes to what makes a good student, everyone has an opinion.

当提及什么是好学生时,每个人都有自己的观点。

IV. 完形填空

Have you ever travelled around by bike? This spring my older brother and I left the busy city and spent a long weekend 1 in the countryside. Our speed was only around 14 km per hour, but we didn't 2. We hadn't come to break any speed records, after all. All we wanted was some 3 air and a break from schoolwork.

We really 4 ourselves while cycling along traffic-free country paths. There was plenty of sunshine, 5 it was quite cold, especially in the mornings. The good news was that soon we 6 as we rode. Our only problem was when my brakes (刹车) started making a terrible noise. But I didn't care as it gave us an 7 to visit a café while a bike mechanic (机修工) had a look at it.

Every few kilometres there was a 8 where we could talk with local people. One of the women was very 9 and showed us the way when we got lost. On Saturday night we were 10 at 2 am by some young people. They kept singing loudly in the next room, which made us 11 all night. We felt very 12 when we got up the next morning. Soon we set off. We were more cheerful on the way when the sun came out. 13, things like that happened only once. Anyway I still like travelling around by bike—it's 14 and it's fun. If you're looking for a short break that's active and cheap, then cycling is a great 15!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和哥哥在周末骑自行车到乡下游玩的经历。

1. A. painting B. studying
C. teaching D. cycling

D 根据下文的“cycling along traffic-free country paths”可知,“我们”是在乡下骑自行车。故选D。

2. A. regret B. mind
C. fail D. realise

B 根据该空后的“We hadn't come to break any speed records”可知,“我们”的车速只有14千米每

小时,但是“我们”并不介意(mind)。故选B。

3. A. fresh B. thin
C. cool D. dry

A 从城市来到乡下应该是想呼吸一下新鲜的(fresh)空气。故选A。

4. A. hurt B. hated
C. changed D. enjoyed

D 根据下文的“cycling along traffic-free country paths”可知,在没有汽车的乡间小路上,“我们”无忧无虑地骑着自行车,十分享受。enjoy oneself意为“自得其乐”。故选D。

5. A. but B. so
C. or D. unless

A 该空前为转折关系,故选A。

6. A. came back B. gave up
C. warmed up D. calmed down

C 根据上文的“it was quite cold”和“The good news”可知,“我们”骑了一会自行车暖和多了(warm up)。故选C。

7. A. order B. opinion
C. excuse D. explanation

C 根据该空后的“to visit a café while a bike mechanic (机修工) had a look at it”可知,趁着机修工帮“我们”修自行车,“我们”就有理由(excuse)去小餐馆逛一逛了。故选C。

8. A. city B. lake
C. school D. village

D 根据上文的“the countryside”和下文的“we could talk with local people”可知,这里是说每隔几千米就有一个村庄(village)。故选D。

9. A. friendly B. honest
C. stupid D. nervous

A 根据下文的“showed us the way when we got lost”可知,这位妇女非常友好(friendly)。故选A。

10. A. saved B. paid
C. woken D. greeted

C 根据下文的“They kept singing loudly in the next room”可知,“我们”被隔壁的一些年轻人吵醒(woken)了。故选C。

11. A. excited B. sleepless
C. speechless D. frightened

B 他们唱歌的声音让“我们”彻夜未眠(sleepless)。故选B。

12. A. shy B. busy
C. bored D. tired

D 一晚上没有休息好,所以“我们”早上起床后感觉很累(tired)。故选 D。

13. A. Strangely B. Doubtfully
C. Luckily D. Naturally

C 根据该空后的“things like that happened only once”可知,像那样的事情只发生了一次,所以非常幸运(Luckily)。故选 C。

14. A. true B. simple
C. difficult D. dangerous

B 骑自行车游玩简单(simple)又快乐。故选 B。

15. A. goal B. dream
C. result D. choice

D 总览全文可知,“我”认为骑自行车游玩是一

个很好的选择(choice)。故选 D。

【微点写作】写明信片

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 此外,我们还检查了其他设备是否有问题,比如电器。

What's more, we checked if there was something wrong with other equipment such as electrical appliances.

2. 我已决定每时每刻都和他们一起度过。

I have decided to spend every minute with them.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

- 发现和总结现在分词作定语的用法,并在真实语境中进行运用;
- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 学习并运用与旅行相关的词汇和表达;
- 掌握并运用旅行时问路的相关内容和用语。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- She took out a map and indicated the **quickest route** to us. 路线
- A **volcano** is a mountain from which hot melted rock, gas, steam, and ash from inside the earth sometimes burst. 火山
- The song always reminds me of the natural **landscape** of Tibet. 风景
- Payments can be made by cheque or in **cash**. 现金
- Your **budget** is the money that is available to you. 预算
- A large supermarket **chain** was just open. 连锁店
- Many young people, most of whom were well-educated, headed for **remote** villages to realise their dreams. 偏僻的,偏远的
- It is very convenient to pay by **credit** card. 赊购,信贷
- Finally, his dream to **hike** the Appalachian Trail was realised. 在……徒步旅行,远足
- The hotel is set on three floors. There's a bar

and **café** at ground level.

咖啡馆,小餐馆

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
dramatic <i>adj.</i> 激动人心的;给人印象深刻的	dramatically <i>adv.</i> 剧烈地;戏剧地;显著地
	drama <i>n.</i> 戏剧,戏剧艺术
currency <i>n.</i> 货币,通货	current <i>adj.</i> 现在的;流通的
	currently <i>adv.</i> 当前;一般地
flight <i>n.</i> 航班,班机	fly <i>v.</i> 飞行,飞越
engage <i>v.</i> 参与,参加	engaged <i>adj.</i> 忙碌的;已订婚的
	engagement <i>n.</i> 约会;交战;订婚
aboard <i>prep.</i> 在(船、飞机、火车)上	board <i>v.</i> 登(飞机、车、船等);接受乘客

III. 补全短语

1. take a look at 看一看
2. go on a trip 去旅行
3. apply for 申请
4. at the end of 在……末尾
5. by the way 顺便问一下
6. check in 办理登机手续
7. in advance 预先,提前
8. put on 穿上

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: There is no doubt that...
There is no doubt that the Bernina Express is a journey for travellers who want to get back to nature...
毫无疑问,伯尔尼纳快车是为想要回到大自然的旅行者准备的……
2. 句型公式: who 引导定语从句
Are you one of those people who work around the clock?
你是那种夜以继日工作的人吗?

任务型课堂

1. engage v. 参与,参加

(教材原文) Adventure tourism: travellers explore unusual or remote destinations, often **engaging** in risky activities.

冒险旅行:旅行者们探索不寻常的或者是偏远的目的地,通常会参与冒险活动。

一感 读句子感悟用法

My family **has been engaged in** farming for generations.

我家几代都从事农业。

He is a politician who **engages in** various business activities.

他是一位参与各种商业活动的政治家。

They have officially announced their **engagement**.

他们已正式宣布订婚。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)engage in 参加;从事;忙于 engage to sb. 与某人订婚 (2) _____ n. 约会;交战;订婚 (3)engaged <i>adj.</i> 忙碌的;已订婚的 be engaged _____ ... 从事于……;忙于……
探究结论	(2)engagement (3)in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

- ① The activity aims to encourage students to engage in making a difference in society.

② I can't see you on Monday because I have a previous **engagement** (engage).

(2)同义句转换

Although you are busy with your study, you should set aside some time to take part in some outdoor activities.

→ Although you are engaged in your study, you should set aside some time to take part in some outdoor activities.

2. There is no doubt that...

(教材原文) **There is no doubt that** the Bernina Express is a journey for travellers who want to get back to nature...

毫无疑问,伯尔尼纳快车是为想要回到大自然的旅行者准备的……

[句式分析] There is no doubt that... 意为“毫无疑问……”,that 引导同位语从句,解释说明 doubt 的具体内容。

一感 读句子感悟用法

There is no doubt that Jerry is suitable for the job. 毫无疑问,杰里适合这份工作。

There is still some doubt whether the autumn sports meeting will be held in our school but **there is no doubt that** it will be held soon after the National Day holiday.

秋季运动会是否在我们学校举行仍有疑问,但毫无疑问的是国庆节假期后它很快就会举行。

I always doubt whether he would be the best man for the position.

我总是怀疑他是否是那个职位最合适的人选。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1)含有 doubt 的其他常用句型及结构: There is some doubt _____ ... 是否……仍有疑问 I don't/never doubt that... 我不/从不怀疑…… I doubt/I have doubts whether/if... 我怀疑是否…… without doubt 毫无疑问</p> <p>(2)that 引导同位语从句, that 只起连接作用, 无实际意义, 不充当句子成分。同位语从句一般由 that, wh-类连接词引导, 常放在 doubt, fact, news, idea, truth, hope, problem, information, thought 等抽象名词之后, 解释说明该名词的具体内容。</p>
探究结论	(1)whether

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①There is no doubt that every one of us wants to be successful, but we can't always avoid failure.②The exchange student doubts whether/if he can make great progress in Chinese learning.③The manager put forward a suggestion that we should have an assistant.

(2)完成句子

①There is no doubt that staying up is more likely to result in high blood pressure.

毫无疑问,熬夜更有可能导致高血压。

②There is some doubt whether success and wealth can transform one's character.

成功和财富能否改变一个人的性格,这是有疑问的。

语法探究

现在分词作定语

「语法感知」

①... there were over 200,000 people **reading** my blog!②I love to photograph the **rising** sun, ...③... there were over 200,000 people **who read my blog!**④I love to photograph the sun **that is rising**, ...1. 句①②中黑体部分是现在分词作定语,与所修饰的名词之间是主动关系。2. 句③④中黑体部分是定语从句作定语。

名师点拨

现在分词结构表示主动意义,可以替代定语从句,从而使语言更加简洁而正式。另外,单个分词作定语,常置于所修饰的名词前,其作用相当于形容词;分词短语作定语,常置于所修饰的名词后。

「语法精讲」

一、现在分词作定语的位置

现在分词作定语在句中通常有两个位置,如果是单个的现在分词作定语,常放在被修饰词前作前置定语;如果是现在分词短语作定语,常放在被修饰词后作后置定语。

He is an **attacking** player.

他是一名进攻型运动员。

A little child **learning to** walk often falls.

学走路的小孩常常摔跤。

Do you know the number of people **coming to** the party?

你知道来参加聚会的人数吗?

名师点拨

当现在分词作后置定语时,可转化为相应的定语从句。

A young man **writing novels** gave a speech to us yesterday.→A young man **who writes novels** gave a speech to us yesterday.

一位写小说的年轻人昨天来给我们做演讲。

The girl **sitting next to me** is my cousin.→The girl **who is sitting next to me** is my cousin.

坐在我旁边的女孩是我的表妹。

二、现在分词作定语通常从以下三方面考查

1. 说明被修饰词的性质、特征或用途。现在分词和被修饰词之间没有主谓关系,相当于一个介词 for 引导的短语。

They set up an **operating table** (= a table for

operating) in a small temple.

他们将手术台架设在一座小庙里。

He may be in the **reading room** (= a room for reading).

他可能在阅览室里。

2. 与被修饰词之间为主动关系且表示正在进行的动作,可改成相应的定语从句。

There were about 200 children **studying** (= who were studying) in the art school.

大约有两百个孩子在这所艺术学校学习。

3. 有些现在分词已经转化成形容词,常作定语,用来修饰物,表示“令人……”。这类词也可以转换成定语从句。常用的此类词有 exciting, amusing, amazing, astonishing, shocking, puzzling, confusing, disappointing, discouraging, pleasing, striking, boring, tiring, touching, moving, interesting, satisfying, terrifying, frightening 等。

That must have been a **terrifying** experience.

那一定是一段可怕的经历。

The experiment was an **amazing** success.

实验取得了惊人的成功。

There is a page **missing** from this book.

这本书缺了一页。

三、现在分词的被动式

如果现在分词与被修饰词之间是被动关系,就用它的被动式,即 being done。being done 通常表示正在被做,常作后置定语。

The tall building **being built** now is our new school.
正在被建的高楼是我们的新学校。

The question **being discussed** was presented by the headmaster.

正在被讨论的问题是校长提出的。

「语法冲关」

I. 改写短语

- the meeting room → the room for meetings
- a walking stick → a stick for walking
- an embarrassing question → a question which is embarrassing
- a sleeping child → a child who is sleeping
- a listening child → a child who is listening

II. 句型转换

- The young man sitting between John and Mary was the editor of the campus newspaper.
→The young man who/that was sitting between John and Mary was the editor of the campus newspaper.
- The man standing at the school gate is Professor Hua.
→The man who/that is standing at the school gate is Professor Hua.
- The bike which is being repaired belongs to Mr Smith.
→The bike being repaired belongs to Mr Smith.
- The topic being discussed is about environmental problems.
→The topic which is being discussed is about environmental problems.
- I like to watch the leaves which are falling in the sky.
→I like to watch the falling leaves in the sky.

课后素养评价(二十三)

I. 选词填空

aboard; remote; route; hike; chain

- Scientists hope to send astronauts (航天员) to the remote universe one day to have a better knowledge of the universe.
- Our school organises two travel routes to China, both of which are fascinating (极具吸引力的).
- They are going to hike to the top of a mountain.
- The whole food chain is affected by the overuse of chemicals in agriculture.

- After all the passengers went aboard, the ship set sail.

II. 单句语法填空

- As we can see, computers have brought dramatic (drama) changes to the workplace.
- In order to achieve our goals, we need to make a detailed plan in advance.
- There is no doubt that she has the makings of a successful journalist.
- Although she is busy, she remains actively

engaged in regular exercise.

5. The details of today's flights (fly) are displayed on the monitor.
6. When I go camping, I sleep in a sleeping (sleep) bag.
7. People living (live) in the village rarely see subways.
8. There is a door leading (lead) to the garden.
9. Last night, there were millions of people watching (watch) the opening ceremony (仪式).
10. There was a terrible noise following (follow) the burst of light.

III. 阅读理解

Have you ever thought of taking a train and having an adventure? Riding the train can be a real adventure. That is how I feel every time I take Amtrak. I often take a four-hour trip to visit my children. Every time I take this trip, I never know what will happen.

Last week when I was on the train and over an hour into the train ride, there was a man sitting by himself in the back of the train carrying on a mobile phone conversation—in another language. It was loud and disturbed most of the people on the train. I think it was annoying.

Fortunately, I sat next to a wonderful old lady who was taking a two-day trip by train. She said her two daughters were distraught at the thought of her driving for three days to reach their home, although she had no trouble driving. The train ride was the only choice for her. She loved to look out of the window and watch the world go by on the train.

She was fun to talk to and asked me when my children started being parents. That is a very good question. Both of us are old and have children. She asked that same question from time to time.

There are always many people on the train from all walks of life, different countries, and many languages. Riding the train is a great way to increase your knowledge and take in all kinds of cultures. If you get hungry, you can buy food in the food car at any time. If you need to use the restroom, there is always one available.

It surely beats driving the car, which has to stop for food and restrooms. And it is better than taking the bus.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者坐火车旅行的一次经历以及作者对坐火车旅行的看法。

1. What's the purpose of the author's train ride according to the passage?
A. To do business.

- B. To see her children.
- C. To visit places of interest.
- D. To see her old friends.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“I often take a four-hour trip to visit my children.”可知,作者坐火车是去看望自己的孩子。

2. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the underlined word “distraught” in Paragraph 3?
A. Disappointed. B. Satisfied.
C. Worried. D. Pleased.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线单词所在句中的“at the thought of her driving for three days to reach their home”可推知,老太太的两个女儿一想到她要开车三天才能到她们家,就感到非常担心。

3. Which of the following is TRUE about the old lady sitting next to the author?
A. She is too old to drive now.
B. She does not like to take trains.
C. Although she is old, she has a good memory.
D. Her daughters live far away from her home.
D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“was taking a two-day trip by train”和“her driving for three days to reach their home”可知,老太太的两个女儿住得离她家很远。

4. What is the best title for this passage?
A. Train Ride—A Cultural Experience
B. A Painful Experience on the Train
C. The History of Amtrak
D. A Wonderful Lady

A 标题归纳题。文章讲述了作者坐火车旅行的一次经历以及作者对坐火车旅行的看法,作者认为坐火车旅行可以增加知识和了解各种文化,故 A 项作标题最合适。

【微点写作】写明信片

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 你知道空气污染正变得越来越严重,所以我建议你在中国旅行时乘坐公共交通工具,比如公共汽车、火车和地铁。

You know air pollution is becoming worse and worse, so I advise you to tour China by public transport, such as buses, trains and subways.

2. 乘坐公共交通工具具有很多好处。

There are many advantages of using public transport.

3. 首先,我们可以节省大量的能源。反过来,我们可以减少空气污染。

Firstly, we can save lots of energy. In turn, we can reduce air pollution.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 理解课文内容,能简单复述 Eva 一家旅行的经历;
3. 对旅行相关话题有更全面的了解,能够从多方面及不同角度向世界展示中国,传播中国文化。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. mass *n.* 大量,许多
2. pick up (用车)接;搭载;捡起,拾起;偶然学会
3. cheer... up 使……高兴/振作起来
4. fall asleep 入睡,睡着

5. keep in touch 保持联系
6. with the help of 在……的帮助下

(二)阅读词汇

1. continent *n.* 洲,大洲,大陆
2. deer *n.* 鹿
3. soccer *n.* 英式足球
4. vehicle *n.* 交通工具,车辆
5. a sense of direction 方向感

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	Travel plan	My family and I have managed to cross the North American 1. continent , from western to eastern Canada, in two weeks.
Part 2 (Para. 2)	Started from Vancouver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dad did the driving, but he has a poor sense of 2. direction. • We 3. got lost a few times, but managed to cross the Rocky Mountains.
Part 3 (Para. 3)	In Quebec	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • We reached Quebec on the 4. eighth day. • The funniest thing happened on that day—Mum got out to 5. take photos and didn't get on the car, which made her 6. mad. • To 7. cheer her up, we went to a typical Quebec restaurant for lunch.
Part 4 (Para. 4)	In Newfoundland	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • We went on a 8. boat trip. • Mum was so excited that she 9. dropped the phone into the sea. • Another family from Quebec was also on the boat and they are going to send some photos to us. • I'll keep in touch with the family's 10. son.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What is the main idea of the text?
 - Experiences in Canada.
 - Trips across the North American continent.
 - Funny stories happening in Quebec.
 - Learning French in Canada.
- How did the family travel?
 - By train.
 - By bus.
 - By touring car.
 - By boat.
- What did the author think of the views of the Rocky Mountains?
 - Wonderful.
 - Terrible.
 - Imaginable.
 - Boring.
- What happened in Quebec that day?
 - The author's father lost his way.
 - The author overslept.
 - The author's mother was ill.
 - The author's mother was left somewhere.
- Why was the author's mother so excited at the end of their journey?
 - Because she saw a bear.
 - Because she was able to take photos.
 - Because she met a killer whale.

D. Because she watched a group of deer.

答案:1~5 BCADC

II. 课文语法填空

My family and I have managed **1. to cross** (cross) the North American continent. I can't wait to share the stories **2. with** you. We started from Vancouver, **3. where** we picked up a motor home. Dad did the driving but he has **4. a** poor sense of **5. direction** (direct). We got lost a few times. On the **6. eighth** (eight) day, we left the gas station without Mum, **7. which** made her mad. **8. To cheer** (cheer) her up, we went to a typical Quebec restaurant for lunch. On the day of the end of the journey, Mum was **9. so** excited that she dropped Dad's phone into the sea. This time **10. it** was Dad's turn to get mad.

III. 阅读升华

- Why was the author's mum mad on the eighth day?
Because she was left behind when taking photos.
- Have you ever travelled with your family? Share your experience with the class.

略

课后素养评价(二十四)

I. 单词拼写

- The soccer (英式足球) match had to be postponed because of the heavy rain.
- Before the rain, the sky was a mass (团) of clouds.
- There are two long rivers within the continent (大陆).
- Our first vehicle (交通工具) was an old broken-down bicycle.
- A closed season on deer (鹿) hunting was established on Long Island.

II. 短语填空

pick up; cheer up; fall asleep; masses of; keep in touch with; refer to

- When I said some people were stupid, I wasn't

referring to you.

- The page was covered with masses of figures, making me dizzy (头晕目眩的).
- Keeping in touch with our friends is an important part of friendship.
- Though injured seriously, he tried to cheer up, hoping to make his parents less worried.
- He picks up this theme again in later chapters of the book.
- His eyes were shut and he seemed to have fallen asleep.

III. 完成句子

- It is these famous tourist spots that attract a large number of tourists from all over the world every year.

是这些著名的旅游景点每年都吸引着大量来自世界各地的游客。

2. When we arrived, I couldn't wait to see the sea world.

我们到达的时候,我迫不及待地想看海洋世界。

3. He had a poor sense of direction and soon got lost. 他方向感很差,一会儿就迷路了。

4. While (we are) visiting this exhibition, we will not only enjoy the folk art works but also learn a lot.

参观展览的时候,我们不仅可以欣赏民间艺术品,而且能学到很多东西。

5. He was so angry that he couldn't say a word. 他气得一句话也说不出。

6. Last Monday, I was walking in the street when I suddenly saw an old man fall off his bicycle.

上周一,我正在街上散步,这时突然看到一位老人从自行车上摔了下来。

IV. 七选五

If you want to write a travel journal, here are some useful tips for you.

Get into the habit of writing in your travel journal every day. 1 You will regret this later when priceless memories are forgotten. You may promise yourself that you will go back and write about your experiences later, but that almost never happens. 2 It doesn't have to be long, just on a regular basis.

Use your “down time” for your travel journal.

3 You can always write down a few lines in your travel journal when you are on trains, waiting for planes, or waiting in line.

4 In your heading (标题), write down the day, where you are, who you are with, maybe even the weather and what you ate that day. These are the first details people usually forget. Years later when you read your journal, you will know exactly

what you were doing on that day. No matter how much time changes, the memories will come rushing back.

Focus on writing about how you feel. Listing facts and figures is fine but that isn't why you travelled. A long journey is a time for self-reflection. Being in a foreign environment is a special experience. Make a list of places you want to go next. Memories of these feelings die down quickly with time. 5

A. Date your diary in your travel journal.

B. Be sure your travel journal is just like a book.

C. When you are on a busy journey, it is easy to forget to write.

D. Buy a travel journal that can be used for a long time.

E. Take a few minutes every day and put down your memories.

F. Surprisingly, there is a lot of sitting around while travelling.

G. Writing about those experiences while the memories are fresh is necessary.

答案:1~5 CEFAG

【微点写作】写明信片

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 乘坐公共交通工具出行更加便宜。

It's much cheaper to travel by public transport.

2. 他肯定是打开窗户往外看,然后掉到了地上。

He must have opened the window to look out and fallen down to the ground below.

3. 我本应该提醒他们:不管在哪里都要小心,包括小心窗户带来的危险。

I should have reminded them to be careful wherever they were, including dangers of the window.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，理解并掌握与旅行相关的表达，能够联系自身实际对某次旅行的经历进行描述；
3. 通过阅读范文掌握明信片的文体特点和格式，并能根据亲身经历写一张明信片。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. **Soccer** needs only two feet and a ball. 英式足球
2. A **vehicle** is a machine with an engine, such as a bus, car, or truck, that carries people or things from place to place. 交通工具, 车辆
3. A **mass** of something is a large amount of it. 许多

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>continent</u> <i>n.</i> 洲, 大洲, 大陆	continental <i>adj.</i> 大洲的, 大陆的
<u>direction</u> <i>n.</i> 方向; 指导	direct <i>v.</i> 指挥; 指示
<u>manage</u> <i>v.</i> 管理; 经营; 做成	management <i>n.</i> 管理; 管理部门 manager <i>n.</i> 经理
<u>memorable</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得纪念的; 难忘的	memorise <i>v.</i> 记住; 记录; 记下 memory <i>n.</i> 记忆力; 回忆; 记忆

III. 补全短语

1. make it 及时到达; 取得成功
2. pick up (用车)接; 搭载; 捡起, 拾起
3. cheer... up 使……高兴/振作起来
4. keep in touch 保持联系
5. fall asleep 入睡; 睡着

6. can't wait to do sth. 等不及做某事; 迫不及待做某事

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: had done... when...
I'd fallen asleep, when I heard Dad's phone ringing.
我当时正在睡觉, 突然听到爸爸的手机响了。
2. 句型公式: 强调句
It was then that I realised her seat was empty!
直到那时我才意识到她的座位是空的!
3. 句型公式: while 引导时间状语从句
Well, while I was sleeping, Dad stopped for some petrol and Mum also got out to take photos, and you can guess the rest...
原来, 在我睡着的时候, 爸爸停车去加油, 妈妈也下车去拍照了, 你应该能猜到下面发生什么了……
4. 句型公式: be doing... when...
Mum was using Dad's phone to take photos of the colourful little houses along the coast when we saw something amazing—a killer whale!
正当妈妈用爸爸的手机给沿岸五颜六色的小房子拍照时, 我们看到了令人惊喜的一幕——一只虎鲸!
5. 句型公式: so... that...
Mum was so excited that she dropped the phone into the sea.
妈妈太兴奋了, 结果把手机掉进了海里。

任务型课堂

1. mass n. 大量,许多;群众,民众;团,块 adj. 大规模的;群众的

(教材原文) There were forests, mountains with snowy tops and **masses** of ice.

那里有森林,白雪皑皑的群山,以及大片的冰原。

一感 读句子感悟用法

There are **a mass of/masses of** stones in the yard.

院子里有一大堆石头。

The mass of people in that country are from other countries.

那个国家的大部分人来自其他国家。

She says she doesn't like children **in the mass**.

她说总体上讲她不喜欢孩子。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) a mass of / _____ 许多,大量 (of 后面所接的名词为可数名词的复数或不可数名词,并且动词与该名词的数一致) (2) the mass of 大部分 (动词与后面的名词一致) (3) in _____ mass (= as a whole) 大体上,总的来说 (4) the masses 群众,民众 (5) mass campaign 群众运动 mass market 大众市场
探究结论	(1) masses of (3) the

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 写出下列句子中 mass 的含义

① The cold air **masses** are moving from Siberia towards Inner Mongolia. 团,块

② The **masses** are the true creators of history. 群众

③ These precise instruments have already gone into **mass** production. 大规模的

(2) 单句语法填空

① There are (be) masses of dark clouds in the sky.

② The mass of workers (worker) do not want this strike.

2. make it 及时到达;取得成功;达到预定目标;约时间、地点

(教材原文) We **made it**!

我们做到了!

一感 读句子感悟用法

We **made it** to the summit of the mountain.

我们成功地登上了山顶。

He is very quick at **making up** excuses.

他编造借口非常快。

We must work hard now to **make up for** the lost time.

我们现在必须努力工作,以弥补失去的时间。

I couldn't **make out** what he was saying.

我不明白他说的是什么意思。

We will **make full/good use of** our time.

我们将好好利用我们的时间。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	make _____ 组成,构成;编造;化妆;整理;和解 make up _____ 补偿,弥补 make out 辨别;理解;看清 make _____ use of 充分利用 make fun of (= laugh at) 嘲笑 make room for 为……腾出地方 make efforts 做出努力
探究结论	up; for; full/good

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Let's make it six o'clock.

② Kate heard a man's voice, but she couldn't make out what he was saying.

③ You ought not to make fun of him. He is not the one you laugh at but learn from.

④ Could you please make room for the old woman?

(2) 用 make up, make it, make use of, make fun of, make great efforts, make up for 完成下面的语段

Lin Cong ① made use of his tricks to win the match and he ② made it, which made his fans angry. After the match Lin ③ made up an excuse for that but he was still ④ made fun of. Although he ⑤ made great efforts, he lost many of his fans and didn't ⑥ make up for his mistake successfully.

3. had done sth. when...

(教材原文) I'd **fallen asleep**, **when** I heard Dad's phone ringing.

我当时正在睡觉,突然听到爸爸的手机响了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The children **were playing football when** it began to rain.

孩子们正在踢足球,这时天开始下雨了。

I **was about to clean the floor when** my mum asked me to go to bed.

我正要扫地,这时我妈妈让我上床睡觉。

We **had just arrived at the airport when** the plane took off.

我们刚到机场,这时飞机起飞了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	be _____ sth. when... 正在做某事,这时…… be _____ to do sth./on the point of doing sth. when... 正要做某事,这时…… _____ just done sth. when... 刚做完某事,这时……
探究结论	doing; about; had

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① I had just turned on the computer when my parents came back.

我刚刚打开电脑,这时我父母回来了。

② I was about to give up/was on the point of giving up when my father came and encouraged me to keep going.

我正要放弃,这时我的父亲走过来并鼓励我坚持下去。

③ The managers were having a meeting when he rushed into the room.

经理们正在开会,这时他突然冲进了房间。

写作探究

写明信片

一、写作指导

(一)明信片的书写目的

清楚书写明信片的目的在于写出条理清晰的明信片。一般来说,明信片的书写有以下几个目的:

1. 告知自己旅游的状况;
2. 告知别人自己的新住址;
3. 寄送节日祝福;
4. 传达想念;
5. 询问对方近况;
6. 告知一些必要信息。

(二)书写明信片的注意事项

由于明信片并不是非常正式的文字载体,我们书写时可以随意一些,但还是要注意以下几点:

1. 开头和结尾可以按照自己的喜好进行称呼和署名;
2. 正文书写应明确目的,力求言简意赅;
3. 明信片书写空间有限,不要堆积太多信息;
4. 尽量使用短句型;标点符号的使用可以适当随意一些;
5. 对于明信片上的关键信息,可以用大写或者下划线

突出显示。

(三)明信片的格式

通常明信片的背面分两栏,一栏用于书写,一栏用于填写寄送人的姓名和地址。

二、典题示例

假如你是李华,请你用英语给好友 Emma 写一张关于此次旅行的明信片,告知她相关的旅行信息。主要包括:你和家人在这个“十一”国庆假期乘飞机去了海南旅行。你们去了沙滩,在海里游泳,在当地参观景点,还吃了海鲜。那里风景优美,一家人玩得很开心。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:海鲜 seafood; 虾 shrimp; 螃蟹 crab; 鲍鱼 abalone

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	第一人称
要点	1. 概括总体行程, 记叙当天的参观过程 2. 说明之后的计划, 表达感受

四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇

- ① go on a trip 去旅行
- ② by plane 乘飞机
- ③ get off the plane 下飞机
- ④ go to the beach 去海边
- ⑤ it is time for sb. to do sth. 到某人做某事的时候了
- ⑥ more than happy 非常开心

(二) 完成句子

- ① After getting off the plane (下飞机), we went to the beach to see the beautiful sand and swim there.
- ② Afterwards we had lunch at a seafood restaurant (在海鲜馆) near the beach there.
- ③ We ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup (喝了鲍鱼汤).
- ④ We all didn't want to go home because the scenery was so beautiful (如此优美), and there were many other exciting things (其他许多令人兴奋的事情) to try.

(三) 句式升级

- ① 用 where 引导的定语从句连接(二)中的句②③
Afterwards we had lunch at a seafood restaurant near the beach, where we ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup.
- ② 用 so... that... 引导的结果状语从句改写(二)中的句④
The scenery was so beautiful, and there were so many other exciting things to try that we all didn't want to go home.

(四) 连句成篇

Oct. 2
 Hi Emma,
 I went on a trip to Hainan with my family on National Day by plane. After getting off the plane, we went to the beach to see the beautiful sand and

swim there. Afterwards we had lunch at a seafood restaurant near the beach, where we ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup. The scenery was so beautiful, and there were so many other exciting things to try that we all didn't want to go home, but sadly it was time for us to go.

If I have a chance to go there again, I will be more than happy.

Li Hua

五、学以致用

假如你是李华, 你和交换生 John 经常互相交流。这个寒假, 你和妈妈去了哈尔滨。请你用英语给 John 写一张明信片, 告知他相关的旅行信息。主要包括:

1. 哈尔滨冬天很冷, 那里是一个白色的冰雪世界;
2. 最令人兴奋的事情是玩雪和滑冰;
3. 你们玩得很高兴, 将永远记住哈尔滨这个冰雪城市。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dec. 5
 Hi John,
 On this winter holiday, I'm in Harbin with my mother, which is very cold in winter. There is snow and ice everywhere and we are always in a white world. So we have to wear warm clothes. The most exciting thing is playing with snow. Skating is very interesting as well. I will always remember Harbin, for the snow, the ice and all the beautiful things. I hope to stay here another day, but I have to go home because our new term is coming. I love Harbin, and I miss you, too.
 Li Hua

课后素养评价(二十五)

I. 单句语法填空

1. She picked up some French when living in Paris.
2. The girl can't wait to share (share) the good news with her good friends.
3. It is important to cheer up and look on the bright side of life when we get into trouble.
4. Do telephone me as often as you can. I don't want to lose touch with you.
5. Lily was about to study (study) when someone knocked at the door.
6. If you apply yourself to study, you can make it.

II. 完成句子

1. There is no doubt that near-sightedness is a serious problem among the youth of our country. 毫无疑问,近视在我国的年轻人中是一个严重的问题。
2. What was it that prevented him from coming on time?
是什么使得他没按时来?
3. We were packing to leave for a weekend away when my daughter heard cries for help.
我们正收拾行李准备去度个周末,这时我女儿听到了呼救声。
4. I'll keep you company while you're waiting.
你等待时我会陪伴你。

III. 语法填空

Winter in Quebec, Canada is very different from that in England. When I first arrived, I was **1. slightly** (slight) worried about the winter. I couldn't imagine **2. what** it would be like to have 3 metres of snow and what on earth I was going to do when the weather was so bad. However, here, life goes on as usual. Trains and buses continue, and people socialise and even better, **3. a** number of new sports take over.

For me, skiing means downhill skiing, in ski resorts (度假胜地), with ski lifts taking you up the mountain. Before **4. arriving** (arrive), I did not know there were in fact different **5. types** (type) of skiing. Imagine a sunny but cold day, and you have taken a chair lift to the top of a mountain **6. covered** (cover) in snow. An hour seems like a few minutes, as you carve your way down a run to the bottom,

and then do it all again. It is my new favourite sport.

Ice skating on a frozen (结冰的) lake is another **7. exciting** (excite) sport for me. Once I could hardly stand on a pair of ice skates, but now I am able to make laps (圈) of the 3 km route on the lake, **8. which** is frozen during January and February.

Indeed having 3 metres of snow was a bit frightening. School **9. was cancelled** (cancel) once because of a big snowstorm, but I was **10. so** busy enjoying all these cool sports that winter finished too soon!

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的英国朋友 Henry 要来中国旅行,他来信希望你能给他推荐一个有特色的主题公园。请你用英语给他回信,内容包括:

1. 你的建议:上海迪士尼乐园;
2. 你的理由:带你进入魔幻世界;遇见自己最喜欢的卡通人物;体验刺激的海盗船、碰碰车;每日都有精彩娱乐活动及表演;
3. 你的祝愿。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:海盗船 pirate ships;碰碰车 bumper cars

Dear Henry,

I'm happy to receive your letter and know that you're coming to China. _____

Yours,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Henry,

I'm happy to receive your letter and know that you're coming to China.

Personally, I recommend Shanghai Disneyland. It brings you into a magical world where you can enjoy a wonderful experience. You will wander around a fantasy world and meet your favourite Disney cartoon characters. Moreover, Shanghai Disneyland has many exciting rides, from pirate ships to bumper cars. In addition, there are lots of

entertainments and performances every day. You can't miss them.

I hope you'll have fun in China!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Last summer when my family was road-tripping to Montana we arrived in Great Falls late one night. The kids had fallen asleep in the car, so my husband went and checked in the hotel while I stayed with the kids. When he returned with the room keys, we woke up our children and took them out of the car, through the hotel, up the elevators and into our guest room. We kept the room dark, leaving only the entry light on, and quickly put the kids into bed hoping they'd drift back to sleep.

My husband went to put our water in the mini-fridge only to notice some beers. "That's strange," he said and I agreed, but having discovered left-behind drinks in hotel fridges. In the past I didn't think much about it. I figured the housekeepers had forgotten to check it. In the meantime, my husband ran to the store and I went into the bathroom to get ready for bed. As I washed my face I looked down to see cardboard beer containers in the trash. I felt my heart begin to pound. We were in someone else's room!

Now feeling panic, I checked the closet. Nothing. I then went to the dresser drawers. Nothing. My eyes scanned the door room's floor and there it was: A black bag that looked like one of ours. But it wasn't!

I immediately called the front desk and the waitress in charge responded with "Oh! This is not

good!"

By now the kids were wide awake, jumping on the beds as I was trying to put all of our things back into our oversized suitcase. Just while we were packing our things, I heard someone was unlocking the door, which made my heart beat wildly.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

The door opened and in came a young man.

I didn't know how to deal with the matter but luckily the waitress arrived out of breath.

【参考范文】

The door opened and in came a young man. After seeing us packing our things into our suitcase, he was shocked and angry. I tried to explain what had happened. However, he wouldn't listen to me. He talked with me in a loud voice, making my kids frightened. The kids began to cry. Just at that time my husband returned, with some things bought from the store in his hands. Thinking the young man was unfriendly, he started to quarrel with him.

I didn't know how to deal with the matter but luckily the waitress arrived out of breath. Watching the waitress, all of us stopped talking. She explained that her mother became badly ill last night, which contributed to her fault. After explaining the reason to us, the waitress burst into tears. The young man, my husband and I, even my kids, tried to comfort the waitress. We said sorry to each other. The special experience in someone else's room made me realise forgiveness is a kind of virtue.

读后续写技能养成

「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之“身和心”:是指对人的身体、肩膀、胸、背、腰、心脏、肚子等的动作描写,如扭动、躺下、直立、伸腰、弯腰、趴下、倚靠、跳动、肚子疼等。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住“身和心”的动作特点进行描写,也可以使用一

动作描写之“身和心”

些描述心理活动的词汇辅助描写身和心的动作。

「范例体悟」

1. I rested on the bench and leaned back, stretching my legs. I did nothing but watch kids' activities over there. My eyes fell upon a pair of cute children.

2. Her heart beating wildly, she reached out for that letter which was written by her family and friends, saying how great a family member and a friend she was.

找出文中“身和心”的动作描写并写下来。

rested on the bench and leaned back; stretching my legs; Her heart beating wildly; reached out for

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. bend back 向后仰
2. turn back to 转向
3. lie on one's side 侧卧
4. lie on one's back/face/stomach 仰面躺着/趴着
5. shrug one's shoulders 耸耸肩
6. lean against sb.'s shoulder 靠着某人的肩膀
7. lean one's back against 背靠着
8. look (back) over one's shoulder 回头看
9. bend one's back 弯腰/驼背
10. stretch one's back 伸懒腰
11. beat one's breast/chest 捶胸顿足
12. my heart raced 我的心跳加速
13. his heart missed a beat 他的心咯噔一下
14. my heart pumped/pounded/beat hard 我的心怦怦地跳得厉害
15. her body shook/trembled with fear 她浑身因害怕而发抖
16. rock/swing one's body 摇晃着身体

II. 佳句背诵

1. Hearing the news, my heart sank.
听到这个消息,我的心变得沉重。
2. I heard someone unlocking the door, which made my heart beating wildly.
听到有人在开门锁,这让我的心脏狂跳起来。
3. My heart softened/melted when I saw the warm scene.
当我看到这温暖的一幕,我的心融化了。
4. I felt a warm current welling up in my heart and surging through me.
我感到一股暖流涌上心头,在我身上涌动。
5. I had never felt so happy from the bottom of my

heart.

我从未如此打心底里开心过。

6. She bent over and wiped his tears gently with a handkerchief.

她弯下腰,用手帕轻轻擦去他的眼泪。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Her father was lying on his back, trapped under the truck.
她的父亲仰面躺着,被困在卡车下面。
2. When he asked him why he did it, the young man just shrugged his shoulders and said nothing.
当他问他为什么这样做时,年轻人只是耸了耸肩,什么也没说。
3. I was overcome with excitement, my heart racing rapidly and my eyes twinkling.
我被激动的心情冲昏了头脑,心跳加速,双眸闪闪发亮。
4. Blood rushing to his face and heart pounding fiercely, he leapt to his feet and yelled at the top of his voice.
血液涌上他的脸,心脏剧烈地跳动着,他跳了起来,扯着嗓子大叫起来。
5. I bent down and picked up the coins lying on the road.
我弯腰捡起路上的硬币。

II. 用“身和心”的动作描写完成下面的语段

As soon as the event began, everyone rushed to the head of the team, **1. leaving David's small figure behind** (把大卫的瘦小身影落在后面), who **2. swung/rocked his body side to side** (左右摇摆着他的身体). Eventually, he **3. gathered all his strength and struggled to run to** (攒起所有的力气奋力奔向) the finishing line. At that moment, all his classmates and even other schools' students **4. ran to embrace him** (跑去拥抱他) and cheered for him. Seeing what was happening in front of him, he flashed that familiar big toothy smile again. Needless to say, David was filled with so much encouragement and **5. his heart was lit up again** (他的心再次被点亮) by this event.

第五单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解 (共 15 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 37.5 分)

A

No trip to Windsor could possibly be complete without a visit to Windsor Castle, the family home to British kings and queens for over 1,000 years. The size of the Castle is breathtaking. In fact, it is the largest and oldest occupied Castle in the world and it's where Her Majesty the Queen chose to spend most of her private weekends. The marriage of Prince Harry and Ms Meghan Markle took place in Windsor on Saturday, 19 May, 2018. They became the sixteenth royal couple to celebrate their marriage at Windsor Castle since the year 1863. Windsor Castle offers something for everyone with so many areas to explore.

Visit the magnificent State Apartments, furnished with some of the finest works of art from the Royal Collection, including paintings by Rembrandt, Rubens and Canaletto.

Take in the splendor of St George's Chapel, location of the wedding of Prince Harry and Ms Meghan Markle, the burial place of 10 Kings including Henry VIII and Charles I, and one of the finest examples of Gothic architecture in England.

Be amazed at Queen Mary's Dolls' House, the largest, most beautiful and most famous dolls' house in the world, created in the 1920s and filled with thousands of objects made by leading craftsmen, artists and designers of the time.

Imagine being entertained by royalty in the Semi-State Rooms, the spectacular private apartments open to visitors from September to March each year. Richly decorated, they are used by the Queen for hosting her guests.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了一些关于英国著名的旅游景点温莎城堡的信息,旨在吸引更多游客前往参观。

- What do we know about Windsor Castle?
 - The Queen seldom lives in Windsor Castle.
 - Tourists are not allowed to visit the Castle if the Queen is there.

C. Windsor Castle has witnessed many royal weddings.

D. Windsor Castle is the oldest castle in the world.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“‘They became the sixteenth royal couple to celebrate their marriage at Windsor Castle since the year 1863.’”可知,自从1863年以来,温莎城堡见证了16次皇家婚礼。

2. What can we see in Windsor Castle every day?

A. Famous paintings by great artists.

B. Beautiful dolls created in the 19th century.

C. The wedding place of 10 Kings.

D. The place where the Queen entertains her guests.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,在温莎城堡里游客每天可以看到皇家收藏的很多著名艺术家的作品。

3. An architect is most likely to visit _____.

A. State Apartments

B. St George's Chapel

C. Queen Mary's Dolls' House

D. Semi-State Rooms

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“... the burial place of 10 Kings including Henry VIII and Charles I, and one of the finest examples of Gothic architecture in England.”可知,St George's Chapel 是英国最精美的哥特式建筑之一,建筑师对这样的建筑可能最感兴趣。

B

While visiting the North Pole in winter may not be at the top of your list, the ever-changing ICEHOTEL, which opened its doors to visitors in December, may change your mind. Lying 200 km north of the Arctic Circle in Jukkasjärvi, the hotel, which is carved entirely from ice, is rebuilt annually, with each getting increasingly beautiful and impressive.

The 34-year-old tradition began accidentally in 1989, after Jukkasjärvi residents organised an art show in a 5.5-square-metre ice house to try to call tourists' attention to the remote village during the

freezing winter months. The exhibition was a huge success, attracting many day visitors. However, it was not until a group of adventurous souls arrived with sleeping bags, announcing their intention to spend the night inside the house, that the idea of the frozen hotel was born.

The ICEHOTEL has come a long way since its beginnings. It covers an area of over 5,500 square metres. The planning begins months earlier in March when about 5,000 tons of ice are harvested from the river and transferred to cold storage, where they sit till the beginning of winter. Construction begins in earnest in November, when about 100 workers come to the region. By December, the unique frozen accommodation is ready to open for business.

Regardless of whether visitors select the luxury carved suites or the basic ice rooms, the temperature is always set to a bone-chilling -5°C ! That is why guests are advised to lie close inside warm sleeping bags and wear gloves and winter hats all night. Not surprisingly, most end up spending just a single night at this unique hotel before moving on to the conventional and warmer cabins nearby.

In addition to the unique rooms, the hotel also offers guests fun activities like snowshoeing, or dog sledding, and for those brave enough to suffer through the below-freezing temperatures—overnight wilderness camping! The hotel's single restaurant serves food, while the drinks are always chilled to perfection in the world-famous ICEBAR!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。瑞典的冰屋，自1989年对游客开放以来，每年都在不断更新，越来越漂亮。

4. Why did Jukkasjärvi residents organise an art show in 1989?

- A. To attract tourists.
- B. To follow a tradition.
- C. To excite adventurers.
- D. To experience cold.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“... accidentally in 1989, after Jukkasjärvi residents organised an art show in a 5.5-square-metre ice house to try to call tourists' attention to the remote village”可知，其目的是吸引游客。

5. How to deal with tons of ice harvested from the

river in March?

- A. Carve them roughly.
- B. Keep them with cold storage.
- C. Design unique forms.
- D. Construct them slowly.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“when about 5,000 tons of ice are harvested from the river and transferred to cold storage”可知，这些冰要冷藏。

6. Which of the following characteristics is necessary for those going camping all night?

- A. Wealth.
- B. Good health.
- C. Near distance.
- D. Braveness.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“and for those brave enough to suffer through the below-freezing temperatures—overnight wilderness camping”可知，只有勇敢的人才能够体验夜间野外露营。

7. What's the best title for the passage?

- A. ICEHOTEL, a Wise Choice
- B. ICEHOTEL Is in the Arctic Circle
- C. ICEHOTEL Has a Unique Scenery
- D. ICEHOTEL Opens for the 34th Year

D 标题归纳题。根据全文内容可知，本文主要讲述了今年是冰屋对游客开放的第34个年头，并对冰屋的建造目的以及体验项目作了相关的介绍。D选项适合作本文标题。

C

What if we had the power to control time, instead of moving from the past to the present to the future? What if we could jump and travel through time in a machine? What if we could go wherever and whenever we pleased?

The mysterious puzzle of time has kept people debating its nature for hundreds of years. Science fiction writers have turned it into imaginative stories. Some scientists have even attempted to explain it using maths, trying to make the dream of time travel come true.

Albert Einstein said that time and space are one thing called “spacetime”. He said there are three dimensions in space: height, width and depth. A scientist named Hermann Minkowski added time as a fourth dimension.

Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to

theories about the possibility of time travel. The first is relativity. The idea of relativity is that the force of gravity causes space to bend, which causes time to twist. The second idea focuses on special relativity. The idea is that a traveller moving super-fast through flat spacetime will enter the future. Einstein considered time “relative” because it is measured based on where we are on Earth or in space.

Stephen Hawking believes that a time machine will never be built. If it were possible, he thinks we would already know. If a time machine could be built, how come no one from the future has invaded us?

The first science fiction story with this theme is *The Clock That Went Backward* by Edward P. Mitchell, which was published in 1881. Since then, thousands of books, films and television shows have explored the idea of time travel, in which some tools such as phones, watches, photographs and old books take travellers backward and forward.

Will time travel ever happen? Who knows? The most important is to keep your eyes open and have a sense of wonder.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了时光旅行是否能够成为可能,分别引用了科学家阿尔伯特·爱因斯坦和斯蒂芬·霍金对于时空旅行的看法,并介绍了关于时间旅行的不同作品。

8. What is the author's purpose in writing the first paragraph?

- A. To show time and space are connected.
- B. To show people's interest in time travel.
- C. To draw readers' attention to time travel.
- D. To make people believe time travel is possible.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,作者写第一段的目的是吸引读者对时光旅行的注意。故选 C。

9. Which of the following statements could Einstein agree with?

- A. Time travel is possible in the future.
- B. People can't move faster than light.
- C. Time travel is against scientific rules.
- D. Spacetime is not a real thing in theory.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel.”可推知,爱因

斯坦的观点导致了关于时光旅行可能性的理论,说明爱因斯坦会同意 A 选项“时光旅行在未来是可能的”的说法。故选 A。

10. What is the last but one paragraph mainly about?

- A. The first science fiction story.
- B. Different works about time travel.
- C. Edward P. Mitchell, the pioneer.
- D. Some tools used in time travel.

B 段落大意题。根据倒数第二段的内容可知,倒数第二段主要介绍了关于时光旅行的不同作品。故选 B。

11. What is the writer's attitude towards time travel?

- A. Negative.
- B. Approving.
- C. Doubtful.
- D. Hopeful.

D 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者对于时空旅行是充满希望的。故选 D。

D

Travelling by train may seem like a pain when there are faster ways to get around, but unless you've taken a long journey by train, there is no way you can begin to understand how amazing an experience it can be. Trains offer a certain kind of romance (浪漫) which planes and cars never could.

Trains offer you a view like no other. When you fly in a plane, yes, the view is breathtaking for the first part of the flight and the final part, but the flight itself means pretty much clouds or darkness — both of which get really boring and really fast. And by car, the actual act of driving and navigating (导航) means that you don't really get to fully take things in. The train offers a comfy (轻松的) spot that gives you the chance to relax and enjoy the beauty around you. Many have said that they'd never known how beautiful their own country is until having the chance to see it from the train. There is something magical about travelling around the country using one of the oldest known methods of transportation.

If you're inspired by this article enough to want to consider a trip enjoying the train, then my first suggestion would be a trip in and around Europe. You've likely heard of Eurail which is the best way

to get all around Europe, but before we get into that, know that many European countries still use the old fashioned locomotives (火车头) for regional trips. Imagine travelling along the beautiful countryside of Portugal or Austria in a compartment. The quiet setting, the history and the magic are enough to take your breath away. That really is the ultimate in travel.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了与其他快捷的旅行方式相比,乘坐火车似乎是一件令人烦恼的事情,但是乘坐火车也有其他旅行方式所无法比拟的浪漫。

12. What does the author of the passage think of travelling by train?

- A. It is an amazing experience.
B. It is a painful experience.
C. It is uncomfortable.
D. It is slow but comfortable.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“there is no way you can begin to understand how amazing an experience it can be”可知,作者认为乘坐火车是令人惊奇的经历。故选 A。

13. What kind of writing style does the author use in writing the second paragraph?

- A. Description. B. Explanation.
C. Persuasion. D. Comparison.

D 写作手法题。本段开头提到了火车,接着介绍了乘坐飞机和汽车的弊端,最后说明了乘坐火车的优势。由此可知,作者写这一段使用的是比较的方法。故选 D。

14. When do passengers get bored very fast?

- A. When the plane is taking off.
B. When the plane is about to take off.
C. When the plane is flying into clouds.
D. When the plane is landing.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段第二句可知,飞行本身就意味着很多的云朵或黑暗,这两样很快就令人厌倦。因此,当飞机进入云层时乘客会很快感到厌倦。故选 C。

15. What does the underlined phrase “take your breath away” most probably mean?

- A. Make breathing difficult.
B. Make you surprised.
C. Make you satisfied.
D. Make you scared.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线部分前面的“The

quiet setting, the history and the magic”可知,该短语的意思是“让人着迷;让人惊奇(make you surprised)”。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Quite simply, school trips are the journeys which take place outside a student's normal environment. 16 Educational trips are normally done in a museum or a historic place. They could provide a better understanding as the students would be able to make a connection between a place, time, or even people in history and something they've seen on a field trip.

A trip to the zoo could provide a better understanding of animals. Biology is even better when there are proper animals to be named. 17 Teachers and headmasters are advised to give the students prizes and rewards for different accomplishments done on a field trip.

Planetariums (天文馆) could help students remember constellations (星座) better. 18 Planetariums could help them see that the earth is just a small planet in the universe and that there is no reason not to explore. If you are a teacher and you're lucky, you may have taken the next greatest astronaut to the planetarium on a school trip.

19 Also they could help them see that there are so many living things that they depend on and how they can take care of nature. Children are very easily inspired. 20

Therefore, it is necessary for teachers to often take their students to field trips, where they can have fun learning.

- A. Make sure that these trips are interesting.
B. The importance of school trips can't be ignored.
C. A school trip is done mostly for educational purpose.
D. So it's best to instill the good character and education in them.
E. Games like naming animals could provide hours of fun and education.
F. School trips to farms could help students understand the value of nature.
G. They could also help students imagine how far the sun is from the earth.

答案:16~20 CEGFD

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

Four teenage girls. Two tents. No cellphones. A severe thunderstorm. One hundred and thirty hours of nonstop togetherness. This was what Julia Ruelle just 21.

“It was really 22,” said Julia Ruelle of her recent weeklong adventure to the Boundary Waters Canoe Area Wilderness with three childhood friends.

Earlier this year, Julia, having completed a treatment for a brain tumour (肿瘤) in April, won an essay contest and was 23 a five-day camping adventure with up to three friends. Its aim is to get kids away from technology. She struggled to choose the final three—Anna Wander, Madeline Wilson and Julianna Torelli. No 24 are allowed, so getting their approval was kind of 25. Having a satellite phone and promising to check in twice during the week finally won their 26.

The four girls arrived in Ely on June 10 for training. They 27 the next day at 7:00 am, and quickly developed a 28—getting up early every morning, going boating by noon, then having lunch at the campsite, 29 by swinging, reading, talking, and napping.

“I love how you are separated from everything in your life, especially 30,” Anna said. Without her phone, she said, “I’m less 31 about things.” “We got along pretty well,” said Madeline. “We were always talking before bed, about specific things and thoughts 32.” “But we might sometimes have had arguments,” Julianna added. No one was even hungry or homesick, but they were 33 nervous one night as they waited out a thunderstorm.

After the adventure, Julia will continue to take a physical examination every three months to make sure the tumour is gone. “Mental health can be 34 so much in the Boundary Waters. It really helps to 35 and reconnect with yourself,” said Julia.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。Julia Ruelle 刚完成一次脑瘤治疗, 她有幸获得了一次为期五天的野营历险奖励; 她可以带三个朋友, 但是大家都不能带手机。她们每天待在一起, 虽然只有一部卫星电话, 但这次经历让她们增进了对彼此的了解, 也让她们很好

地体验了没有手机的生活, 对身心都是一次很好的放松。

21. A. described B. suffered
C. planned D. experienced

D 根据下文中的“her recent weeklong adventure to the Boundary Waters Canoe Area Wilderness with three childhood friends”可知, 这是 Julia 最近经历的事。

22. A. boring B. terrible
C. perfect D. costly

C 根据最后一段中 Julia 说的话可知, 这次经历很完美。

23. A. awarded B. directed
C. promised D. advised

A 根据上文中的“won an essay contest”可知, Julia 获得的奖励是一次为期五天的野营历险。

24. A. friends B. parents
C. teachers D. guides

B 根据语境和常识可知, 参加历险的是四个青少年, 青少年出去参加活动一般会需要父母的许可或陪伴, 故此处应是父母不得跟随。

25. A. challenging B. educating
C. satisfying D. dominating

A 根据语境可知, 参加历险的是四个青少年, 且父母不得跟随, 所以要想征得父母同意是富有挑战性的。

26. A. confidence B. satisfaction
C. permission D. expectation

C 根据语境和上文中的“getting their approval”可知, 此处指她们最终得到了父母的许可。

27. A. set out B. set in
C. turned out D. turned up

A 根据语境可知, 她们 6 月 10 号抵达 Ely 培训之后, 第二天一早就动身了。set out 意为“出发, 动身”, 符合题意。

28. A. hobby B. project
C. routine D. system

C 根据语境和下文中的“getting up early every morning, going boating by noon, then having lunch at the campsite”可知, 每天早起、划船等是常规的活动, 已经形成了固定行程。

29. A. taught B. followed
C. divided D. instructed

B 根据空前的“having lunch at the campsite”可

知,“swinging, reading, talking, and napping”是午饭之后的活动。

30. A. society B. homework
C. entertainment D. technology
D 根据上文中的“*Its aim is to get kids away from technology.*”可知,本次活动就是一次远离技术设备的野营历险。

31. A. doubtful B. worried
C. curious D. unsatisfied
B 根据语境可知,由于没有携带手机,所以Anna不太担心日常琐事。

32. A. in addition B. in general
C. in need D. in total
B 根据语境可知,总的来说,大家在本次活动中一直在聊具体的事情和想法。

33. A. unbelievably B. supposedly
C. unsuccessfully D. admittedly
D 根据语境可知,大家既没有想家也没有挨饿,但是在等待雷暴过去的时候,大家都承认有些紧张。admittedly意为“诚然,无可否认”。

34. A. damaged B. improved
C. affected D. weakened
B 根据语境可知,在本次历险中,大家的精神状态有很大的改善。

35. A. get away B. get back
C. take up D. take over
A 根据语境和上文中的“*Its aim is to get kids away from technology.*”可知,这次经历让大家远离(技术设备)。get away意为“摆脱,逃离”,符合语境。

IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)

The trip to Canada was so fantastic! I'd like to share with you the impressions this country left

36. on me—“M-A-P-L-E”.

Multicultural. Canada officially 37. became (become) a multicultural society in 1971. Canadians believe they should accept others' cultures, values and beliefs equal to 38. their (they) own.

Abundant (富饶). Canada has an abundance of natural resources, 39. especially (especial) fresh water resources from numerous rivers and lakes.

Pleasant. It enjoys lots of pleasant natural scenery and beautiful forests, in which trees are extremely tall, some 40. measuring (measure) over 90 metres.

Livable. Three Canadian cities—Vancouver, Toronto and Calgary are in the top five livable cities in the world.

Empty. It is such 41. an empty country where most of Canadians live within a few hundred kilometres of the USA border.

All in all, the trip was 42. amazing (amaze). I feel one trip cannot help me picture the whole country, 43. so I hope to take another cultural trip to Canada, with the 44. intention (intend) of learning more about this country. When I 45. am equipped (equip) with much more information about this country, I can become a bridge between two great countries—Canada and China.

V. 写作(共两节,满分40分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

假定你是秦皇岛市的一名中学生李华,请根据以下要点,向准备来你校做交换生的英国同学介绍河北海滨国家森林公园(Hebei Coastal National Forest Park)。

要点如下:

1. 位于秦皇岛市,占地1 600多公顷;
2. 森林茂密,栖息着多种珍稀动物,其中鸟类有380余种,占河北省鸟类总数的90%多;
3. 欢迎前来游览。

注意:1. 词数80左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:公顷 hectare

【参考范文】

Located in Qinhuangdao City, Hebei Coastal National Forest Park is an incredible tourist attraction in China. It is a park best known for its thick forest and abundance of rare animals, especially varieties of birds. Covering an area of more than 1,600 hectares, the park is home to over 380 types of birds, which account for more than 90% of the whole amount of birds in Hebei Province. It appeals to tourists from all over the

world with its breathtaking beauty.

Hebei Coastal National Forest Park is thought to be a must for bird watchers. Taking a walk in such a forest is not just a time for relaxation. You will find your trip here enjoyable and rewarding.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Steve was the most amazing person in all of Minneapolis, and he was my cousin. By the age of 19, Steve was a star baseball player at the University of Minnesota. I wanted to be exactly like him. So when Steve asked me to go with him on a spring fishing trip in northern Minnesota, I was excited!

After planning the trip, we gathered clothes and supplies, and began our great adventure. We reached the Superior National Forest in northern Minnesota by early evening. On our way to the campsite, Steve pointed to a small house far away in one of the mountains, saying that it was the ranger station (护林站) where the forester worked.

Finally, after a long walk, we reached the campsite and set up the camp as the sun was setting. Steve knew all the tricks of an experienced wilderness camper. After we gathered enough wood from the forest, he started the campfire using only stone and steel—no matches. For supper we feasted on freeze-dried beef, wild rice and pea soup. I ate greedily after all that work.

Tired enough, we climbed into our sleeping bags early and talked about our plans for fishing the next day. We were still talking quietly when a sudden north wind picked up, the temperature dropped and it began to snow. Steve found a way to increase the temperature inside the tent. He dragged a log (原木) from the forest to the opposite side of the campfire. Then he wrapped aluminum foil (铝箔) around the log. The heat from the fire reflected off the foil and into the tent. Soon images of lake fish were filling my dreams.

The snow had stopped, but sometime later a

powerful wind must have kicked up the flames of our dying fire. I was abruptly awakened by Steve. Our tent was on fire. Frightened, I ran out of the tent immediately. The tent collapsed (倒塌) with Steve inside. Without any thought of endangering myself, I reached into the burning tent and pulled him to the icy lake. Fortunately, we were not seriously hurt.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Later, as we stood by the burning tent to keep warm, we considered our difficult situation. _____

Suddenly, we heard a noise in the forest. _____

【参考范文】

Later, as we stood by the burning tent to keep warm, we considered our difficult situation. Our campsite was in the deep of the forest, really far away from the highway. We were in the middle of nowhere, wearing only underwear, with our supplies burnt into ashes, including our cellphones. Even Steve was unsure what to do next. The only thing we could do was just sit in the cold air and wonder how to get out of the forest.

Suddenly, we heard a noise in the forest. Anxiously we listened and stared into the darkness. A jeep appeared. A forester had spotted the light from the fire and had come to have a check. We jumped into the warm vehicle and the forester drove us to the ranger station, where we were given clothes and were able to call our parents. Steve and I had many more camping adventures from then on, but it was on this trip that Steve began to treat me more like a friend, rather than a younger cousin. Our friendship continues to this day.

Unit 6

Earth first

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过略读获取目标信息；
3. 理清作者的观点和写作意图，理解课文信息；
4. 基于已有的知识和经验，进行发散思维，对保护地球这一话题进行简单的讨论。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. target *v.* 把……作为目标
2. attitude *n.* (尤指通过行为表现出的对某事的一般)看法, 态度
3. scare *v.* 使(某人)惊恐, 吓唬
4. extinction *n.* 灭绝, 绝种
5. fortunately *adv.* 幸运地

6. due to 由于, 因为

7. in fear 惊恐地, 害怕地

8. be scared/frightened/afraid of 害怕……

9. refer to 提到; 参考; 涉及; 指的是

(二)阅读词汇

1. cut off 切断, 中断
2. have a(n)... effect upon 对……有……影响
3. see... as... 把……看作……
4. the other way round 相反, 正好相反

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	The film <i>Jaws</i> shows a frightening opening scene.	A woman is 1. swimming at night in a dark sea. Suddenly she is pulled underwater. She 2. surfaces , cries in fear, then disappears forever.
Part 2 (Para. 2)	The film <i>Jaws</i> made people more 3. scared/frightened of sharks.	Many people 4. who saw the film started to believe sharks were bad animals. Some even stopped swimming in the sea.
Part 3 (Para. 3)	The number of large sharks fell quickly because of 5. finning .	Sharks are caught and their fins cut off. Then they are thrown back into the sea and finally they die slowly and 6. painfully .
Part 4 (Para. 4)	Peter Benchley saw people as a 7. danger to sharks, rather than the other way round.	Sharks don't 8. target humans and they attack people by mistake.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 5 (Para. 5)	More people want to protect sharks 9. from extinction.	Some people became interested in 10. understanding sharks by watching the film <i>Jaws</i> .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Why did some people stop swimming in the sea?
 - Because swimming was forbidden.
 - Because it's a dangerous behaviour.
 - Because it's harmful to the protection of the environment.
 - Because they were scared of being attacked by sharks.
- Why did the number of large sharks fall quickly after 1975?
 - Because finning killed millions of sharks.
 - Because the water was seriously polluted.
 - Because a lot of ocean creatures disappeared.
 - Because sharks were thrown into other waters.
- What's Peter Benchley's attitude now?
 - The shark is a great danger to human beings.
 - Sharks see people as their food.
 - Sharks often attack people by design.
 - It's urgent and vital to protect sharks.
- What does the text want to tell us?
 - Sharks are dangerous animals for human beings.
 - It's we human beings that put sharks into dangerous situations.
 - Films play an important role in our daily life.
 - People haven't been aware of the importance of protecting sharks.

答案: 1~4 DADB

II. 课文语法填空

Have you ever seen the film *Jaws* **1. whose** opening scene shows a shark attack? It tells the story of a great white shark that **2. attacks** (attack) and kills swimmers. It was a great success, **3. attracting** (attract) huge audiences and winning many awards.

People have always been scared **4. of** sharks, but *Jaws* made things **5. worse** (bad). Some people stopped swimming in the sea and many people regarded them as bad animals that ate humans. During that time, nobody cared if sharks were killed or how many **6. were killed** (kill).

After 1975, the number of large **7. sharks** (shark) fell quickly. This was not only due to fear of sharks, but also finning. Finning is a type of fishing where sharks are caught and **8. their** (they) fins cut off. The sharks are thrown back into the sea where they die slowly and **9. painfully** (pain).

Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks. Today, **10. as** we learn more about sharks, more people want to protect them from extinction.

III. 阅读升华

- Why is the film *Jaws* mentioned in this passage?
Because the film has a great effect on sharks.
- How do you think Peter Benchley felt after diving in 1980?

略

课后素养评价(二十六)

I. 阅读理解

Population data for European mountain birds have been for the first time combined in a recent study, with worrying results: the abundance of mountain-specialist birds has declined by as much as 10% in the 2000s.

Ecological communities in mountain areas include species not found in any other habitats. These species are also very susceptible to climate change, as global warming is reducing their liveable habitats. In principle, species may relocate further up the mountains, but closer to the top their habitat inevitably shrinks.

According to the new article, the abundance of European mountain birds has in fact declined in line with climate change projections.

The recently released study examined the population trends of 44 bird species in the 2000s in the mountain and fell regions of Fennoscandia, Great Britain, the Alps and the Iberian Peninsula. A decline was seen in 14 of the observed species, while eight of them saw significant increase.

“On average, population decline among the species studied was 7% over the 13-year research period, making the situation of mountain birds distinctly worse compared to, for example, European forest birds, whose numbers did not change during the same period,” explains Aleksi Lehikoinen, an Academy of Finland research fellow at the Finnish Museum of Natural History (part of the University of Helsinki), who headed the study.

The situation is the direst for species that only inhabit mountain regions and are unable to live in other European environments. For these species, known as mountain specialists, the numbers dwindled by as much as 10% during the monitoring period.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了生活在欧洲的山鸟的生存状况。这些山鸟对气候变化非常敏感,而气候变暖日趋严重,破坏了它们原本的栖息

地,同时它们又无法在更高的地方生存,所以其数量越来越少。

1. What does the underlined word “direst” mean in the last paragraph?

- A. The most serious.
- B. The most useful.
- C. The most suitable.
- D. The most waterless.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词下文“for species that only inhabit mountain regions and are unable to live in other European environments. For these species, known as mountain specialists, the numbers dwindled by as much as 10% during the monitoring period.”可知,对于那些只生活在山区,无法在其他欧洲环境中生活的物种来说,这种情况是最严重的。故画线词意为“最严重的”。故选 A。

2. What can we get from the passage about European mountain birds?

- A. They are newly found species.
- B. They can be found at any place of the world.
- C. The number of the birds has decreased greatly.
- D. The number of the birds has increased greatly.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段“Population data for European mountain birds have been for the first time combined in a recent study, with worrying results: the abundance of mountain-specialist birds has declined by as much as 10% in the 2000s.”可知,欧洲山鸟的数量大大减少了。故选 C。

3. Why did the liveable habitats of the species reduce?

- A. Air pollution.
- B. Global warming.
- C. Human activities.
- D. Competition with other species.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“‘These species are also very susceptible to climate change, as global warming is reducing their liveable

habitats.”可知,该物种的宜居栖息地减少是因为全球变暖。故选 B。

4. Which one is TRUE according to a recently released study?

- A. All 44 bird species decreased.
- B. Only 8 of the species declined.
- C. 14 of the observed species declined.
- D. There was no change in the number of the bird species.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“A decline was seen in 14 of the observed species, while eight of them saw significant increase.”可知,C选项“观察到的物种中有 14 种数量下降”正确。故选 C。

II. 七选五

It's important to learn how we can protect the environment. Here are the 5R rules for us.

Reduce. If you want to reduce waste, you should use things more wisely. 1. If everyone uses paper carelessly, soon we would not have any trees left. Other things are also being wasted, and people don't know what to do with the waste in big cities. So it is necessary to reduce the amount of waste we produce.

Reuse. You should always think of reusing things before throwing them away. For example, 2. In a family, you may pass on such clothes to younger brothers or sisters.

Recycle. Bottles, cans and paper can easily be recycled. By doing so we can save lots of time and money. For example, 3. The metal can be used to make new Coke cans.

Recover. 4. You have two choices; one is to throw the apples away, the second is to throw the rotten ones and keep the good ones. In this way, you are recovering the eatable parts of food.

Repair. If one of the legs of your table is

broken, you should repair it. If you want to buy something newer and better, it is better for you to sell the old table, or 5.

Learn the rules to protect our environment. Let's try our best to make the earth cleaner and more beautiful.

- A. Trees are planted every year
- B. don't throw it away if you can use it
- C. give it to people who can use it after repairing it
- D. A large number of trees are being cut down to make paper
- E. When you buy a box of apples, there may be a few rotten ones
- F. Coke cans are sent to a factory, where they are smashed flat and melted
- G. give the clothes you do not use or the ones which are too small to the poor

答案:1~5 DGFEC

【微点写作】倡议信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我写信呼吁你们立即采取行动。

I am writing to call on you to take immediate action.

2. 每年的 6 月 5 日是世界环境日,现在是我们采取行动保护环境的时候了。

World Environment Day falls on June 5 every year and it's high time that we took action to protect the environment.

3. 每天,我们制造出大量的废弃物,从塑料瓶到纸张,这不仅会导致环境污染,而且浪费资源。

Every day, we produce plenty of waste, ranging from plastic bottles to paper, which not only leads to environmental pollution, but is also a waste of resources.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 能运用批判性思维分析课文，形成对文章主题思想的理解；
3. 基于课文内容联系生活实际，对保护海洋动物这一话题发表自己的观点。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you **dive**, you go under the surface of the sea or a lake. 潜水
2. If you **target** a particular group of people, you try to appeal to those people or affect them. 把……作为目标
3. Being unemployed produces negative **attitudes** to work. 态度

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
scare <i>v.</i> 使(某人)惊恐, 吓唬	scaring <i>adj.</i> 令人害怕的
	scared <i>adj.</i> 害怕的
extinction <i>n.</i> 灭绝, 绝种	extinct <i>adj.</i> 灭绝的, 绝种的
fortunately <i>adv.</i> 幸运地	fortunate <i>adj.</i> 幸运的
	unfortunately <i>adv.</i> 不幸地
	unfortunate <i>adj.</i> 不幸的, 倒霉的, 运气不好的; 不成功的; 可惜的, 可叹的, 令人遗憾的
	fortune <i>n.</i> 大笔的钱, 巨款; 运气; 机遇; 命运

III. 补全短语

1. in fear 惊恐地, 害怕地
2. cut off 切断, 中断
3. have an effect on/upon 对……有影响
4. due to 由于, 因为

5. refer to 提到; 参考; 涉及; 指的是

6. be scared/frightened/afraid of 害怕……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: doing 作伴随状语

Jaws was a great success, attracting huge audiences and winning many awards.

《大白鲨》获得了巨大的成功, 吸引了大批观众并赢得了许多奖项。

2. 句型公式: be scared of...

People have always been scared of sharks, but *Jaws* made things worse.

人们本就害怕鲨鱼, 而电影《大白鲨》让事情变得更糟。

3. 句型公式: the number of...

After 1975, the number of large sharks around America fell quickly, and soon fell around the world.

1975年以后, 在美国附近的海域里, 大型鲨鱼的数量迅速下降, 这一趋势很快蔓延到全球。

4. 句型公式: rather than

He came to see people as a danger to sharks, rather than the other way round.

他意识到人类才是鲨鱼的威胁, 而鲨鱼并非人类的威胁。

5. 句型公式: 部分否定

Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them.

幸运的是, 并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始有兴趣去了解它们了。

任务型课堂

1. scare v. 使(某人)惊恐,吓唬 n. 惊恐,恐慌

(教材原文) People have always been **scared** of sharks, but *Jaws* made things worse.

人们本就害怕鲨鱼,而电影《大白鲨》让事情变得更糟。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Some parents try to **scare** their children **into behaving** well.

一些父母试图用吓唬孩子的方法使他们守规矩。

He said that you need to do better in pest control, or you'll **scare** customers **away/off**.

他说你需要在害虫防治方面做得更好,否则你会把顾客都吓跑的。

Lucy **is scared of** sleeping alone at night and **scared to** tell it to her friend Kate because she **is scared that** she will laugh at her.

露西害怕晚上一个人睡觉,并且不敢把这件事告诉她的朋友凯特,因为她害怕凯特会嘲笑她。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)scare sb. into _____ sth. 威胁/恐吓某人做某事 scare... away/off 把……吓跑
	(2)scared <i>adj.</i> 害怕的,恐惧的;担心的 be scared _____ (doing) sth. 害怕(做)某事 be scared to do sth. 不敢做某事 be scared (that)... 恐惧……,害怕……
	(3)scary <i>adj.</i> 可怕的,恐怖的
探究结论	(1)doing (2)of

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- To be honest, I am really scared of mice.
- Seeing the angry mother, the boy was scared to tell (tell) the truth.
- The gunshot (枪炮声) scared the birds away/off in the tree.
- Her brother always scared her into doing (do) things for him when she was a child.

2. fortunately *adv.* 幸运地

(教材原文) **Fortunately**, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them.

幸运的是,并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始有兴趣去了解它们了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Nowadays many young people dream of **making a fortune** on their own.

现在许多年轻人梦想靠自己的力量获得财富。

Compared with many women, she was indeed very **fortunate**.

和许多女性相比,她的确算是很幸运的了。

Unfortunately, his father died, leaving the family even worse off.

不幸的是,他的父亲去世了,使得整个家庭状况更糟了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)fortune <i>n.</i> 巨款;运气 have good/bad fortune 运气好/不好 make _____ fortune 发财
	try one's fortune 碰运气 tell one's fortune 给人算命 (2)_____ <i>adj.</i> 幸运的 be fortunate to do sth. 做某事是幸运的 (3)_____ <i>adv.</i> 不幸地
探究结论	(1)a (2)fortunate (3)unfortunately

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- The young man is determined never to come back before he can make a big fortune.
- Fortunately (fortune), after a brief stay in hospital, Ben was well enough to be allowed to go home.
- I am fortunate to get (get) the chance to give a speech on behalf of our school.

3. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅

(教材原文) What environmental problem does each cartoon **refer to**?

每幅漫画都提到了什么样的环境问题?

一感 读句子感悟用法

Lying **is** usually **referred to as** a bad habit.
说谎通常被认为是一种坏习惯。

I am writing **with/in reference to** your job application.

我正在写信回复你关于工作申请一事。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)refer v. 参考;查阅;涉及;提到 refer _____ ... as... 把……称为…… refer sth. to sb. 把某物提交给某人 (2)_____ n. 参考;涉及 _____ reference to 关于 for reference 以供参考
探究结论	(1)to (2)reference; in/with

名师点拨

refer to/look up 都可以用来表示“查阅;参考”之意,但其宾语有所不同:refer to + a book/dictionary;look up sth. in a book/dictionary.

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)写出下列句子中 refer to 的含义

- If you don't know the exact meaning of the word, you may **refer to** the dictionary. 查阅
- Your notes are excellent materials to **refer to** when you are studying for a test. 参考
- We have reached an agreement that we will not **refer to** the matter again. 提及
- I was not **referring to** her when I said so. 指的是

(2)单句语法填空

- Faced with difficulties, I usually choose to refer to relevant (相关的) learning materials or web pages.
- You'd better write down the phone number of that restaurant for future reference (refer).
- The people we refer to as "Net Worms" are addicted to the Internet.

课后素养评价(二十七)

I. 单词拼写

- We want people to realise that sharks (鲨鱼) are amazing animals that need our protection.
- The loud noise he made scared (使惊恐) me so much that my mind went blank.
- I like her, not because of her successful career, but because of her attitude (态度) towards life.
- The goal of building nature reserves is to prevent species from extinction (灭绝).
- Fortunately (幸运的是), I have many friendly classmates and they are also my best friends.
- The advertisement was designed to target (把……作为目标) a mass audience.
- The main purpose of his holiday to Greece was to go diving (潜水).

II. 短语填空

due to; have an effect on; be scared of; cut off;
see... as...; refer to; in fear; rather than

- What attracted him is her personality rather than

her beauty.

- Even though I am scared of talking with strangers, I will sign up for the charity party.
- It is reported that landslides (滑坡) have cut off many villages in remote areas.
- Obviously, some animals are dying out due to some human activities.
- The statistic figures in the report are not accurate. You should not refer to them.
- A change in diet today could take several months to have an effect on your hair.
- Many students now see university as a stepping stone to a good job.
- Seeing the snake winding on the path, the girl ran away in fear.

III. 完成句子

- Absorbed in painting, John didn't notice evening coming on.
沉浸于绘画中,约翰没有注意到黄昏来临。

2. Hearing the news, they all jumped with joy.
听到这个消息,他们都高兴得跳了起来。
3. For lack of human protection, the number of Yangtze finless porpoises is becoming smaller and smaller.
由于缺乏人类保护,长江江豚的数量变得越来越少。
4. Cycling can not only build up our bodies but also reduce air pollution.
骑自行车不仅可以强身健体而且还可以减少空气污染。
5. Not everyone has been aware of the serious consequence of global warming.
并非所有人都意识到全球变暖的严重后果。

IV. 完形填空

She looked up at me sadly, her pain being unbearably obvious. I 1 her as she swam silently around the small pool. The top left corner of her yellow shell was 2, and her flippers (鳍状肢) were filled with cuts and scars.

These 3 creatures looked as though they were war heroes wounded in battle, but they were just a group of innocent sea turtles injured by 4 humans.

Earlier that day, our students learned those endangered sea turtles were being 5 all the time 6 water pollution, litter, and careless boaters and fishermen. We were taught how to 7 the deaths and injuries of this species and conserve our ocean life and environment.

I had been conscious of the damage our environment was suffering 8 I had never truly been given the opportunity to 9 the devastating (毁灭性的) effects of environmental destruction until I observed that 10. Seeing a picture of these animals, we cannot truly sense the 11 on their faces. Now that I have witnessed the 12 caused by the pollution and people's carelessness, I try to encourage my friends to 13 their eating habits, which can 14 our environment. We need to start saving our environment now 15 it's too late.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者从一只受伤的小海龟说起,鼓励同伴们改变饮食习惯,保护环境。

1. A. recognised B. introduced
C. watched D. satisfied
C 根据语境可知,“我”看着她静静地在小池塘里游着。watch 意为“观察;观看”,符合题意。
2. A. strange B. missing
C. shining D. complex
B 根据下文可知,这是只受伤的海龟。此处应该是指左上部的黄色外壳不见(missing)了。
3. A. troublesome B. rare
C. ugly D. unfortunate
D 根据上文她左上角的黄色外壳不见了,她的鳍状肢布满了刀伤和伤疤可知,它们是不幸的(unfortunate)。
4. A. skilful B. stubborn
C. intelligent D. careless
D 根据第三段中的“careless boaters and fishermen”可知,这是一群无辜的海龟,被粗心的(careless)人类所伤害。
5. A. studied B. discovered
C. killed D. displayed
C 这些濒临灭绝的海龟因为水污染、(乱丢)垃圾、粗心大意的渔船和渔民而死去(killed)。
6. A. because of B. in case of
C. in spite of D. apart from
A 参见上题解析。故选 because of。
7. A. report B. lessen
C. escape D. prove
B 根据常识可知,“我们”学会了如何减少这个物种的伤亡。lessen 为动词,意为“减少”。
8. A. so B. but
C. or D. and
B “我”已意识到“我们”的环境不断遭受破坏,但(but)“我”从来没能真正看到(see)环境破坏带来的毁灭性影响,直到看到那只海龟。
9. A. see B. predict
C. prevent D. experience
A 参见上题解析。
10. A. boater B. fisherman
C. visitor D. turtle
D 根据第二段中的“sea turtles”可知选 D。
11. A. pain B. dirt
C. mask D. sign

A 看这些动物的照片无法使“我们”真正地感觉到它们遭受的痛苦(pain)。

12. A. worry B. harm
C. anger D. shame

B 既然“我”已经目睹了由污染和人类的疏忽造成的伤害(harm)。

13. A. mention B. form
C. change D. check

C “我”试图鼓励“我”的朋友们改变(change)他们的饮食习惯。

14. A. describe B. witness
C. investigate D. benefit

D 这样做会使我们的环境受益。benefit 意为“对……有好处”，符合题意。

15. A. unless B. before
C. while D. though

B 在事情无法挽回之前(before)，“我们”要开始拯救环境了。

【微点写作】倡议信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 以下是对我们所有人的一些建议。

The following are a few suggestions for us all.

2. 每个人都有责任通过尽我们所能使我们的星球变得更干净、更美好。

Everyone is responsible for making our planet cleaner and better by doing what we can.

3. 微小的行动可以对环境产生巨大影响,所以我呼吁你们所有人加入这些活动,让世界变得更好。

Small actions can make a great difference to the environment, so I appeal to all of you to join in these activities to make the world a better place.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 识别现在分词和过去分词作补足语的用法,理解其补充说明宾语的作用,在此基础上能够初步运用该知识;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 能运用相关词汇和语法结构讨论全球变暖问题,并提出可行的解决方案;
4. 能运用话题词汇谈论空气污染问题,并能够根据需要有礼貌地打断别人。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. As is known to all, smoking can seriously **damage** your health. 损害
2. People were concerned that wildlife could be **affected** by the pesticides (杀虫剂). 影响
3. This is a two-year course taught by means of **lectures** and seminars (研讨会). 讲座,讲课
4. The **staff** of an organisation are the people who work for it. 员工
5. The goal is to reduce the amount of pollution **released** into the atmosphere. 释放

6. More than 70 people were killed in the **floods**. 洪水,水灾
7. Due to the earthquake, the water **supply** is unsafe, making people's life more difficult. 供应(系统)
8. The soil is cracking up (龟裂) because of the **drought**. 干旱,旱灾
9. If not treated, the illness can become **severe**. 很严重的
10. A **brochure** is a magazine or thin book with pictures that gives you information about a product or service. 小册子

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>devote</u> <i>v.</i> 致力, 献身, 倾注	<u>devoted</u> <i>adj.</i> 忠实的; 深爱的
	<u>devotion</u> <i>n.</i> 深爱, 热爱; 奉献
<u>cruelty</u> <i>n.</i> 残忍, 残酷, 残暴	<u>cruel</u> <i>adj.</i> 残酷的, 残暴的
<u>presentation</u> <i>n.</i> 报告, (观点的) 陈述, 说明	<u>present</u> <i>v.</i> 呈现; 授予; 提出; 提交
<u>establish</u> <i>v.</i> 建立, 设立	<u>established</u> <i>adj.</i> 已确立的; 确定的
	<u>establishment</u> <i>n.</i> 建立; 确立
<u>adopt</u> <i>v.</i> 采取(某种方法); 采纳, 收养, 领养	<u>adopted</u> <i>adj.</i> 收养的, 领养的
	<u>adoption</u> <i>n.</i> 采用, 采纳; 收养, 领养
<u>reduce</u> <i>v.</i> 减少, 降低	<u>reduction</u> <i>n.</i> 减少, 降低
<u>infection</u> <i>n.</i> 感染, 传染病	<u>infect</u> <i>v.</i> 传染, 使感染
	<u>infected</u> <i>adj.</i> 受感染的
<u>permission</u> <i>n.</i> 允许, 许可	<u>permit</u> <i>v.</i> 允许, 许可 <i>n.</i> 许可证, 特许证(尤指限期的)

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>reserve</u> <i>n.</i> (野生生物) 保护区 <i>v.</i> 预订; 保留	<u>reservation</u> <i>n.</i> (美)(野生动物) 保护区; 预订; 保留(意见)

III. 补全短语

1. be devoted to 致力于……
2. have a(n)... impact on/upon 对……有……的影响
3. keep... from ... 阻止……遭到……
4. get sb. involved in ... 使某人参与……
5. replace... with ... 用……取代……
6. aim at 旨在; 瞄准
7. instead of 代替, 而不是

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作后置定语

We've also seen droughts and floods caused by these changes, which affect the water supply downstream.

我们也看到这些变化引发了干旱和水灾, 影响了下游的供水。

2. 句型公式: include doing sth.

This includes keeping the original environment from being touched, as well as adopting new, sustainable ways of feeding farm animals.

这包括阻止原始环境遭到破坏, 以及采用新的、可持续的方式喂养农场动物。

任务型课堂

I. devote *v.* 致力, 献身, 倾注

(教材原文) Now, she is a model and performance artist **devoted** to ocean conservation.

现在, 她是一名模特和行为艺术家, 致力于海洋保护。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He is determined to **devote his life to** science.

他决心把毕生精力贡献给科学事业。

I want to be a teacher very much and **devote myself to** teaching.

我很想当一名老师, 一生致力于教学工作。

He **devoted his energies to** writing films.

他致力于电影剧本的创作。

Only when we realise the importance of helping each other can we **be devoted to** building a harmonious society.

只有当我们意识到互相帮助的重要性时, 我们才能致力于建设一个和谐的社会。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) devote one's life/time/energies to (_____) sth. 把某人的一生/时间/精力用在/献给(做)某事上 devote oneself _____ 致力于, 献身于; 专心于 (2) devoted <i>adj.</i> 忠实的; 深爱的 be devoted to (doing) sth. 献身于/专心致志于(做)某事 (3) devotion <i>n.</i> 深爱, 热爱; 奉献
探究结论	(1) doing; to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① These doctors are determined to devote their energies to finding (find) a new cure for the lung cancer.

② Devoted (devote) to his research, he almost forgot everything about himself.

③ My mother, a high school teacher, has won a number of teaching awards for her devotion (devote) to her work.

(2) 一句多译

他致力于野生动物的保护。

① He devotes himself to the protection of wild animals. (devote)

② He is devoted to the protection of wild animals. (devoted)

2. supply n. (煤气、电力、自来水等) 供应(系统); 供应量; 补给 **v.** 供给, 供应

(教材原文) We've also seen droughts and floods caused by these changes, which affect the water **supply** downstream.

我们也看到这些变化引发了干旱和水灾, 影响了下游的供水。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The world's transport systems would fall apart without **a supply of** electricity.

如果不供电, 全世界的交通系统将会瘫痪。

We can **supply** you **with** whatever you need.

我们可以提供任何你需要的东西。

We can **supply** the best quality products **for** you at the best price.

我们可以以最优惠的价格供应给您质量最佳的产品。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) water/food/blood supply 水/食物/血液供应 power supply 电源 a supply of 供应…… (2) supply sth. _____ sb. (= supply sb. with sth.) 给某人提供某物
探究结论	(2) for

【易混辨析】provide/supply/offer

易混词	含义及区别
provide	v. 提供(物品或信息) provide sb. with sth./provide sth. for sb. 给某人提供某物
supply	v. (定期、大量地)供应、提供 supply sb. with sth./supply sth. for sb. 给某人提供某物
offer	v. 主动提供(物品或帮助) offer sb. sth./offer sth. to sb. 给某人提供某物; offer to do sth. 愿意做某事

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① What will happen when food and petrol supplies (supply) run low?

② You need to supply her with the necessary information to get the job done.

③ The villagers provide a regular supply of food for soldiers.

(2) 用 provide/supply/offer 的正确形式填空

① The books in the largest library of the city could provide all the information we need for us.

② We must offer food and clothes to those who have suffered from the heavy floods.

③ Being offered the opportunity to speak at the graduation ceremony made me overjoyed.

④ Thank you for your offer to help us.

⑤ They will buy a large backpack to carry their supplies.

3. reduce v. 减少, 降低; 缩小; 浓缩

(教材原文) **Reduce** waste by choosing reusable products—get a reusable water bottle, for example.

通过选择可重复使用的产品以减少废弃物——比如, 购买一个可重复使用的水瓶。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The number of students in one class will **be reduced to** 40.

一个班的学生数量将被减少到 40 人。

The workforce has **been reduced by** half.

职工人数已经减少了一半。

Shortly after suffering from a massive earthquake and **being reduced to ruins**, the city took on a new look.

在遭受了大地震并沦为废墟后不久,这座城市呈现出新的面貌。

We can **make a reduction** if you buy in bulk.

如果你批量购买,我们可以降低价格。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)reduce (...) _____ ... 把……减少到…… reduce(...) _____ ... 把……减少了…… reduce sb. to doing sth. 使某人沦落到做某事的地步;迫使某人做某事(to是介词) reduce sth. to ruins 把某物夷为废墟 (2)reduction <i>n.</i> 减少 make a reduction 减少
探究结论	(1)to; by

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

①With great effort, she has reduced her weight by five kilograms in the past 7 days.

②Cleaner fuels have contributed to a reduction (reduce) in air pollution.

③In the old society, he was reduced (reduce) to begging for a living.

④Tests have shown that the waste of water in this school can be reduced by 30 percent by using the new machine.

4. permission *n.* 允许,许可

(教材原文)A polite interruption is usually framed as a request for **permission** to interrupt someone, often starting with *If... , May I... ? or Can I... ?* 礼貌的打断通常被理解为请求允许打断某人,通常以 *If... , May I... ? or Can I... ?* 开始。

一感 读句子感悟用法

You must **ask for permission** before taking any photos inside the hall.

必须申请批准方可在大厅内拍照。

Did your boss **give you permission to do it**?

你的老板允许你这么做吗?

He entered the room **without permission**.

他未经许可就进入了房间。

The rules of the club do not **permit smoking**.

这个俱乐部规定不准吸烟。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)ask _____ permission 请求许可 give sb. permission to do sth. 允许某人做某事 _____ permission 未经许可 with sb.'s permission 经某人同意 (2)permit <i>v.</i> 许可,允许 <i>n.</i> 许可证;特许证(尤指限期的) permit doing sth. 允许做某事 permit sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事
探究结论	(1)for; without

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①Time permitting (permit), we'll pay you a visit.

②We don't permit using (use) the lab without the teacher's permission (permit).

③Passengers are permitted to carry (carry) only one piece of hand luggage onto the plane.

(2)一句多译

大部分父母允许孩子周末使用手机。

①Most parents permit their children to use mobile phones on weekends. (permit)

②Most parents permit their children's using mobile phones on weekends. (permit)

③Most parents give their children permission to use mobile phones on weekends. (permission)

5. the+比较级(+主谓),the+比较级(+主谓)

(教材原文)**The less** energy you use, **the less** carbon dioxide is released.

你消耗的能量越少,释放的二氧化碳就越少。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The more you speak English, **the better** your English will become.

你说英语越多,你的英语水平就会越高。

The more a person reads, **the wiser** he will become.

一个人书读得越多就会变得越明智。

The more careful you are, **the fewer** mistakes you will make.

你越小心,你犯的错就会越少。

Holiday flight tickets are getting **less and less expensive**.

假期的机票变得越来越便宜了。

Of the two cameras, I would prefer **the smaller one**, which is very easy for me to carry.

这两个照相机里,我更喜欢较小的那个,它便于携带。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)“the + 比较级..., the + 比较级...”意为“越……,就越……”,第一个“the + 比较级”是表示_____的状语从句(在表示将来意义时,从句用一般现在时表示将来);第二个“the + 比较级”是主句。 (2)“比较级 + _____ + 比较级”表示“越来越……”。 (3)“the + 比较级 + of (the) + 名词/代词”,表示“(两者中)较……的”。
探究结论	(1)条件 (2)and

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

①As far as I'm concerned, the more you practise drawing, the better (good) at it you will become.

②The more difficult (difficult) the questions are, the less likely he is able to answer them.

③The more (much) you listen and read, the better you will write and speak.

语法探究

现在分词和过去分词作补足语

「语法感知」

- ①It made people **frightened** of sharks, ...
- ②**Attracted** by mermaids since she was a child, Hannah Fraser created her first tail when she was only nine years old.
- ③We see a woman **swimming** at night in a dark sea.
- ④She can be seen **wearing** mermaid clothing and **diving** up to 50 feet underwater...

- 句①②中黑体部分是过去分词作补足语,与宾语之间是被动关系。
- 句③④中黑体部分是现在分词作补足语,与宾语之间是主动关系。

「语法精讲」

一、现在分词作宾语补足语

现在分词作宾语补足语时,往往表示正在进行的动作或经常存在的状态,与宾语之间构成主动关系。

1. 现在分词常作以下动词(短语)的宾语补足语。

(1)表示感觉和心理状态的感官动词(短语),如

see, hear, feel, smell, find, notice, observe, look at, listen to 等。

I **felt** somebody **standing** behind me.
我感觉有人站在我后面。

I **saw** the little boy **crying** there.
我看到小男孩在那里哭。

(2)表示使动意义的动词,如 have, keep, get, leave 等。

We **kept** the fire **burning** all night long.
我们让火整夜燃烧着。

I won't **have** you **running** about in the room.
我不允许你在房间里跑来跑去。

Be careful, or you'll **have** your hands **hurt**.
小心一些,否则你会弄伤手的。

名师点拨 ■■■■

使役动词后接现在分词作宾语补足语,表示“让……一直做某事”;当 have/keep/leave 接不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语时,表示“让某人做某事”;当 have/get/keep/leave 后接过去分词作宾语补足语时,表示“主语请某人做某事、使完成某事或主语遭遇某事”。

2. 用于 with 复合结构中,其中现在分词与前面的名词或代词之间构成主动关系。

I couldn't do my homework **with the noise going on**.

由于噪声不断,我没法做家庭作业。

With so many people looking at her, she felt nervous.

这么多人看着她,她感到紧张。

名师点拨

在 with 复合结构(with+名词/代词+非谓语动词)中,当非谓语动词与前面的名词或代词表示被动关系时,用过去分词;表示主动关系时,用现在分词;表示目的或将来时,用动词不定式。

二、过去分词作宾语补足语

1. 过去分词作宾语补足语时,往往是说明宾语的状态或性质,宾语和过去分词之间是逻辑上的被动关系。

I saw his eyes **fixed** on me with curiosity.

我看见他的眼睛盯着我,充满了好奇。

We want the work **finished** by Saturday.

我们想要这项工作在周六前完成。

We found the house **deserted**.

我们发现这所房子被废弃了。

With the homework **finished**, Tom went out to play with his friends.

家庭作业完成了,汤姆和他的朋友们出去玩了。

2. 能接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词

(1) 表示感觉或心理状态的动词,如 see, hear, feel, watch, notice, think, consider, find 等;

(2) 表示“致使”或“保持某状态”意义的动词,如 make, get, have, keep, leave 等;

(3) 表示“希望、要求、命令”意义的动词,如 want, wish, like, expect, order 等。

We **saw** the thief **caught** by the police.

我们看见小偷被警察抓住了。

Don't **leave** such an important thing **undone**.

不要让这么重要的事没有人做。

He **had** his hat **blown** away on his way home.

在回家的路上他的帽子被吹掉了。

I **want** the house **whitewashed** before we move in.

我想要房子在我们搬进去之前粉刷完。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

- The manager was satisfied to see many new products developed (develop) after great efforts.
- When we saw the road blocked (block) with snow, we decided to spend the holiday at home.
- Back from his two-year medical service in Africa, Dr Lee was very happy to see his mother taken (take) good care of at home.
- I looked up and noticed a snake winding (wind) its way up the tree to catch its breakfast.
- Jenny hopes that Mr Smith will suggest a good way to have her written English improved (improve) in a short period.
- In order to make the room warm, the old lady had the fire burning (burn) all night.
- With the exam approaching (approach), it is a good idea to review your class notes.
- With the development of technology, we can use computers to keep the traffic running (run) smoothly.
- She looked around and caught a man putting (put) his hand into the pocket of a passenger.
- I'm afraid I can't make myself understood (understand) due to my poor English.

II. 完成句子

- The guests left most of the dishes untouched, because they didn't taste delicious.
大部分的菜客人们动都没动,因为它们不可口。
- Finding her car stolen, she hurried to ask a policeman for help.
发现她的车被偷了,她赶紧找警察帮忙。
- We hurriedly ended our meeting, leaving many problems to be settled.
我们匆匆忙忙地结束了会议,留下了很多问题待解决。
- Unfortunately, she found her ring gone on her way home.
不幸的是,在回家的路上,她发现她的戒指不见了。
- My mother never allows me to play computer games with my homework unfinished.
我妈妈从来不允许我在作业还没完成的时候玩电脑游戏。

课后素养评价(二十八)

I. 选词填空

establish; severe; damage; lecture; affect; adopt;
staff; reduce; devote oneself to; flood; release...
from...

1. It's said that this disease affects millions of people in the world every year.
2. In order to reduce pollution, we human beings have no choice but to choose some clean resources.
3. According to the report, the new technology has been more widely adopted.
4. The musician devoted himself to music and won a great success in his career.
5. We have established trade ties with these regions.
6. It's reported that up to one hundred tons of chemicals a year are released from the factory.
7. Drinking and smoking can damage your health.
8. A severe earthquake that happened last night turned the small village down to ground.
9. The book is an expansion of a series of lectures given last year.
10. The town located in the west of the city was destroyed by the floods after the storm.
11. Ten staff of this company are looking into the matter.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The nation's fuel supplies (supply) will not last forever.
2. Only if a teacher has given permission (permit) is a student allowed to enter the lab.
3. It was the most extreme example of cruelty (cruel) to animals I had ever seen.
4. If the drought (dry) continues there's going to be a famine (饥荒).
5. In the last section of the presentation (present), what problems are we focusing on?
6. The earlier (early) you start, the sooner you'll be back.
7. The murderer was brought in, with his hands tied (tie) behind his back.
8. He was so nervous that he could hear his heart beating (beat) wildly.

9. Don't leave the water running (run) all the time while you brush your teeth.

10. He didn't keep on asking me the time any longer as he had had his watch repaired (repair).

III. 阅读理解

A

Elephants might be the most well-known and well-loved animal in African wildlife. But conservation (保护) of the African elephant faces special difficulties. While the elephant population is half of what it was 40 years ago, some areas of Africa have more elephants than populated areas can support. That's why AWF scientists are studying elephant behaviour, protecting habitats and finding ways for humans to live peacefully with elephants in Africa.

Years ago, overhunting and the ivory trade were the biggest threats to elephants' survival. Luckily, ivory bans (禁令), hunting rules and protected areas protect elephants from these dangers today.

The 21st century brings a different challenge to elephant conservation—land-use. Elephants walk across borders and outside parks and other protected areas. So they often destroy crops, causing conflicts (冲突) between local farmers and these big animals.

Successful conservation strategies (策略) must allow elephants to walk freely in their natural habitats while reducing conflicts between elephants and local people.

AWF researchers are searching for a way to give both elephants and people the space they need. The AWF is collecting information on elephant habitats and behaviour. The information they gather will help to develop the widest possible space for elephants.

The AWF is helping elephants by protecting their habitats. And they also work with local farmers to improve their life in order to encourage them to protect rather than destroy elephants.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了保护非洲象面临的问题以及保护策略。

1. What does the first paragraph of the text mainly tell readers?

- A. African elephants are endangered now.
- B. There remains a lot to do to protect African elephants.
- C. African elephants are popular animals.
- D. The number of African elephants has increased over the years.

B 段落大意题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段主要想告诉读者保护非洲象还有很多事要做。故选 B。

2. What is the biggest difficulty in protecting African elephants now?

- A. They are still being killed.
- B. Their habitats are being destroyed.
- C. They don't have enough food.
- D. They can't live in peace with farmers.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,21世纪保护非洲象面临的新挑战是土地使用,大象经常破坏庄稼,导致当地农民和大象发生冲突。故选 D。

3. Which of the following is not done by the AWF to protect elephants?

- A. Keeping elephants.
- B. Protecting elephants' habitats.
- C. Doing research on elephants.
- D. Helping farmers improve their life.

A 细节理解题。根据最后两段的内容可知,为了保护大象,AWF 的研究者研究大象(搜集有关大象栖息地和行为的信息),保护大象栖息地以及改善农民的生活。他们并没有饲养大象。故选 A。

4. What is the best title for the text?

- A. African Elephant Conservation
- B. Living with African Elephants
- C. African Elephants' Situation
- D. African Elephants Being Endangered

A 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,本文主要介绍了保护非洲象面临的问题以及保护策略。A 项与文章大意相符,最适合作标题。故选 A。

B

The sun rises above the Arctic Ocean (北冰洋). Across the frozen sea, a white bear moves slowly.

The bear stops and sways (摇晃) his head from side to side. There is nothing to see but endless ice and red sky. Then his powerful nose senses what his

eyes cannot; a beluga whale is nearby.

The bear follows the smell and spots a large hole in the ice where a small white whale is swimming. He silently walks towards the hole, then stops, standing still. The whale does not see the bear, whose white fur makes him appear invisible (看不见的) against the ice.

Finally, the whale swims close to where the bear is waiting. With terrifying speed, the bear comes to life and moves towards the whale. In a moment it is over, and the bear eats his first meal in nearly a week.

Polar bears rule the frozen sea, but their ancestors weren't always built for ice and snow. The first Arctic bears were brown bears, a species that includes grizzly bears. They came to the icy north over a hundred thousand years ago.

No one knows for sure why these bears travelled to such a cold place. Scientists think they might have wandered north looking for food. Maybe they became trapped by glaciers and couldn't leave. Whatever the reason, the bears never should have survived.

But they did. They got used to their new environment. Their bodies changed. Their behaviour changed, too. Eventually, the bears developed into an entirely new species: the polar bear. You can see some of the characteristics that polar bears developed to survive.

Sadly, these characteristics may now threaten the polar bear's survival. As sea ice melts due to global warming, polar bears are frequently forced to come ashore (在岸上). They are poor hunters on land, which means they often go a long time between meals. The polar bear, king of the Arctic, is now classified as a threatened species.

Although the future of the polar bear is unknown, the tale of two bears continues. As temperatures rise, grizzly bears have been spotted moving north into the territory (领地) of polar bears. These long-lost cousins, once forced apart by nature, are coming back together again.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。北极熊的祖先为适应环境而不断改变自身特征,而现在这些特征却让北极熊陷入困境。

5. What can be inferred about the white bear mentioned in the first four paragraphs?

- A. It is noisy.
B. It is smelly.
C. It is starving.
D. It has good eyesight.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段最后一句“In a moment it is over, and the bear eats his first meal in nearly a week.”可知,这头白熊很饿。故选 C。

6. What do we know about polar bears' ancestors?

- A. They were a darker-coloured species.
B. They were born to live in ice and snow.
C. They had no trouble getting used to the icy north.
D. They came to the Arctic Ocean about 1,000 years ago.

A 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“Polar bears rule the frozen sea, but their ancestors weren't always built for ice and snow. The first Arctic bears were brown bears, a species that includes grizzly bears.”可知,北极熊的祖先毛皮颜色更深一些。故选 A。

7. Why are polar bears struggling to survive?

- A. They are losing their hunting ground.
B. They are threatened by other animals.
C. They are spending little time on land.
D. They have difficulty reaching the shore.

A 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“As sea ice melts due to global warming, polar bears are frequently forced to come ashore (在岸上).”可知,随着气温上升,北极熊狩猎(所需)的冰面逐渐融化,使得它们的生存面临威胁。故选 A。

8. Which of the following can be the best title for the text?

- A. The Climate Change
B. The Polar Bear's Favourite Meal
C. The Dark Past of the Polar Bear
D. The Mysteries of the Arctic Ocean

C 标题归纳题。文章讲到北极熊的祖先毛皮颜色更深,C项中的 The Dark Past 既表明了北极熊祖先的外表特征,也暗含它们过去误入北极的历史。故选 C。

IV. 完形填空

Ten years ago I was visiting Costa Rica when I

found myself in a bad situation; all my bank cards weren't 1 abroad, and I only had \$5 and a return ticket in two weeks. Back then, there were no cellphones or Internet. It was 2 who came to my rescue to get me home.

I thought the city dangerous and decided to find kind people in the 3. With my remaining coins, I 4 to the bus station and found a countryside that I could 5. Five hours later, I arrived at Santa Rosa. I went knocking door to door, 6 my situation with my very poor Spanish, 7 everyone pointed me to another house.

Finally, I 8 a Chinese restaurant. The owner was extremely 9. She heard my story and felt 10 for me. She said her son had a similar 11. At that time, some other people were very kind to him, and she remembered how 12 that made her feel. She invited me in, gave me food, and called the Red Cross to 13 me. I spent my remaining days in Costa Rica with the head of Red Cross.

I realised that being able to receive kindness is a 14 for other people as well. And kindness 15 more kindness in small ripples (涟漪).

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。十年前,作者在哥斯达黎加旅行时,发现自己的处境很糟糕。他只会基本的西班牙语,身上只剩5美元和一张回程票。他四处求助,直到一位中餐馆的老板帮助了他。然后作者意识到,能够接受善意也是给别人的一份礼物,而善运会像水面泛起的涟漪一样激起更多的善意。

1. A. working B. paying
C. travelling D. increasing

A 根据下文“I only had \$5 and a return ticket in two weeks”可知,作者的银行卡在国外使用不了。故选 A。

2. A. villagers B. tourists
C. visitors D. strangers

D 根据下文可知,是一家餐馆的老板帮助了作者,所以此处应该指的是陌生人。故选 D。

3. A. street B. town
C. countryside D. community

C 根据上文“I thought the city dangerous”和下文“found a countryside”可知,作者认为城市太危险,所以决定到乡下寻找善良人的帮助。故选 C。

4. A. drove B. flew
C. headed D. slid
C 作者带着剩下的硬币去了汽车站,找到了一个他能付得起(车票)的乡村。head to... 意为“前往……”。故选 C。
5. A. buy B. afford
C. rent D. earn
B 根据上文“With my remaining coins”可知,作者只剩下一些硬币,所以只能买付得起的车票。故选 B。
6. A. explaining B. sharing
C. exchanging D. exploring
A 根据下文“with my very poor Spanish”可知,作者用蹩脚的西班牙语解释自己的处境。故选 A。
7. A. or B. but
C. and D. so
B 根据上文“I went knocking door to door”可知,作者挨家挨户地敲门;空后说每个人都给作者指其他房子,前后句为转折关系。故选 B。
8. A. thought of B. heard of
C. arrived at D. aimed at
C 根据上下文可知,此处表示作者来到了一家中餐馆。故选 C。
9. A. rich B. kind
C. busy D. serious
B 根据下文可知,店主非常善良,主动帮助了作者。故选 B。
10. A. proud B. happy
C. excited D. sorry
D 根据上文作者的遭遇可知,此处表示店主听了作者的故事,很是同情作者。feel sorry for sb. 意为“同情某人”。故选 D。
11. A. adventure B. experience
C. failure D. strategy
B 根据下文“At that time, some other people were very kind to him”可知,店主的儿子也有过类似的经历。故选 B。
12. A. warm B. curious
C. cool D. strange
A 别人善待店主的儿子,因此她的心里感到非

常温暖。故选 A。

13. A. choose B. calm
C. comfort D. rescue
D 根据上文“It was 2 who came to my rescue to get me home.”可知,店主打电话给红十字会来营救作者。故选 D。
14. A. gift B. trouble
C. trap D. request
A 根据上文“receive kindness”并结合选项可知,接受的善意对别人来说也是一份礼物。故选 A。
15. A. improves B. challenges
C. encourages D. designs
C 这里指善意会传递,激发起更多的善意。故选 C。

【微点写作】倡议信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 此外,节约用电和用水。最后但同样重要的一点是,在市场购物时尽量使用环保袋。
Furthermore, save electricity as well as water. Last but not least, try to use environment-friendly bags when shopping in the market.
- 我们真诚地呼吁大家采取行动,为使我们的城市变得更好做出贡献。
We earnestly appeal to everyone to take action and contribute to making our city a better place.
- 塑料制品虽然实用,但过度使用和处理不当会对我们的生活造成极大的危害,这导致极大的资源浪费和严重的环境污染。
Useful as plastic products are, overusing and improper treatment do great harm to our lives, which results in a great waste of resources and heavy environmental pollution.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 能借助语篇知识分析本课时语篇类型特点及段落逻辑关系；
3. 通过小组合作和讨论分享，制作碳足迹调查问卷，思考并总结实现低碳生活的有效措施。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. majority *n.* 多数, 大多数(人或物)
2. electricity *n.* 电
3. remove *v.* 移走, 搬走, 去掉
4. amount *n.* 数量, 数额
5. concerned *adj.* 焦急的, 担忧的
6. contribute *v.* 促成, 造成(某事发生)
7. average *adj.* 平均(数)的
8. false *adj.* 不正确的, 错误的

9. mistake... for... 把……误看作……

10. break down 分解

11. take... into account 把……考虑进去

(二) 阅读词汇

1. campaign *n.* (宣传)活动
2. mode *n.* (机器、设备的)运行方式, 状态, 模式
3. urge *v.* 竭力主张, 强烈要求, 敦促
4. plug *n.* (电)插头
5. device *n.* 设备, 仪器, 装置
6. canteen *n.* (工厂、学校等的)食堂, 餐厅
7. leak *v.* (使)漏, (使)渗漏
8. common sense 常识, 共识

「课文速览」

表格填空

Arguments	Conclusions	Solutions
Paper shopping bags are better than plastic ones?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to 1. wild animals. It takes hundreds of years for plastic to 2. break down, but much less time for paper. • Making a paper bag uses four times as much 3. energy as making a plastic bag. 	Both kinds of bags are bad for the environment. Take a 4. reusable bag with you.
When you turn off a device, it stops using power?	Electricity continues to 5. leak from the device in stand-by mode even when it is turned “off”.	Remove the 6. plug from its power supply.
Eating local food is good for the environment?	It is the production of food, not its 7. transport , that uses most of the energy and produces most of the 8. greenhouse gases .	—
It's better to take a shower than a bath?	It depends on how long you spend in the 9. shower and how large your bath is.	The key is to keep your shower time as 10. short as possible.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Which of the following is environmentally friendly?
 - Paper bags.
 - Plastic bags.
 - Reusable bags.
 - Unrecycled bags.
- What can we know from the passage?
 - Paper bags are a great danger to wild animals.
 - Paper bags are better choices than plastic bags.
 - Making plastic bags uses much more energy than making paper bags.
 - Making paper bags uses much more water than making plastic bags.
- How can we really save power?
 - By turning off a device.
 - By making the device into stand-by mode.
 - By removing the plug from its power supply.
 - By using a device all the time.
- What's the author's purpose in writing the text?
 - To tell readers the importance of saving energy.
 - To inform readers how to keep the balance of nature.
 - To explain to readers what "the real green" is.
 - To show readers how to choose proper devices.

答案: 1~4 CDCC

II. 课文语法填空

The 1. majority (major) of us take steps to save

energy and reduce waste and pollution. But recently, some "green truths" 2. have been shown (show) to be only half true, or even 3. completely (complete) false.

Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to wild animals, 4. which mistake them for food. So people think paper bags are the better environmental choice. 5. However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy 6. as making a plastic one. In fact, both kinds of bags are bad 7. for the environment. So, take a reusable bag with you when you go shopping. You should unplug a device rather than turn it off when 8. leaving (leave) your home. Is eating local food good for the environment? The answer is "No". 9. It is the production of food, not its transport, that uses most of the energy. People often think it's better to take a shower than a bath, but it's not right. It depends on how long you spend in the shower and how large your bath is. 10. Therefore, the key is to keep your shower time as short as possible.

III. 阅读升华

- Why are people advised to take a reusable bag?

Because both plastic bags and paper bags cause environmental problems.
- How "green" are you? Share your "green actions" with the class.

略

课后素养评价(二十九)

I. 单词拼写

- The table has been removed (搬走) from the living room to the kitchen.
- How to use electricity (电) safely has become general knowledge in our village.
- The Smile Project has grown into a widespread campaign (活动) with one simple task: share joy.
- The concerned (担忧的) mother stood at the gate, waiting for her son to come back home.
- His words gave us the false (不正确的) impression that he would lend us money, but he would not.

- Children nowadays spend more time than ever in front of electronic devices (设备).
- To reduce the amount (数量) of rubbish and to protect the environment, more governments are requiring people to recycle materials.
- It's believed that honesty and hard work contribute (促成) to success and happiness.
- The average (平均的) age of the women interviewed was only 21.5.
- I got a note from Moira urging (强烈要求) me to get in touch.

II. 短语填空

take... into account; break down; supply... with...;
the majority of; call on; turn off; depend on;
mistake... for

- The doctor admitted that he mistook the symptom (症状) for the common cold at first.
- The project is aimed at calling on people to take effective (有效的) measures to protect polar bears.
- The majority of students prefer to go cycling to taking a bus.
- Would you mind if I turn off the radio?
- The company supplied our school with a lot of advanced teaching equipment.
- Children depend on their parents for all of their material needs.
- If Tim carries on working like this, he'll break down sooner or later.
- A good speaker usually takes the audience into account when making a speech.

III. 完成句子

- She changed her mind again, which made us all angry.
她又改变了主意,这使我们大家都生气了。
- It's easier to lose friends than to make friends.
失去朋友比交朋友更容易。
- To find out more information about the course, please visit the website.
要了解有关该课程的更多信息,请访问这个网站。
- It's your attitude to learning, not your grades, that worries the teachers.
是你的学习态度,而不是你的成绩让老师担忧。
- The grain output is eight percent higher this year than that of last year.
今年的粮食产量比去年增加了8%。

IV. 七选五

Should We Create More National Parks to Save Endangered Animals?

Don't you find it worrying that more and more species of animals are in real danger of becoming extinct? 1 And I think the best way to do this is for governments to create more national parks.

2 If this environment is destroyed—for example, when farmers clear a forest for new fields, or trees are cut down for making money—many animals are unable to survive, and more species are likely to become extinct.

In addition, national parks protect animals from the danger of being hunted. A major reason why many species are endangered is that the animals are killed by hunters. They hunt animals to make money. 3

On the other hand, some people fight against the creation of national parks because they consider it wrong to interfere (干涉) with nature. They believe that wild animals are happier living in their natural environment. 4 They also point out that a few species are more likely to produce young animals in the wild than in national parks.

All in all, though, these disadvantages are far less important than the benefits of national parks. 5 As a matter of fact, they protect animals from their greatest enemies, that is, human beings.

- To begin with, animals are important to humans.
- Some hunters even hunt animals simply for sports.
- I personally believe that we must save these animals.
- These parks allow animals to live in a safe environment.
- Firstly, national parks protect the animals' natural environment.
- They say though the animals may face danger, they enjoy a free life.
- There is a heated discussion about whether to create more national parks.

答案:1~5 CEBFD

【微点写作】倡议信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 因此,我们迫切需要积极参与废物分类计划。
Therefore, it is urgent for us to take an active part in the waste classification programme.
- 只有共同努力,我们才能为自己创造一个更健康的世界来居住。
Only with joint efforts can we create a healthier world for us to live in.
- 如果你担心瓶装水对地球有不好的影响,我们建议你采取下面的措施。
If you are worried about the bad effects of bottled water on the earth, we would like to suggest that you take the following steps.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 掌握倡议信的写作特点和写法,并能运用所学知识写一封与环保相关的倡议信;
3. 能够运用逻辑思维和批判性思维梳理和评判生活中常见的观点。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **majority** of people interviewed prefer watching TV to listening to the radio.
多数,大多数
2. The **amount** of something is how much there is, or how much you have, need, or get.
数量,数额
3. A **device** is an object that has been invented for a particular purpose.
设备,仪器,装置
4. It's thought a gas **leak** may have caused the explosion.
泄漏
5. The company launched (发起) an advertising **campaign** to improve its image.
(宣传)活动
6. The **average** age of the boys in this class is fifteen.
平均(数)的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>urge</u> <i>v.</i> 竭力主张, 强烈要求, 敦促	<u>urgent</u> <i>adj.</i> 紧急的, 急迫的
	<u>urgency</u> <i>n.</i> 紧急, 迫切; 紧急的事
<u>remove</u> <i>v.</i> 移走, 搬走, 去掉	<u>removal</u> <i>n.</i> 移动; 去除; 搬迁
<u>contribute</u> <i>v.</i> 促成, 造成 (某事发生)	<u>contribution</u> <i>n.</i> 贡献; 捐献; 稿件
<u>majority</u> <i>n.</i> 多数, 大多数 (人或物)	<u>major</u> <i>adj.</i> 主要的
<u>electricity</u> <i>n.</i> 电	<u>electric</u> <i>adj.</i> 用电的; 电动的
<u>concerned</u> <i>adj.</i> 焦急的, 担忧的	<u>concern</u> <i>n. & v.</i> 担心, 担忧
	<u>concerning</u> <i>prep.</i> 就……而言, 关于

III. 补全短语

1. mistake... for ... 把……误看作……
2. break down 分解
3. take... into account 把……考虑进去
4. depend on 取决于; 依靠, 依赖
5. in fact 事实上, 实际上

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: which 引导非限制性定语从句
Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to wild animals, which mistake them for food.
塑料袋会变成垃圾, 被野生动物误食后会对其造成伤害。
2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语
However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water.
然而, 生产纸袋的耗能为生产塑料袋的四倍, 耗水则多达三倍。
3. 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语
To make sure your appliance is in fact off, remove the plug from its power supply.
为了确保电器设备彻底关闭, 请把插头从电源上拔下来。
4. 句型公式: 强调句型
It is the production of food, not its transport, that uses most of the energy and produces most of the greenhouse gases.
消耗最多能源和产生最多温室气体的是食品生产, 而不是运输。
5. 句型公式: it 作形式主语
It's not always better to take a shower than a bath.
淋浴并不总是比泡澡好。

任务型课堂

1. amount *n.* 数量, 数额; 金额 *v.* 总计, 共达; 等于, 相当于

(教材原文) However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the **amount** of water.

然而, 生产纸袋的耗能为生产塑料袋的四倍, 耗水则多达三倍。

一感 读句子感悟用法

A **good amount of** damage was done in a short time.

在短时间内就造成了严重损害。

Large amounts of money were spent on the bridge. 那座桥耗资巨大。

She hasn't actually refused, but it **amounts to** the same thing.

她没有直接说不, 但那等于拒绝了。

At the start of the year, foreigners living in Italy **amounted to** 4.56 million of a total population of 60.6 million, or 7.5 percent.

在该年年初, 居住在意大利的外国人的口数达到了 456 万, 在总人口 6 060 万中占 7.5%。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) an amount of 许多……(通常修饰不可数名词且作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式)</p> <p>a large/small amount of 大/少量的……(通常修饰不可数名词且作主语时, 谓语动词用 _____ 形式)</p> <p>large/small amounts of 大/少量的……(通常修饰不可数名词且作主语时, 谓语动词用 _____ 形式)</p> <p>(2) amount _____ 达到; 等于</p>
探究结论	(1) 单数; 复数 (2) to

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Joe has spent quite an amount of energy on his English.

② A large amount of water is (be) wasted every day.

③ As far as I know, large amounts of money have

been spent (spend) on the construction of the school by now.

④ Keeping what belongs to another person amounts to stealing.

⑤ Small amounts (amount) of caffeine—a cup or two of coffee a day—seem safe for most people.

2. concerned *adj.* 焦急的, 担忧的; 关心的; 有关的

(教材原文) We are **concerned** that...

我们担心……

一感 读句子感悟用法

Now an increasing number of people **are concerned about/for** environmental protection.

现在越来越多的人关注环境保护。

I'm very concerned that we may not finish this on time.

我很担心我们可能无法按时完成此事。

The film **is concerned with** unemployment.

这部影片与失业问题有关。

As far as I'm concerned, we should take road safety seriously in our daily life.

就我而言, 我们应该在日常生活中重视道路安全问题。

He told them not to **concern themselves about** him. 他叫他们不要为他担心。

He loved his wife, and **concerned himself with** her needs and desires.

他爱他的妻子, 关心她的需求和愿望。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) be concerned about/for 担心……</p> <p>be concerned that... 担心……</p> <p>be concerned _____ 与……有关; 涉及 _____ sb. be concerned 就某人而言</p> <p>(2) concern <i>n.</i> [U] 忧虑, 担心 [C] 担心的事</p> <p><i>v.</i> 使忧虑, 使担心</p> <p>show/express concern about/for 对……表示关心/担心</p> <p>concern oneself _____ sb./sth. 关心某人/某事; 担心某人/某事</p> <p>(3) concerning <i>prep.</i> 关于; 有关; 涉及</p>
探究结论	(1) with; as far as (2) about/with

名师点拨

concerned 用作形容词时,意为“关心的;担心的”,作前置定语;表示“相关的,有关的”,作后置定语。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I am writing to see if it is possible for you to provide me with information concerning (concern) the club.

② The meeting was concerned with reforms and everyone present was concerned for/about their own interests.

③ He was concerned (concern) with the murder.

④ There's no need to concern yourself with/about this matter.

(2) 一句多译

现在,人们更加关注他们的居住环境。

① Nowadays people are more concerned about/for the environment where they live. (concerned *adj.*)

② Nowadays people show more concern about/for the environment where they live. (concern *n.*)

3. contribute v. 促成,造成(某事发生);捐献,捐助;投稿

(教材原文) Look at the three items that **contribute** to a carbon footprint.

看看造成碳足迹的三类物品。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Eating too much fat can **contribute to** heart disease as well as high blood pressure.

摄入太多脂肪会引起心脏病和高血压。

He **contributed** a large sum of money **to** the flood victims.

他给遭受水灾的灾民捐了一大笔钱。

He has **made an important contribution to** the company's success.

他为公司的成功做出了重要贡献。

Many people **contributed** money **to** the poor boy, which **contributed to** his returning to school. A writer wrote a story about this and **contributed it to** a press.

许多人给那个可怜的男孩捐款,使得他能重返学校。一名作家据此写了一篇故事,并把它投稿给了一家出版社。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) contribute _____ 促成,导致 contribute... _____ ... 向……捐献;向……投稿 (2) contribution <i>n.</i> 贡献;捐献;稿件 make a contribution/contributions _____ 对……做出贡献;向……捐款 (3) contributor <i>n.</i> [C] 捐款人;撰稿人;起作用的因素
探究结论	(1) to; to (2) to

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Our teacher has contributed a number of articles to the magazine.

② Loneliness is a serious social problem that can contribute to depression.

③ Environmental protection starts with me, and everyone can make a contribution to the cause.

4. break down 分解;发生故障;失败,破裂;(身体)垮掉;打破;情绪失控

(教材原文) It takes hundreds of years for plastic to **break down**, but much less time for paper.

塑料需要数百年才能分解,而纸的降解时间要短得多。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I caught two men trying to **break into** my office. 我恰巧看见两个人企图闯入我的办公室。

We'll **break through** all the difficulties with our own hard work.

我们将自力更生,艰苦奋斗,战胜一切困难。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	break out (坏事) 突然发生;(战争) 爆发 break away (from) 逃脱,挣脱,脱离 break in 闯入;打断谈话;插嘴 break _____ 闯进;打断 break _____ 冲破,突破 break up 打碎;破裂;终止;驱散
探究结论	into; through

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 写出下列句子中 break down 的含义

① In other words, your health will **break down** if you work too hard. (身体) 垮掉

② The two countries are going to meet to **break down** some barriers to trade between them. 打破

③ The peace talks **broke down** with no agreement reached. (谈判) 失败

④ As is known to all, plastic bags are difficult to **break down**. 分解

(2) 用适当的介词或副词填空

① Unfortunately, I'm sorry to tell you that the machine broke down again.

② Some people broke down the door and broke into his house. They broke up the TV and something else.

③ After the storm, the sun broke through the clouds, which was a striking scene.

5. 倍数表达法

(教材原文) However, making a paper bag uses **four times as much** energy **as** making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water. 然而, 生产纸袋的耗能为生产塑料袋的四倍, 耗水则多达三倍。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The cotton output this year is **four times** greater **than** that of 2022.

今年棉花的产量是 2022 年的四倍。

The new road built this month is more than **three times the width of** the old one that was built in 2011.

这个月修建的新路的宽度是 2011 年建成的那条旧路的三倍多。

The output of cars in 1994 was **six times what it was** in 1987.

1994 年的汽车产量是 1987 年的六倍。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	常用的倍数表达法: (1) 倍数 + as + adj./adv. 的 _____ + as + 其他 (2) 倍数 + adj./adv. 的 _____ + than + 其他 (3) 倍数 + the + n. (size/height/weight/length/width/depth...) + of + 其他 (4) 倍数 + what 从句
探究结论	(1) 原级 (2) 比较级

名师点拨

(1) 上述结构中的“倍数”也可用分数、百分数代替。

(2) 表示两倍时, 一般用 twice/double; 三倍及三倍以上用“基数词 + times”。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Peter's jacket looked just the same as Jack's, but it cost twice as much as his.

② The electronic waste stream (流) is increasing three times faster (fast) than traditional garbage as a whole.

③ Our manager presented a report three times the length (long) of mine.

④ The number of students now in this school is four times what it was ten years ago.

(2) 一句多译

正在修建的教学楼是那座教学楼的两倍高。

① The teaching building being built now is twice as high as that one.

② The teaching building being built now is twice higher than that one.

③ The teaching building being built now is twice the height of that one.

写作探究**倡议信****一、写作指导**

倡议信属于应用文的一种, 提倡或呼吁开展某项有意义的活动, 推行某种行之有效的做法。其格式及写作步骤如下:

(一) 格式

通常由标题、称呼、正文、结尾、落款五部分组成。

1. 标题。倡议信的标题一般由文种名单独组成, 即在第一行正中写“Proposal”。也可由倡议内容和文

种名共同组成,如“The Proposal to Protect the Earth”。

2. 称呼。写称呼是为了明确倡议的对象,一般要根据倡议的对象而选用适当的称呼,如:“Dear friends” “Dear schoolmates” “Dear editors” “Dear students”等。
3. 正文。倡议信意在引起他人的响应,这就要求倡议者必须清楚说明倡议背景、原因,申明倡议目的,写明倡议内容,做到让人信服,这样人们才能响应并自觉行动。
4. 结尾。结尾可表明倡议者的决心和希望或者提出某种建议,但是一般不在结尾用表示敬意或祝愿的话。
5. 落款。在右下方署上倡议发出者的姓名,然后另起一行,署上发出倡议的时间。

(二)写作步骤

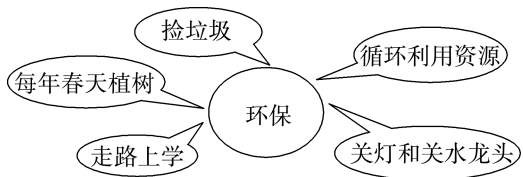
第一步:写明发出倡议的背景、原因和目的。倡议信的发出贵在引起响应,只有交代清楚原因、背景、事实,并申明目的,被呼吁方才会理解和信服,并展开行动。

第二步:写明倡议的具体内容和要求,这是正文的重点部分。内容要具体化,最好分条列举,做到清晰明确,一目了然,这样才能体现它的意义和行动价值。

第三步:结尾要表示倡议者的决心、希望或者写出某种建议。

二、典题示例

“推动绿色发展,促进人与自然和谐共生”是党的二十大报告中的重要内容。为了唤起全球青少年一代的环保意识,世界卫生组织向全球发起了“如何保护环境”的建议征集活动。你以学校学生会主席的名义,发出了全员环保的倡议,并制作了如下图的海报:



请根据海报内容及以下写作要点写一封倡议信。

要点如下:

1. 保护环境是我们中学生的职责;
2. 保护环境的一些具体措施;
3. 让我们都为地球母亲尽一份力。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Proposal

Dear friends,

Let's take action to protect our mother—the earth now.

Thank you!

The Students' Union

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 保护环境的原因及目的 2. 保护环境的一些具体措施 3. 给出个人的建议

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇

- ①raise 加强
- ②awareness 意识
- ③human activity 人类活动
- ④go on doing sth. 继续做某事
- ⑤reduce 减少;降低
- ⑥wash away 冲走
- ⑦pick up 捡
- ⑧turn off 关掉
- ⑨in a word 总之

(二)完成句子

- ①We're writing this letter to raise your awareness of protecting the earth (提高你们保护地球的意识).
- ②Our earth is becoming worse and worse (在变得越来越差).
- ③It's mainly caused by some human activities (主要由一些人类活动导致).
- ④First, walking to school is a good way to reduce pollution (一种减少污染的好方式).
- ⑤Second, we should plant trees every spring to protect the soil from being washed away (保护土壤不被冲走).
- ⑥We should keep our school clean by picking up any litter (通过捡垃圾来保持我们的学校干净).

⑦ Finally, remember to turn off (记得关掉) the water taps when you finish washing and turn off the lights when you leave the classroom (当你离开教室时).

⑧ In a word (总之), we can make the earth more beautiful (使地球更加美丽) tomorrow only when we form the good habit of environmental protection.

(三) 句式升级

① 用 which 引导的非限制性定语从句连接(二)中的句②③

Our earth is becoming worse and worse, which is mainly caused by some human activities.

② 用状语从句的省略升级(二)中的句⑦

Finally, remember to turn off the water taps when finishing washing and turn off the lights when leaving the classroom.

③ 将 only 引导的状语从句置于句首升级(二)中的句⑧

In a word, only when we form the good habit of environmental protection can we make the earth more beautiful tomorrow.

(四) 连句成篇

Proposal

Dear friends,

We're writing this letter to raise your awareness of protecting the earth. Our earth is becoming worse and worse, which is mainly caused by some human activities. So we propose doing the following things.

First, walking to school is a good way to reduce pollution. Second, we should plant trees every spring to protect the soil from being washed away. Third, it's also important to recycle everything useful. We should keep our school clean by picking up any litter. Finally, remember to turn off the water taps when finishing washing and turn off the lights when leaving the classroom. In a word, only when we form the good habit of environmental protection can we make the earth more beautiful

tomorrow.

Let's take action to protect our mother—the earth now.

Thank you!

The Students' Union

五、学以致用

为响应“保护环境,低碳生活”的号召,你校正在开展“Power Saving—A Must for Everyone”的主题活动,请你以学生会的名义用英语给全校学生写一封倡议信,内容包括:

1. 节约用电的原因及意义;
2. 节约用电的具体做法;
3. 发起倡议。

注意:词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

Proposal

Dear schoolmates,

As is known to us, without electricity the society cannot run smoothly. But around us, electricity is often regrettably wasted. In contrast, many places have been suffering severe power shortages since this summer. So it's necessary for us to save electricity.

First and foremost, we should make it a habit to save electricity and practise it in our daily life. For example, when leaving the room, we should turn off the lights. Moreover, we should remind more people around us, such as our parents, close relatives and friends, of the importance of saving electricity.

Let's take an active part in the power saving action, start from ourselves, and act from now on.

The Students' Union

课后素养评价(三十)

I. 单句语法填空

- The school sees its job as preparing students to make contributions (contribute) to society.
- This chapter is concerned (concern) with the mental health of older people.
- On average, each report requires 1,000 hours to prepare.
- When buying an apartment, people usually take into account its price, position, surroundings and so on.
- The car broke down on the way, fortunately not far from a garage.

II. 完成句子

- Now our new school is three times the size of what it was ten years ago.
现在,我们新学校的面积是十年前的三倍大。

- To avoid embarrassment, you'd better learn about Chinese table manners, which are different from yours.
为了避免尴尬,你最好了解中国的餐桌礼仪,这和你们的不同。

- It should be remembered that the majority of accidents happen in the home.
不要忘记大多数事故都是在家里发生的。

- That's a rare set of stamps. How long did it take you to collect them?
那是一套珍贵的邮票。你花了多长时间才收集到它们?

- It wasn't until I took part in the picking activity that I realised how important working with my own hands was.
直到我参加了采摘活动,我才意识到自己动手劳动的重要性。

III. 语法填空

As the effects of global warming, rising sea levels and natural disasters become more serious **1. than** before, some local communities are taking action. Among them is one community in Florida **2. where** local people and government officials are proving successful in protecting **3. coastal** (coast) cities from the dangers of rising sea levels.

The community has studied how much sea levels will rise and has suggested **4. ways** (way) to

address the problem. It has persuaded the state government **5. to ban** (ban) new developments on land near the coastline and recommended building sand dunes (沙丘) along beaches. Kristin Jacobs, one of the group's founders, decided to take action in 2008 after it became **6. gradually** (gradual) clear that her state's 27 water authorities couldn't agree on joint (联合的) action.

While some Florida government officials doubt whether the climate will become hotter or **7. colder** (cold), the people **8. living** (live) in these locations are certain of the need to protect their communities.

At present, coming up with ways to fight against the effects of climate change under a limited budget **9. is** (be) a pressing concern. Only time will tell whether these coastal communities will succeed in **10. the** end.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

学校的环保俱乐部(Saving the Environment Club)于上周六举行了一次义务劳动活动,地点是城市公园。活动内容包括:张贴海报、打扫街道、分发宣传广告、打扫公园等。

假如你是张亚,参加了这次志愿者活动,请你给你的朋友 Bruce 写一封电子邮件,向他介绍这次活动的情况,并谈谈你对志愿者工作的看法。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Bruce,

I'm a volunteer in Saving the Environment Club of my school. Last Saturday, I went to the City Park with some other volunteers. _____

Yours,
Zhang Ya

【参考范文】

Dear Bruce,

I'm a volunteer in Saving the Environment Club of my school. Last Saturday, I went to the City Park with some other volunteers.

Some of us put up signs about protecting the

environment. It's meaningful to make people know the importance of protecting the environment. Some handed out advertisements. Others cleaned the streets. We also helped clean up the City Park. When we finished all the work, we were very tired. But we felt very happy at the same time.

It's our duty to do something for the environment around us. I think it's fantastic to be a volunteer. What do you think of volunteering? Please write back!

Yours,
Zhang Ya

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Sometimes things may seem beyond our efforts, but keep on and you will find beautiful views in front of you.

I was on my second outdoor experience trip that every student had to go on. That year, we had a choice of what difficulty level we wanted: one through five. My friends and I had agreed that one would make us seem lazy and that challenging ourselves would make for a good story. In choosing level two, we believed that it would still be a fun experience.

We were quickly proven wrong.

The further we drove into the White Mountains, the higher the walls on either side of the winding highway grew. I was still in awe of the mountains I had seen so many times before, but I couldn't help feeling my heart shaking with anxiety. Soon I would have to leave the school bus that brought 50 students out into the wilderness like every year before.

My group consisted of my friends, Riley and Ann, and six extremely athletic boys. We arrived at the base camp lodge (木屋) first. After putting things aside and rearranging our bags, we made our way out into the wilderness.

The three of us girls were questioning if this was really a level two. The path was unbelievably steep (陡峭) and rocky towards the top of the mountain where the first hut was located. We were practically jogging in an attempt to keep up with the boys ahead of us. Before the trip, we were told to take breaks as often as we needed to drink water,

but that wasn't helping our pounding hearts and heavy breathing as much as it should have.

Then, 30 minutes into the most difficult hike the three of us had ever done, Riley slipped and landed on her knee. After a few moments, we turned back down the mountain as it was decided that Riley could not make the trip with us. We sat on the grass outside the lodge where we had started while Riley was brought inside to join the level one group. Ann and I exchanged breathless glances, our cheeks red and wet with sweat.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

“Do you think we should ask if we could join the level one group too?” I asked Ann. _____

The next days, although extremely tired, we kept on. _____

【参考范文】

“Do you think we should ask if we could join the level one group too?” I asked Ann. “I know you won't,” she breathed out. “I won't!” I said to myself, looking at the awesome mountains in the distance. Then we started up the steep and rocky path again, attempting to keep up with the boys. Our bags felt heavier; legs burned; backs hurt; tears threatened to spill over our sweat-covered eyes. I wanted nothing more than to turn back and leave right then and there. But, I couldn't; I didn't want to be someone who gave up easily.

The next days, although extremely tired, we kept on. Ann and I still found ourselves lagging behind the boys. Instead of embarrassment, I felt as though I was gaining more out of the trip than anyone else. As the boys ran, Ann and I hung back and took breaks, drinking water and admiring the deep green valleys from high above. Level two was fun, too. And eventually we made it to the destination. Facing the beautiful views in front of us, I exchanged a glance with Ann, both of us beaming.

读后续写技能养成 || 心理描写之“害怕与紧张”

「技能概述」

1. “害怕与紧张”:是指对人的害怕、紧张等心理状态的描写。如恐慌、深呼吸、发抖、屏住呼吸、来回踱步、如坐针毡、提心吊胆等。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住“脸、眼、心”等身体部位所表现出的神态特点进行描写,也可以使用一些描述动作的词汇辅助描写害怕与紧张的心理。

「范例体悟」

Emily hurried to the school and nervously glanced at the list on the door of the choral room. The fear of being rejected came to strike again. “Jeff Green, Rose Black...,” she murmured as her eyes moved upwards. “Wow!” Emily abruptly covered her mouth, feeling as if her heart would jump out.

找出文中有关“害怕与紧张”的心理描写并写下来。
nervously glanced at; The fear; abruptly covered her mouth; feeling as if her heart would jump out

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. frightened *adj.* 害怕的
2. scared *adj.* 恐惧的
3. terrified *adj.* 惊恐的
4. amazed *adj.* 惊讶的
5. shocked *adj.* 震惊的
6. surprised *adj.* 惊讶的
7. horror *n.* 恐惧
8. fearful *adj.* 害怕的
9. nervous/tense *adj.* 紧张的
10. in panic 恐慌地
11. take a deep breath 深呼吸
12. can't help trembling 情不自禁发抖
13. hold one's breath 屏住呼吸
14. pace back and forth 来回踱步
15. freeze with horror 吓呆
16. have one's heart in one's mouth/throat 吓一大跳;紧张万分
17. on pins and needles 如坐针毡
18. get/have butterflies in one's stomach (在做事情之前)惴惴不安,紧张
19. toss and turn 辗转反侧

II. 佳句背诵

1. The sound of footsteps in the dark made his blood run cold.

黑暗中的脚步声使他毛骨悚然。

2. He turned to me with his eyes full of horror.
他转向我,眼里充满了恐惧。
3. He waited with bated breath for the test results.
他屏住呼吸,等待考试结果。
4. As he held my hand tightly, I got butterflies in my stomach.
当他紧紧握住我的手时,我心里惴惴不安。
5. Jack froze with horror, unable to utter a single word.
杰克吓呆了,一句话也说不出。
6. Jane picked up the pace, her heart pounding louder as she got closer.
简加快了脚步,她走得越近,心跳得越厉害。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Her eyes widened with horror.
她吓得睁大了眼睛。
2. Her heart missed a beat.
她的心咯噔一下。
3. He was seized/overwhelmed by a strong feeling of terror.
他陷入一种强烈的恐惧而不能自拔。
4. As I answered the question, I got/had butterflies in my stomach.
我回答这个问题时,我心里惴惴不安。
5. Her voice was shaking despite all her efforts to control it.
她的声音在颤抖,尽管她竭力控制着。
6. Tom had his heart in his mouth/throat because it was his first day being the director.
汤姆紧张万分,因为这是他第一天当主任。

II. 用“害怕与紧张”的心理描写完成语段

“Oh no,” I thought. “Where’s Christopher?”

1. Scared and frozen on the spot (被吓呆了), I felt the need to see, hug my brother and make sure he was all right. 2. I got/had butterflies in my stomach (我十分紧张). 3. ran up and down (来回跑动) the aisles in the dark, 4. panic filling my chest and making it difficult for me to breathe (恐慌充斥着我的心,使我难以呼吸). I knocked into displays of candies and tripped over toys, while calling my brother's name like crazy. Anxious as I was, I could not find him. 5. Tears of frustration and fear trickled down my face (沮丧和恐惧的泪水从我脸上流下来), but I continued to run.

第六单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

The government says spending £4.2 million on planting trees in towns and cities will improve the quality of people's lives. But do trees really make people happy?

Some British and US surveys suggest a thick green lawn, or well-landscaped yard can increase the government property prices by as much as 15%. But the government's Big Tree Plant campaign, which aims to plant one million trees in English urban areas over the next four years, says trees are not only good for our bank balance, but they do wonders for our happiness. And it says getting people to plant makes communities even happier. So do people really care about trees and do they improve lives? Margaret Lipscombe, director of urban programmes at the Tree Council, says, "Not only are trees beautiful but they are practical. Trees also encourage healthier lifestyles and studies have shown people are calmer when trees are in their community." A US study suggests that patients who have a view of nature through hospital windows recover better after operations.

Ms Lipscombe says that the trees have also been known to slow down the traffic because drivers will drive more slowly when there is something in their sights. She admits some people have negative feelings about trees because they worry about slipping on berries, bird droppings on cars or blocked light.

Ms Lipscombe also says when she first moved into the area, there were no trees on her street. "It was an area where there were lots of factories with high walls. It looked like an abandoned place that you didn't want, especially as a woman on your own. Now everything is different. With lots of trees

around, the street looks more attractive. People are not as frightened and no longer run down the road to get home. The trees also bring people out onto the street and make a stronger community feel."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了树木有助于提升人们的生活质量。

1. What is Paragraph 2 mainly about?

- A. The use of trees in medical treatment.
- B. The benefits of trees to people's lives.
- C. The role of trees in cutting down government expense.
- D. How to make the best of trees.

B 段落大意题。根据第二段中的“Not only are trees beautiful but they are practical. Trees also encourage healthier lifestyles and studies have shown people are calmer when trees are in their community.”可知,第二段主要论述了树木对人们生活的好处。故选B。

2. What can be inferred from Ms Lipscombe's words in the last paragraph?

- A. Trees may offer people a sense of safety.
- B. Trees may help people forget sad memories.
- C. Factories should be built where people live.
- D. Women shouldn't go out alone at night.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“People are not as frightened and no longer run down the road to get home. The trees also bring people out onto the street and make a stronger community feel.”可知,树木可以提供给人们一种安全感。故选A。

3. Where does this passage most probably come from?

- A. A news report.
- B. A scientific report.
- C. A health magazine.
- D. A textbook.

C 文章来源题。根据第一段第一句“The government says spending £4.2 million on

planting trees in towns and cities will improve the quality of people's lives.”可知,政府表示,花费420万英镑在城镇植树将提升人们的生活质量。且根据文章内容主要是介绍树木给人们生活带来的好处可推断,本文最有可能来自健康杂志。故选C。

B

Shopping green can make an important contribution to protecting the planet and conserving its resources.

Today's consumer faces a wider range of choices than ever before. Add to that the steady stream of sales campaigns, and shopping smart only gets harder. To buy economically and reduce waste, safeguard health and protect the environment, you'll need to follow some basic principles and have a clear idea of what you want.

Do Your Homework

Before making any major purchase, take the time to research it. Plentiful resources are usually available online. Avoid buying in a hurry, and don't be persuaded by overenthusiastic salespeople. Sleep on it if necessary—you won't regret giving yourself some extra time to think.

Take the Long View

Consider the running costs as well as the initial price of any item you buy. Many environmentally friendly products cost more to buy, but save your money in the long run. Choose items that are made to last. For example, pick a sofa that has a hardwood or steel frame rather than one made of softwood, which may break easily.

Skip the Disposable Option

Buy reusable products like washable cloth towels, handkerchiefs, serviettes (餐巾) and cleaning cloths rather than paper, single-use varieties. Avoid other disposable supplies like cups, glasses, and chopsticks, too.

Take the Local Route

Buy local products that are in season. It's usually cheaper and fresher and has less harm to the

environment. Markets and roadside stands are good sources. Some supermarkets also buy from local producers. Support it if you have one.

Avoid Wasteful Packaging

Better not buy products that have too much packaging. It's estimated that approximately 10 percent of every shopping bill is actually paying for packaging—which you normally just throw away! Moreover, significant amounts of energy are used in the production of packaging. Purchasing refillable and renewable containers can also help cut this kind of waste.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。在倡导绿色生活的今天,我们怎样才能做到“绿色购物”呢? 本文为你提供了一些实用的建议:做调查;目光要长远一些;购买可循环使用的物品;购买当地的应季物品;避免过度包装。

4. What could be the best title for this passage?

- A. Protection of the Planet
- B. Green Shopping Principles
- C. Environmentally Friendly Products
- D. Resource Conservation

B 标题归纳题。通览全文内容可知,文章主要介绍了“绿色购物”的准则与建议。故B项正确。

5. What's the probable meaning of the underlined phrase “Sleep on it”?

- A. Think it over.
- B. Forget about it.
- C. Set it aside.
- D. Put it into action.

A 词义猜测题。结合上文及下文“... you won't regret giving yourself some extra time to think.”可知,作者想让人们先思考一下再做出是否购买的决定。故A项正确。

6. Why does the author advise us to buy lasting products?

- A. Because they are less expensive to buy.
- B. Because they save money in the long run.
- C. Because they will never break.
- D. Because they are local products.

B 细节理解题。根据**Take the Long View**部分中

的“... but save your money in the long run. Choose items that are made to last.”可知,从长远来看这样可以为你节省金钱。故 B 项正确。

7. Which of the following can be considered green shopping?

- A. Following the stream of sales campaigns.
- B. Buying disposable chopsticks.
- C. Focusing on packaging.
- D. Purchasing from local markets.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Take the Local Route** 部分可知,购买当地的应季产品通常更便宜、更新鲜,对环境的危害也更小。故 D 项正确。

C

If you were to throw, say, a banana peel out of your car while driving along the motorway, that would be a completely harmless action, due to the fact that it's part of a fruit—right? Actually, no. A banana peel can take up to two years to be naturally processed, and with a third of motorists admitting to littering while driving, that's a whole lot of discarded banana peels. An orange peel and a cigarette butt have a similar biodegrading (生物降解) term to that of a banana peel, but tin cans last up to 100 years; and plastic bottles last forever, so do glass bottles.

Despite the fact that longer-lasting materials will serve to damage the environment and its animals for longer, we can't merely measure the severity of a certain type of rubbish by its lifetime. For example, despite having a fairly short length of biodegrading time, more than 120 tons of cigarette-related litter is discarded in the UK every day.

It's not a cheap habit either: to keep our streets clean annually costs UK taxpayers £500 million, and when you include our green spaces, that goes up to £1 billion. So, it's not surprising that if caught fly-tipping you could face a £20,000 fine or even jail time and, if you dispose of something dangerous, the court could give you five years to serve. Regardless of how severe these punishments might

seem, however, among the reported cases only 2,000 were found guilty out of 825,000, so we still have some way to go in making sure people obey the rules.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。在我们所扔的垃圾中,不同的垃圾被分解时需要的时间不同,我们也不能仅凭垃圾被分解时需要的时间判断其危害性。据此我们要爱护环境、合法扔垃圾。

8. What does the underlined word “discarded” in Paragraph 1 mean?

- A. Harmless.
- B. Processed.
- C. Thrown.
- D. Long-lasting.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“admitting to littering”可知,此处表示被丢弃的香蕉皮。

9. Which of the following has the longest biodegrading term?

- A. Glass bottles.
- B. Tin cans.
- C. Cigarette butts.
- D. Banana peels.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段最后一句可知,plastic bottles 和 glass bottles 所需的生物降解时间最长。

10. What can be inferred from the passage?

- A. The severity of rubbish can be measured only by its lifetime.
- B. Quite a few people were found guilty of illegally littering.
- C. Every year UK taxpayers spend £500 million keeping streets free of dirt.
- D. Cigarette-related litter and peels can be ignored for their fairly short lifetime.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“to keep our streets clean annually costs UK taxpayers £500 million”可知,每年英国纳税人需花费 5 亿英镑来保持街道干净。

11. What is the purpose of the passage?

- A. To inform readers of different biodegrading terms.
- B. To call for people not to litter illegally.

C. To encourage people to use fewer plastic bags.

D. To stress the importance of good behaviour.

B 推理判断题。根据全文所述可知,在我们所扔的垃圾中,不同的垃圾被分解时需要的时间不同,我们也不能仅凭垃圾被分解时需要的时间判断其危害性。故该篇文章旨在号召大家合法扔垃圾。

D

Many wild animals are facing the danger of disappearance, because the environment that they are living in has changed greatly. At the same time, man is killing off species just for getting their fur, skin, horns, teeth and meat. As a result of ivory-poaching (象牙偷猎) which caused the population of elephants to drop 20% between 2006 and 2015, elephants are among the most endangered animals in the world. But now in the Grumeti Game Reserve in Tanzania the elephants wander freely and safely as every one wears a tracking collar. Rangers (护林人) in the operation room depend on the Earth Ranger Tech Platform (ERTP) to follow each elephant. In its early stages of development, the platform was named the Domain Awareness System or DAS.

What we do with DAS is that we monitor every collared elephant and we also input data which in turn helps us make decisions and plan operations. When dangers are detected, the system warns the rangers who are following the data. DAS makes rangers always behind and after the elephant even if it has been killed or has been injured. Rangers are really able to predict and get ahead of the danger.

Rangers not only save the lives of the elephants, they also protect the workers in the reserve from poachers. Frequent and fast communication with the operation room makes the rangers' tasks easier and safer. The developers hope the ERTP will provide conservationists (资源保护论

者) in the region with the network that they need to work together and save Africa's wildlife.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了怎么通过使用 Earth Ranger Tech Platform(ERTP)这一技术保护大象。

12. Why are the elephants in Tanzania free of being hunted?

A. Because the elephants are protected by the police in Tanzania.

B. Because the elephants are protected by the ERTP.

C. Because of the changing environment they live in.

D. Because the elephants are endangered.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*But now in the Grumeti Game Reserve in Tanzania the elephants wander freely and safely as everyone wears a tracking collar. Rangers (护林人) in the operation room depend on the Earth Ranger Tech Platform (ERTP) to follow each elephant.*”可知,坦桑尼亚的大象之所以没有被猎杀是因为大象受到 ERTP 的保护。故选 B。

13. What is the advantage of the ERTP?

A. Dangers can be known before rather than after they appear.

B. It will know elephants are in danger after they have been injured.

C. Elephants can be protected from being injured.

D. It can also protect the other animals besides the elephants.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*When dangers are detected, the system warns the rangers who are following the data. DAS makes rangers always behind and after the elephant even if it has been killed or has been injured. Rangers are really able to predict and get ahead of the danger.*”可知,ERTP 的优势是“在危险来

临之前就能知道,而不是危险来临后才知道”。故选 A。

14. Who will not benefit from the ERTTP?

- A. The elephants in the Grumeti Game Reserve in Tanzania.
- B. The people working on the reserve.
- C. The hunters poaching ivory.
- D. The African wildlife.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“As a result of ivory-poaching (象牙偷猎) which caused the population of elephants to drop 20% between 2006 and 2015, elephants are among the most endangered animals in the world.”可知,偷猎象牙的人不会从 ERTTP 获益。故选 C。

15. What's the best title for the text?

- A. Saving Africa's Wildlife
- B. Protecting Elephants by Using the ERTTP
- C. Protecting the Rangers from Being Injured
- D. Saving the Endangered Animals

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“Rangers (护林人) in the operation room depend on the Earth Ranger Tech Platform (ERTTP) to follow each elephant.”及全文内容可知,本文主要介绍了人们使用 ERTTP 这一技术保护大象。故 B 项为最佳标题。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

High on the Qinghai-Xizang Plateau lies China's "water tower" Sanjiangyuan. 16 The three rivers: the Yellow River, the Yangtze River and the Lancang River, provide water for about half the population of China. However, human activities such as overgrazing (过度放牧) are putting this ecosystem at risk.

17 In 2016, the Chinese government established Sanjiangyuan National Park, which was a pilot (试行) programme for China's national park system. 18 Due to the progress made in the region, Qinghai held the first National Park Forum

on Aug. 19.

Sanjiangyuan National Park is a model of eco-protection. 19 For example, Herdsmen have given their grasslands to nature and resettled in urban areas. As for wildlife, they are monitored by field conservation stations to keep the environment in good condition.

The idea of a national park system is still new in China, but it must be realised. As President Xi wrote in the congratulatory letter to the forum, "Building an ecological civilisation bears great significance in the development and progress of human civilisation." With great efforts, people may one day be able to enjoy themselves in the vast lands of Sanjiangyuan and run freely across the plains alongside nature's animals. 20

- A. Hopefully, though, we have realised the damage.
- B. It's home to the headwater of China's three big rivers.
- C. Unfortunately, the situation has got worse and worse.
- D. It attracts visitors with its fantastic natural beauty and a variety of wildlife.
- E. The park has increased the area's green coverage and attracted more wildlife.
- F. Hopefully, the success of Sanjiangyuan will mark the start of a greener future.
- G. The local government has different ways of slowing environmental degradation.

答案:16~20 BAEGF

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Perhaps because I was a city kid, my exposure to wildlife was limited. That 21 when I moved to the wooded hills of Oregon many years later. For the first time, I 22 animal communities.

One evening, a raccoon (浣熊) with four kids 23. She extended her tiny paw 24 asking for some food. I was attracted by their cuteness, so I

25 put out a serving of fresh cat food and water. It 26 the next evening. And the next.

A few days later, our homeowners association (业主协会) newsletter arrived in the mail. Among the 27 announcements of garage sales came a gentle reminder that feeding the wildlife was not a(n) 28 thing to do.

My face became red with 29 as I read the letter. I'd been found out!

"OK, I'm going to 30 feeding the animals," I said to my husband.

Although I told myself that the wildlife around me would 31 without cat food, I felt guilty. Late that night, I walked slowly into the kitchen for a snack. Then a scene outside 32 my attention: There, on the hillside, was my neighbour. She was 33 two deer in the cold.

Another animal 34, I thought. Even well-intentioned neighbourhood associations can't control our human impulse (冲动) to 35 with wild creatures and the natural world.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者自从搬到俄勒冈州开始接触野生动物,便深深喜欢上了它们并喂它们食物。但社区贴出告示,指出这是不合适的。当作者看到邻居也在做同样的事情时,作者认为没有什么能阻止人们与动物和大自然接触。

21. A. happened B. grew
C. changed D. started

C 多年后当“我”搬到俄勒冈州树木茂密的小山上时,一切都改变了。根据上文“Perhaps because I was a city kid, my exposure to wildlife was limited.”可推测,下文提到发生了改变。故选 C。

22. A. built B. met
C. caught D. ignored

B “我”第一次遇到动物群落。根据语境可知选 B。

23. A. appeared B. waited
C. shouted D. slept

A 一天晚上,一只带着四个小崽子的浣熊出现了。根据语境可知选 A。

24. A. even if B. only if
C. if only D. as if
D 这只浣熊伸出小小的爪子好像要在要食物。

25. A. secretly B. instantly
C. directly D. suddenly
B “我”被它们的可爱吸引住了,因此“我”立即拿出新鲜猫粮和水。故选 B。

26. A. remained B. left
C. settled D. returned
D 第二天晚上浣熊又回来了。根据语境可知选 D。

27. A. special B. usual
C. simple D. exact
B 在平常的车库销售通告中,有一张单子委婉地提醒喂野生动物是一件不太合适的事情。故选 B。

28. A. suitable B. noble
C. valuable D. enjoyable
A 根据语境可知,此处表示喂野生动物是一件“不太合适的”事情。

29. A. disappointment B. embarrassment
C. sadness D. eagerness
B 看到这封信时,“我”的脸因为尴尬变红了。故选 B。

30. A. stop B. keep
C. delay D. consider
A 联系上下文可知,“我”决定不再喂那些动物了。故选 A。

31. A. survive B. practise
C. suffer D. compete
A 虽然“我”告诉自己那些动物即使没有这些猫粮也能生存下来,但“我”感到很愧疚。故选 A。

32. A. escaped B. attracted
C. deserved D. avoided
B 外面的场景吸引了“我”的注意力。attract one's attention 意为“吸引某人的注意力”。故选 B。

33. A. pulling B. washing
C. protecting D. feeding

D 她正在寒冷的天气中喂两只鹿。根据语境可知,邻居也在喂野生动物。故选 D。

34. A. trainer B. watcher
C. lover D. owner

C 根据语境可知,邻居也喜爱动物。故选 C。

35. A. connect B. play
C. live D. work

A 即使是出于好意的社区协会,也不能控制人类想与野生动物和大自然接触的念头。故选 A。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

The Tibetan antelope, also known as the Chiru, is unique to the Qinghai-Xizang Plateau of China, **36. which** is the highest plateau in the world.

The Tibetan antelopes are thin animals with four powerful legs and short tails, their bodies **37. covered** (cover) with abundant white and light-grey hair.

The Tibetan antelopes feed mostly on grass. In winter, they dig into the snow **38. to seek** (seek) food. They are good runners and can run for several hours in cold weather conditions, so they can sometimes escape from **39. wolves** (wolf), their main predators (捕食者), easily.

The Tibetan antelopes **40. are listed** (list) in the *Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora* as endangered species with a population estimated to be **41. less** (little) than 35,000 and still on **42. the** decline.

43. Thankfully (thank), effective measures have been taken by China and India to prohibit the Tibetan antelopes **44. from** being hunted. China has set up four nature reserves and thirty-two passages beneath the railways for the antelopes to immigrate. And both countries check the illegal trade strictly. People didn't believe these would work at first, but now local people think they **45. are** (be) of great significance.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

党的二十大报告强调,加快构建废弃物循环利用体系,推动形成绿色低碳的生产方式和生活方式。为了增强绿色消费意识,你校将举办英文演讲比赛,请你以“*How to Live Green?*”为题写一篇演讲稿参赛。内容包括:

1. 你对绿色生活的理解;
2. 你的建议。

注意:词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

How to Live Green?

Good morning, everyone. It is my honour to talk about how to live green here. Green life is a lifestyle of minimising energy consumption, thereby reducing carbon dioxide emissions. For ordinary people, we can do a lot of small things to live a green life.

First of all, we can give something a second life. For instance, the water which has been used to wash rice can be used to clean furniture, water the flowers and so on. In addition, we must pay attention to energy saving. For instance, we can go to school by cycling, using public transport or an electric car, rather than driving gas-guzzling vehicles. Last but not least, we are supposed to broadcast the awareness of green life and call on people around us to live a green life.

That's all. Thanks for your listening.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was the middle of the day with a bright sun, blue sky, green grass, and a soft breeze (微风). It was a great day to play outside and the best day of

my life because I got a new ball and a new bike as my sixth birthday presents, and I was visiting my cousin, Kristy, at her house.

“Here I go!” shouted David while kicking my new ball. David lived next door and was older than me. I thought he was a wild child, but he was actually very kind. The ball went flying as if it were going to space. “That was high!” Kristy said in surprise and we went after the ball. We all had a great time.

Later we had supper and the food my aunt made was good. While Kristy was helping do the dishes, David and I ran outside to play. We started taking turns riding my bike. David suggested that we ride it to the forest. And I agreed, David and I got on the bike and David started going fast.

As we rode through the forest, I felt the wind brushing my face. It felt so great and free. Suddenly the bike hit a fallen branch and we went flying off the bike. Lying on the ground, I felt dizzy (眩晕). I checked myself for injuries and saw some but they didn't bother me.

“David!” I shouted out loudly and anxiously.

“Hey,” said a voice. I turned my head and it was David, who was standing behind me, holding my broken bike. At the sight of my disabled bike, I was so sad that I couldn't hold back my tears. It took David some time to calm me down.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

When we realised it was time to walk home, we found ourselves lost. _____

It was completely dark when we saw fireworks being set off in the distance. _____

【参考范文】

When we realised it was time to walk home, we found ourselves lost. It was getting darker and darker. I felt so scared that tears rolled down my face again. David attempted to comfort me. He told me that he once made some marks on the trees in the forest, which might help us find the way home. Therefore, we made efforts to look for the marks but in vain. Having walked anxiously for about an hour in the forest, we failed to find our way out.

It was completely dark when we saw fireworks being set off in the distance. We ran excitedly in that direction as fast as possible. Soon we found my aunt's house, in front of which my cousin Kristy was holding some fireworks and lighting them. Seeing us back safe, Kristy cheerfully hugged us. She told us that when noticing we had been away for long, she was concerned about our safety. She set off fireworks to draw our attention and guide us. It was an unforgettable experience. Without David's comfort and Kristy's fireworks, I would have been lost in the forest forever.

综合检测(一)

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Rock climbing, one of the fastest growing sports, not only builds physical strength and mental focus, but also leads you to some beautiful places. Here are some climbing spots for climbers.

Acadia National Park, Maine

This popular New England park is one of the few places where you can climb seaside rocks. The granite (花岗岩) is good for climbing. In some areas, you need to start when the sea is at its lowest level. The area has guides, instructors and climbing schools, making it particularly welcoming for beginners.

Red River Gorge, Kentucky

This geological area in Daniel Boone National Forest is prized for its climbing routes and rock scenery. The park, located an hour's drive southeast of Lexington, is well known in the climbing world for both its beginner-friendly terrain (地形) and more challenging sections. It's a place where you can find a lot of fellow climbers.

City of Rocks National Reserve, Idaho

This national reserve near the Utah border is worth a trip for the scenery alone. Named by gold miners heading to California in 1849, its granite looks like skyscrapers, towering 600 feet above the ground. It's a fascinating area from the geologic and geographic angles. Many visitors come for August's Idaho Mountain Festival, a celebration of climbing with top athletes in attendance.

Earth Treks Englewood, Colorado

While you can find climbing gyms across the country, this one just in the south of Denver is worth a special trip. With more than 53,000 square feet, the massive facility has a special rock climbing area, a group of guides and even extras like childcare and yoga.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。攀岩越来越受人们

青睐,本文主要介绍了四个适合攀岩的地点。

1. What is special about Acadia National Park?

- A. It has good climbing routes.
- B. It's located in a coastal area.
- C. It provides a free guided trip.
- D. It's intended for beginners.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Acadia National Park, Maine** 部分中的“*This popular New England park is one of the few places where you can climb seaside rocks.*”及“*when the sea is at its lowest level*”可知,这里是为数不多的临海的可攀岩之处,这是其特别之处。故选 B。

2. What can you do in City of Rocks National Reserve?

- A. Meet many gold miners.
- B. Enjoy the view from a tower.
- C. Go to enjoy a festival in August.
- D. Get trained in a climbing gym.

C 细节理解题。根据 **City of Rocks National Reserve, Idaho** 部分中的“*Many visitors come for August's Idaho Mountain Festival, a celebration of climbing with top athletes in attendance.*”可知,游客在这里可以参加爱达荷山脉节。故选 C。

3. Which of the following favours a parent with a child?

- A. Acadia National Park.
- B. Red River Gorge.
- C. City of Rocks National Reserve.
- D. Earth Treks Englewood.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Earth Treks Englewood, Colorado** 部分中的“*the massive facility has a special rock climbing area, a group of guides and even extras like childcare and yoga*”可知,带小孩的家长适合去 Earth Treks Englewood。故选 D。

B

Looking out of my window today reminded me of another day just like this one, a day when I was searching for a special blue bird. I thought it had been talking to my grandmother about me.

One day my grandmother asked me to buy some

bread. On the way home I gave my bread to a black dog. I really wanted to keep her but I knew my mother would not allow.

An idea occurred to me. I got to our back gate, carefully dug a hole under the fence, and left the rest of the bread right at the hole. Then from the front door I went down the drive and through to the backyard. I got there just in time. She was trying to reach the bread at the hole. I held her front paws and pulled her through. She ate up the bread and I was delighted that my idea had worked.

When I got inside, I told my grandmother that my bread was eaten by a stray dog. I was very pleased with myself for not having to lie. We suddenly heard scratching coming from the back door. Seeing her, my grandmother asked me, "Where did that come from?" "She must have come in under the gate." I pointed out the hole under the back gate. My grandmother told me she thought it was I who brought the dog home; I looked at my grandmother's face and asked, "How did you know?" She said, "A little bird told me; a little blue bird told me." I reminded her I had not told a lie. She grinned and said, "No, you did not lie. But the truth you told was not the whole story either."

I spent most of that summer making sure the blue birds stayed out of the yard. I remember watching my grandmother giggling as she watched me.

Years later I found out that my grandmother had been looking out of the breakfast room window and watched me dig the hole, run back into the yard and pull the dog through. She and my mother laughed about it. Anyway, we kept the dog (even after she delivered 13 puppies) until she passed away with snow-white on her snout and around her eyes.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者小时候在路上遇到一只黑狗,害怕家里人不同意自己养,于是给狗在篱笆下挖了洞,然后假装狗是不小心进入屋里的。结果祖母和母亲早就看到了作者的所作所为。

4. How did the dog get into the house?

- A. From the hole under the fence.
- B. From the bakery at the back door.

C. From the front door and the drive.

D. From the breakfast room window.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“I got to our back gate, carefully dug a hole under the fence, and left the rest of the bread right at the hole.”以及第四段中的“I pointed out the hole under the back gate.”可知,狗是从篱笆下面的洞进入院子里的。故选 A。

5. What does the underlined word “that” in Paragraph 4 refer to?

- A. The bird.
- B. The scratching noise.
- C. The dog.
- D. The hole.

C 代词指代题。根据第四段中的“My grandmother told me she thought it was I who brought the dog home.”可知,狗进到了屋里,所以奶奶问作者狗是哪里来的,故 that 指的是“这只狗”。故选 C。

6. Why did the writer's grandmother grin?

- A. Because she knew the truth.
- B. Because she once talked to the bird.
- C. Because she thought I told the truth.
- D. Because she loved the dog too.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Years later I found out that my grandmother had been looking out of the breakfast room window and watched me dig the hole, run back into the yard and pull the dog through. She and my mother laughed about it.”可知,祖母笑是因为她早就知道真相。故选 A。

7. How did the writer feel about keeping the dog?

- A. Frightened and puzzled.
- B. Concerned and happy.
- C. Tolerant and sympathetic.
- D. Delighted and carefree.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“She ate up the bread and I was delighted that my idea had worked.”,并结合作者为了让家里人养狗,想尽办法让狗进了院子里可推知,作者觉得养狗让人有了挂念和快乐。故选 B。

C

Rice is eaten all over the world in all different ways. No matter whether your rice is white or

brown, it has one thing in common, and that's arsenic (砷). Now, researchers from the University of Sheffield say a new and simple way of cooking rice can remove this cancer-causing material while keeping the nutrients which make this food so good.

A team from the school's Institute for Sustainable Food discovered the "parboiling with absorption (PBA) method" can cut down over half the naturally occurring arsenic in brown rice and 74 percent in white rice. More importantly, this home-friendly kitchen method saves the nutrients rice contains.

The PBA method first parboils (煮到半熟) rice in pre-boiled-water for five minutes. The water is then emptied and fresh water is poured into the pot. From there, the rice is cooked normally at lower heat until the water is all absorbed.

The International Agency for Research on Cancer has classed arsenic as a Group 1 carcinogen (致癌物), the material that can cause cancer. Unfortunately, rice has this water-soluble poison because it grows in flooded fields unlike many other grains (谷物).

Researchers say arsenic can affect every organ in the human body. It can also result in skin lesions, cancer, diabetes, and lung diseases. Rice tends to hold around 10 times more arsenic than other grains. It usually sits in the outer covering of the grain, which makes it more of a problem in brown rice. White rice, which is milled (研磨), contains less arsenic but also has fewer nutrients due to the milling process.

"For people who eat rice, this is excellent news. There are concerns amongst the population about eating rice due to arsenic. Previous studies have shown that cooking rice in a lot of water could remove arsenic but the problem is that it also removes nutrients," says lead author Dr Manoj Menon in a university release. "Our aim was to improve the method to remove arsenic while keeping maximum nutrients in the cooked rice. Our newly developed method, PBA, is easy and home-friendly so that everyone can use it. We don't know the amount of arsenic in each packet of rice we buy;

even though brown rice is nutritionally better than white rice as our data shows, it contains more arsenic than white rice. With our new method we are able to significantly reduce the arsenic while reducing the loss of key nutrients."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一种PBA大米烹饪法,能够显著减少大米中砷的含量,同时减少关键营养物质的损失。

8. What did the researchers try to do with rice?

- A. To add more nutrients to it.
- B. To make it healthy and nutritious.
- C. To use it as a cure for cancer.
- D. To recommend it as a popular food.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "No matter whether your rice is white or brown, it has one thing in common, and that's arsenic (砷). Now, researchers from the University of Sheffield say a new and simple way of cooking rice can remove this cancer-causing material while keeping the nutrients which make this food so good." 以及第二段的内容可知,研究人员试图将砷从大米中去除并保持其营养物质,因此,他们试图使大米变得健康而富有营养。故选 B。

9. What can we learn about the PBA method?

- A. It requires water to be changed during cooking.
- B. It can remove arsenic completely from rice.
- C. It can change the form of arsenic in rice.
- D. It will be more effective under a high temperature.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 "The PBA method first parboils (煮到半熟) rice in pre-boiled-water for five minutes. The water is then emptied and fresh water is poured into the pot." 可知,PBA 烹饪法需要在烹饪过程中更换水。故选 A。

10. What makes rice hold arsenic more than other grains?

- A. Its milling process.
- B. Its high water content.
- C. Its special structure.
- D. Its growing condition.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的 "Unfortunately, rice has this water-soluble poison because it grows in flooded fields unlike

many other grains (谷物)。”可知,大米比起其他谷物含有更多砷是由于其生长环境。故选 D。

11. What does Dr Manoj Menon say in the last paragraph?

- A. Rice should be cooked with a small amount of water.
- B. The PBA method can kill two birds with one stone.
- C. The PBA method needs to be tested further in daily life.
- D. People liking rice should choose brown rice over white rice.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Our aim was to improve the method to remove arsenic while keeping maximum nutrients in the cooked rice.*”和“*With our new method we are able to significantly reduce the arsenic while reducing the loss of key nutrients.*”可知,PBA 烹饪法可以一举两得,不但能够显著减少砷的含量,同时能减少关键营养物质的损失。故选 B。

D

When I was young, I never fully appreciated why my parents signed me up for every music class. I viewed practising the piano and the violin as a burden, or something that had to be done every day before being able to watch Disney Channel.

While the majority of my classmates would bond over their dislike of learning an instrument, I found myself gradually expecting to learn new songs, practise them and perform them. Maybe it's because my parents used Disney Channel as an incentive, or maybe I just needed their early push. Regardless, I came to appreciate music as a form of self-expression.

Learning musical notes has benefits to language development and cognitive (认知的) functions. Studies have shown that the left planum temporale, the part of the brain involved in hearing processing and receptive language, is active when musicians are either reading and listening to music or comprehending a speech. But, when non-musicians are listening to music, their brains do not process it in the same area as language — while processing language is a natural ability, music awareness is

something that can be obtained through practising.

Take Finland, for example, where the average person learns to speak three to five languages. This is a result of the country's custom of early music training, in which children learn the fundamentals of musical notes through songs and games. In fact, a study reveals a strong connection between children who study music before and the development of higher IQs and a bigger range of vocabulary.

In addition, evolutionary evidence from Oxford University highlights how speech and language started developing merely 200,000 years ago. It's clear that the neural networks of both music and language have overlap (重叠部分), and that our use of speech as a form of communication has its roots in the original evolutionary history of music. So if you're looking to learn something new, consider picking up a new instrument!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。一项研究表明学习音符对语言发展和认知功能有益,如果你想学习一些新的东西,考虑一下拿起一个新的乐器。

12. What was the author's original attitude towards learning musical instruments?

- A. Cautious. B. Favourable.
- C. Uninterested. D. Unconcerned.

C 观点态度题。根据第一段的内容可知,最初作者不能完全理解为什么父母让自己学习乐器,认为学习乐器对自己是一种负担。由此可知,作者一开始对学习乐器不感兴趣。故选 C。

13. What does the underlined word “incentive” in Paragraph 2 mean?

- A. Threat. B. Standard.
- C. Alternative. D. Motivation.

D 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“*While the majority of my classmates would bond over their dislike of learning an instrument, I found myself gradually expecting to learn new songs, practise them and perform them. Maybe it's because my parents used Disney Channel as an incentive, or maybe I just needed their early push.*”可知,最初对学习乐器不感兴趣的作者逐渐期待学习新歌、练习和表演歌曲,是因为有迪士尼频道作为“动力”(与下文 push 呼应)。由此可知,incentive 在此处意为“动力(motivation)”。故选 D。

14. What does the example of Finland show?

- A. The use of foreign languages increases communicative skills.
- B. Practising music helps improve language ability.
- C. Children with higher IQs have rich imagination.
- D. Learning musical notes enlarges vocabulary.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Learning musical notes has benefits to language development and cognitive (认知的) functions.”和第四段中的“Take Finland, for example, where the average person learns to speak three to five languages. This is a result of the country’s custom of early music training, in which children learn the fundamentals of musical notes through songs and games.”可知,芬兰人学会说三到五种语言是因为小时候接受了音乐训练。由此可知,练习音乐有助于提高语言能力。故选 B。

15. What does the last paragraph probably imply?

- A. Language originated from music.
- B. Everyone should learn an instrument.
- C. The history of language is longer than that of music.
- D. Learning music is more difficult than learning languages.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“it’s clear that the neural networks of both music and language have overlap (重叠部分), and that our use of speech as a form of communication has its roots in the original evolutionary history of music.”可知,语言作为一种交流形式,根源在于音乐的原始进化史。由此可知,语言起源于音乐。故选 A。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Race walking (竞走) has become more and more popular in recent years. 16 For example, it can make a person stronger and more patient.

Race walking is different from running. The race walker should take the correct running posture (姿势). He/She must never be completely out of contact with the ground, which means the back foot cannot fully leave the surface until the front foot has

touched the ground. In addition, the leg carrying the race walker’s weight must remain completely straight until his/her body has passed over it. 17 If not, he/she will be warned by judges (裁判) and even lose the chance to continue the competition.

18 Some race walkers can reach a speed very close to that of professional runners. In 2008, the men’s 20 km race walk world record was one hour sixteen minutes and forty-three seconds, while the current world record for a 20 km run was fifty-five minutes and twenty-one seconds.

Race walking has become an important Olympic event. At first, only men were allowed to take part in race walking in the Olympics. Some years later, women were also allowed to take part in it in the Olympics. Women are typically slower than men in race walking. 19 If you want to learn it, you can read some books or watch videos to find out the basics of race walking. 20 You’ll receive good guidance on the skills of race walking.

- A. But their record scores are fairly close.
- B. The correct posture is not easy to stick to.
- C. The race walker must follow these basic rules.
- D. It’s a sport helpful to people’s health and mind.
- E. Or you can turn to a race walking coach directly.
- F. Learning race walking can be tiring in the beginning.
- G. The speed of race walking can be even as fast as that of running.

答案:16~20 DCGAE

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

We had just come back home after a big trip. My 5-year-old boy, Baldwin, couldn’t 21 to share our stories with his grandmother. Our final 22 was the Appalachian Trail, one of the longest footpaths in the world. We finished the route without any 23 in 209 days. The 24 was really hard work, but full of fun. The landscape along the way was 25, with green woods and wild animals like kangaroos. My husband and I had little time to 26 our own physical pain from walking so many kilometres, but tried hard to keep our little boy happy and excited. When we were tired, we got to eat Skittles, a colourful sweet

treat, to make my son 27. We slept in a tent, 28 at 5:30 in the morning and walking all day. Talking with other hikers along the way prevented 29 and brought extra joy.

My son was even several months 30 than “Buddy Backpacker”, a boy who once held the record for the youngest person for the route. We had been hiking 31 my son was two years old. We took every opportunity to go outside and 32 the world. It may seem like an impossible activity for a child. However, it turned out that he was strong enough to 33 it. My son’s trip earned 34 from Dale, the oldest person to hike the route. He said, “It’s going to change his life forever. Baldwin has gone through some hardships, making him stronger. This challenge contributes to his social and 35 development. He will smile throughout his life.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者从儿子两岁起就带着他徒步旅行,探索世界,助力孩子成长的故事。

21. A. regret B. wait
C. promise D. decide

B can't wait to do sth. 表示“迫不及待地做某事”,符合语境,这里指孩子旅行回来很兴奋,特别急切地想要讲给祖母听。故选 B。

22. A. agreement B. edge
C. movement D. destination

D 前面提到“a big trip”,他们刚刚旅行回来,空后表语 Appalachian Trail 是一个地名,应该是旅行所去的地方,即目的地。故选 D。

23. A. vehicle B. direction
C. luggage D. supply

A 根据上文“one of the longest footpaths”可知,他们去的是步行道,后面也多次提到 hiking,应该没有使用车辆等交通工具,完全徒步完成。故选 A。

24. A. jogging B. surfing
C. hiking D. hunting

C 根据上文“one of the longest footpaths”及下文“... our own physical pain from walking so many kilometres”可知,此次旅行是徒步远足。故选 C。

25. A. available B. normal
C. awful D. dramatic

D 后面描述了路途中看到的绿色树林、袋鼠等野生动物,这说明沿途风景引人注目。故选 D。

26. A. pay attention to B. put on
C. add to D. live up to

A 作者和丈夫徒步很远的路途之后,身体疼痛,可是为了让孩子开心,没有时间和精力去顾及自己的身体劳累或疼痛,pay attention to 符合语境。故选 A。

27. A. brave B. concerned
C. grateful D. energetic

D 孩子累了,让孩子吃些糖果应该是为了让孩子精力充沛。故选 D。

28. A. lying B. waking
C. talking D. settling

B 前面说睡觉,后面早上五点半应该是醒来的时间。故选 B。

29. A. laziness B. sadness
C. boredom D. injury

C 根据下文“brought extra joy”可知,跟别人聊天是避免无聊。故选 C。

30. A. shorter B. younger
C. earlier D. quicker

B 根据空前的“even”可知,“Buddy Backpacker”是年龄最小的纪录保持者,作者的儿子比纪录保持者甚至更小,younger 符合语境。故选 B。

31. A. if B. since
C. until D. because

B 根据上下文可知,作者的儿子现在五岁,他两岁时应用一般过去时,主句为完成时。由此可知,是作者自从儿子两岁至最近五岁期间一直坚持有时间就带孩子进行徒步旅行。两岁是开始的时间,所以 since 符合语境。故选 B。

32. A. change B. recognise
C. explore D. photograph

C 带孩子外出徒步旅行,应该是想让孩子探索世界,探索未知。故选 C。

33. A. make B. feel
C. know D. find

A make it 意为“获得成功”,这里指孩子成功地完成了远足。故选 A。

34. A. prize B. lesson
C. praise D. harvest

C 根据语境可知,作者的儿子赢得了 Dale 的赞扬,他是这条路线上年龄最大的徒步旅行者。故选 C。

35. A. emotional B. intellectual
C. imaginative D. magical

A 作者的儿子这么小就完成了如此大的挑战,一方面有助于他社交能力的发展,另一方面他的精神情感方面也应该会受到积极影响,让他变得更坚强,能更好地体验人生。故选 A。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Imagine having everything you need: health-centres, stores, parks—just a few **36. steps** (step) from home. It could make you healthier and build stronger connections between you and your neighbours.

This is the idea behind the 15-minute city. Here, people can get all the services they need within 15 minutes from home, either on foot **37. or** by bike. This model is being developed in cities around the world, from Paris to Portland. Carlos Moreno is a scientific **38. director** (direct) at France's IAE Paris Sorbonne Business School. He is also a key theorist (理论家) behind the 15-minute-city plan for Paris. “My idea is to create a livable city **39. which/that** can increase the quality of life.” Moreno says.

15 minutes' cities were inspired by the need **40. to fight** (fight) climate (气候) change. In a 15-minute city, the focus is on **41. building** (build) more sidewalks and bike lanes. Moreno says walking or biking across the city **42. is** (be) a good way to greatly reduce CO₂ emissions (排放物).

Joe Zehnder, chief planner for the city of Portland, Oregon, is developing “20-minute neighbourhoods”. “Having stores close **43. to** home gives people more chances to choose healthy foods,” Zehnder says.

As a neighbourhood becomes more convenient, housing costs can increase. This **44. certainly** (certain) leaves a lot of people out. Zehnder says his approach is “to try to create more housing and more types of housing, so that families in **45. different** (difference) economic situations have an opportunity to live there”.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,本周日下午你市大剧院有川剧变脸演出(Sichuan Opera face-changing performance),请给你校外籍教师 Smith 先生写一封邮件,内容包括:

1. 邀请他观看演出;
2. 演出信息:时间、地点和表演者等;
3. 期待回复。

注意:词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

Dear Mr Smith,

How's everything going recently? I'm writing to invite you to enjoy a Sichuan Opera face-changing performance this Sunday!

This performance will start at 3 pm and last about 3 hours at the City Theatre. A famous master of Sichuan Opera will perform this unique form of traditional Chinese art for the audience. I know you're interested in Chinese opera so I believe it's a valuable chance for you to enjoy it in person.

I'm looking forward to your early reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

A light rain was falling as my sister Jill and I ran out of the shop, eager to get home and play with the presents that our parents had prepared for us and our baby sister, Sharon. Across the street from the shop was a gas station where the Greyhound bus stopped, which was closed for New Year, but I saw a family standing outside the locked door, gathering closely together under the narrow overhang in an attempt to keep dry. I wondered briefly why they

were there but then forgot about them as I raced to keep up with Jill.

Once we got home, there was barely time to enjoy our presents. We had to go off to our grandparents' house for our annual family dinner. As we drove down the highway through town, I noticed that the family was still there, standing outside the closed gas station.

My father was driving very slowly down the highway. The closer we got to the turnoff (岔道) for my grandparents' house, the slower the car went. Suddenly, my father made a U-turn in the middle of the road and said that he couldn't stand it. "What?" asked my mother. "It's those people back there at the station, standing in the rain. They've got children. It's New Year. I can't stand it."

When my father pulled into the service station, I saw that there were five of them; the parents and three children—two girls and a small boy, who were getting wet standing there. My father rolled down his window. "Happy New Year," he said.

"Thanks. You, too," the man replied. He was very tall and had to bend slightly to look into the car. Jill, Sharon, and I looked at the children, and they looked back at us.

"Are you waiting on the bus?" my father asked. The man said that they were. They were going to Birmingham, where he had a brother and chances of a job. Knowing the bus wouldn't come along for several hours, my father invited them to our home to shelter from the rain.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

The man thought about it for a moment, but then refused. _____

When we got out of the car at our house, the three children ran through the front door happily.

【参考范文】

The man thought about it for a moment, but then refused. He said he didn't want to put us to any bother. My father explained that the rain would last long and our house was near the station. After my parents' strong persuasion, he finally agreed and thanked us all the time. They climbed into the car. They had no luggage, only the clothes they were wearing. Once they settled in, my father looked back over his shoulder, handing them some tissues to wipe the rainwater from their faces.

When we got out of the car at our house, the three children ran through the front door happily. My mother noticed all their clothes were wet, so she found some of ours for them to change. Jill and I decided to share our New Year presents with the children. One of the girls chose Jill's doll and immediately hugged it to her breast. When the rain stopped, my father drove them to the station. As they drove away, I watched out the window as long as I could, looking back at their happy faces. That was the day when Jill and I learned the joy of making others happy.

综合检测(二)

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Join Rainbow Tours' new eco-friendly travelling in Rwanda and Uganda, which takes you behind the scenes in areas where successful protection projects are ongoing. From £8,055 per person for 15 nights, including flights. *rainbowtours.co.uk*

Sustainable active holiday expert Much Better Adventures has come up with a new route in Jordan, which includes a night in a tent in Wadi Rum. Other highlights include an exploration in the Dead Sea and a hike through the Dana Biosphere Reserve. Launches March 2022. From £975 per person for five nights. *muchbetteradventures.com*

Sink your teeth into a Green Trip in a Land Rover Defender, eating food cooked over an open fire and sleeping in a tent in Norfolk. Wildnis, a new climate-positive adventure company, offers an action-packed break featuring sailing, rafting and sea swimming. From £2,500 per person for three nights. *wildnis.co.uk*

Head into the Highlands with the new Scottish wildlife-watching company Wild Discovery. The operator has introduced E-guide services available for visitors. E-bike Safari Adventure Weekends from £499 per person for two nights. *wild-discovery.com*

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四个旅游项目的情况以及价格。

1. What feature do all of the above places have in common?
- A. Sleeping in a tent.
B. Providing E-guide.
C. Being eco-friendly.
D. Exploring the sea.
- C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Join Rainbow Tours' new eco-friendly travelling in Rwanda and

Uganda, which takes you behind the scenes in areas where successful protection projects are ongoing.”,第二段中的“Sustainable active holiday expert Much Better Adventures has come up with a new route in Jordan, which includes a night in a tent in Wadi Rum.”,第三段中的“Sink your teeth into a Green Trip in a Land Rover Defender, eating food cooked over an open fire and sleeping in a tent in Norfolk. Wildnis, a new climate-positive adventure company, offers an action-packed break featuring sailing, rafting and sea swimming.”,以及最后一段中的“Head into the Highlands with the new Scottish wildlife-watching company Wild Discovery. The operator has introduced E-guide services available for visitors.”可知,四个地点的共同点在于很环保。故选C。

2. If you are a wildlife lover with a busy work schedule, which company would you choose?
- A. Rainbow Tours.
B. Much Better Adventures.
C. Wildnis.
D. Wild Discovery.
- D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Head into the Highlands with new Scottish wildlife-watching company Wild Discovery. The operator has introduced E-guide services available for visitors. E-bike Safari Adventure Weekends from £499 per person for two nights.”可知,如果你是一个野生动物爱好者,且工作繁忙,你可以选择 Wild Discovery。故选D。
3. What can this article be taken from?
- A. A travel brochure.
B. A science magazine.
C. An animal poster.
D. A biology book.
- A 文章出处题。根据文章主要介绍了四个旅游项目的情况以及价格可推知,文章可能选自旅行手册。故选A。

B

It's hard to turn down hamburgers, French fries, potato chips and all of the other junk food that seems to call out to us. However, eating too much junk food can harm your body, particularly if you're between the ages of 10 and 19.

“Junk food shapes adolescent brains in ways that weaken their ability to think, learn and remember. It can also make it harder to control impulsive behaviours,” said Amy Reichelt, a brain and nutrition specialist at Western University, Canada. “It may even up a teen's risk of depression and anxiety.”

Reichelt and two other researchers found adolescents are more sensitive than any other age group to processed foods with a lot of fat and sugar. Adolescent brains are still developing the ability to assess risks and control actions. The prefrontal cortex is the part of the brain that tells us we shouldn't eat chips all the time and helps us resist that urge. But this region is the last to mature—it doesn't fully develop until we are in our early 20s. Meanwhile, teen brains get more active from rewards for a while. The parts of the brain that make us feel good when we do something pleasurable are fully developed by the teen years.

In fact, these regions are even more sensitive when we are young. That's because dopamine (多巴胺), a natural chemical that lifts our mood when we experience something good, is especially active in adolescent brains. Therefore, the teen brain has two strikes against it when it comes to resisting junk food. “It has a heightened drive for rewards and reduced self-regulation,” said Reichelt.

So, what's the best way to say no to junk food? Researchers suggest exercise. When we exercise, the brain's reward system becomes less sensitive to food. Exercise also causes the body to make a protein that helps brain cells grow and boosts connections between the prefrontal cortex and other brain regions. The prefrontal cortex thus can work

better to help us make wise decisions and control our impulses.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了垃圾食品对青少年的危害,以及如何拒绝垃圾食品。

4. What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
 - A. The effects of eating junk food.
 - B. The causes of favouring junk food.
 - C. The tendency of sharing junk food.
 - D. The benefits of avoiding junk food.

A 段落大意题。根据第二段中艾米·瑞切特所讲的内容可知,垃圾食品对人们有害,比如会削弱人们的思考能力等。
5. What is the function of the prefrontal cortex?
 - A. It serves as the sense of taste.
 - B. It promotes teenagers' spirits.
 - C. It is partly in charge of self-control.
 - D. It helps teenagers grow physically mature.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The prefrontal cortex is the part... develop until we are in our early 20s.”可知,前额皮质的功能是实现部分自我控制。
6. What does “it” refer to in the third paragraph?
 - A. The prefrontal cortex.
 - B. The urge.
 - C. The adolescent brain.
 - D. The body.

A 代词指代题。根据破折号前面的“The prefrontal cortex is the part of the brain... this region is the last to mature”可知,上面讲述的是前额皮质的功能,所以紧接着的 it 指代的应是前额皮质。
7. Why is it hard for teens to give up junk food?
 - A. Junk food is delicious and nutritious.
 - B. Junk food is popular among young people.
 - C. Teenagers don't realise the harm of junk food.
 - D. Teenagers can feel temporary excitement from junk food.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“the teen brain has two strikes against it... reduced self-regulation”可知,青少年很难拒绝垃圾食品的原因是他们能从这些垃圾食品中感受到暂时的兴奋。

C

Youth is a stressful time from friends to school to families, and stressful situations become common. The body can respond (反应) with faster breathing, a fast beating heart, tense (绷紧的) muscles and drops of sweat. And teens who breathe polluted air appear to respond most strongly to stress, a new study shows.

Jonas Miller, a psychologist working at Stanford University, studied whether or how air pollution might affect the body's response to stress. Miller's team invited 144 teens to participate in a stressful test. Most of the kids lived in or near San Francisco, which has the worst air quality.

Before the test, the researchers used sensors (传感器) to record heart rates and sweat levels for five minutes as the kids rested. Then as the test began, a researcher read aloud the beginning of a story and the kids had five minutes to make up an exciting ending to the story. They would have to memorise their ending and present it aloud to a judge. After finishing this task, the kids were asked to do maths problems, which obviously was a harder task. If he or she made a mistake, the judge let the student start over. The whole time, sensors recorded heart rates and sweat levels.

Miller found all the students had similar heart rates and sweat levels at rest. But as the test got difficult, differences began to appear. Kids from places with more air pollution responded more strongly to stress and their heartbeats became irregular. They sweated more than the teens who lived in cleaner places.

"The teens' bodies were preparing to deal with possible challenges in the environment and such bodily responses to stress were linked to negative feelings," Miller concludes. "Over time," he says, "these responses can contribute to both physical and mental health problems."

This study has proved the negative health effects of air pollution among teenagers. Therefore,

teenagers should try to avoid their exposure (暴露) to air pollution. They should consider limiting their time outside during rush hours, especially on days when air pollution is particularly strong.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。一项新的研究发现,住在空气污染严重地区的孩子对压力的反应比住在空气清新地区的孩子的反应强烈。长期的这种反应会对青少年的健康有影响,因此文章建议青少年尽量避免暴露在受污染空气中。

8. What happened to teens in stressful situations?

- A. Their bodies react strongly.
- B. Their muscles cause pain.
- C. They become seriously sick.
- D. They have trouble in breathing.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Youth is a stressful time from friends to school to families, and stressful situations become common. The body can respond (反应) with faster breathing, a fast beating heart, tense (绷紧的) muscles and drops of sweat.”可知,当处于有压力的环境中时,青少年的身体会做出剧烈的反应。故选 A。

9. What can we learn about the test?

- A. The judge of the test was strict with the kids.
- B. The kids enjoyed making up endings of stories.
- C. Those breathing polluted air don't have more stress in life.
- D. The kids gradually felt more stress in the process.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*But as the test got difficult, differences began to appear. Kids from places with more air pollution responded more strongly to stress and their heartbeats became irregular.*”可推知,随着测试不断进行,孩子们的压力逐渐增大。故选 D。

10. From the study we can infer that teens should _____.

- A. solve their mental health problems
 - B. spend less time outside in heavy traffic
 - C. learn to deal with stressful situations
 - D. enjoy more outside activities in good weather
- B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*They*

should consider limiting their time outside during rush hours, especially on days when air pollution is particularly strong.”可推知,青少年在交通拥堵时应尽量不待在户外。故选 B。

11. Where is the passage probably from?

- A. A report on pollution.
- B. A geography book.
- C. A psychologist's diary.
- D. A science magazine.

D 文章出处题。根据文章的主要内容,尤其是第一段中的“*And teens who breathe polluted air appear to respond most strongly to stress, a new study shows.*”可知,本文与一项新研究有关,所以该文章很有可能出现在一本科学杂志上。故选 D。

D

Virtue, by definition, is the moral excellence of a person. Morally excellent people have a character made up of virtues valued as good. They are honest, respectful, courageous, forgiving and kind, for example. They do the right thing, and don't bend to impulses, urges or desires, but act according to values and principles. Some might say good qualities are inborn. Actually, virtues need to be cultivated. With the habit of being virtuous, we can take control of our lives and move them in the direction of greater happiness and fulfillment.

Virtues are universal and recognised by all cultures as basic qualities of well-being. However, practising virtues is not easy. So often we know that it takes perseverance to reach our goals, and we still never get there. We know if we forgive, we'll be less angry. We know it takes courage to accomplish great things. So why then, if we know what to do, are we still stuck?

Because we have not yet consciously applied a virtue to a given situation so as to change its outcome such as in these examples: kindness towards someone who is having a bad day can make him or her smile and build rapport; trust in a relationship creates valuable, meaningful

relationships; gratitude in a job loss can shift our focus from feeling low to how we can have a new, more fulfilling career; service to others can change lives, build better neighbourhoods and create stronger nations.

We know we are becoming more virtuous people, not only because of the results above but also because of the way other people respond to us. Our friends, families, co-workers, and neighbours will trust and rely on us. They will come to us for guidance and help. They will want to be around us because we inspire them to be better people. Practising virtues allows us to develop our potential, and live a more purposeful and better life.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了践行美德能让我们开发自己的潜能,过上更有目标、更美好的生活。

12. What can we know about virtuous people from the first paragraph?

- A. They are born with virtue.
- B. They never make a mistake.
- C. They have a habit of doing good.
- D. They act on the principle of profit.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段最后一句“*With the habit of being virtuous, we can take control of our lives and move them in the direction of greater happiness and fulfillment.*”可知,具有美德的人有行善的习惯。故选 C。

13. What is the second paragraph mainly about?

- A. Satisfying career.
- B. Practising virtues.
- C. Trust in a relationship.
- D. Basic qualities of well-being.

B 段落大意题。根据第二段中的“*However, practising virtues is not easy.*”及“*So why then, if we know what to do, are we still stuck?*”可知,本段主要讲的是“*践行美德并非易事*”。故选 B。

14. What does the underlined word “*rapport*” mean in the third paragraph?

- A. A good greeting.

- B. A great atmosphere.
C. A good goodbye.
D. A close relationship.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“kindness towards someone who is having a bad day”以及后面的“trust in a relationship creates valuable, meaningful relationships”可知,此处是指,对那些心情不好的人施以善意,可以让他或她微笑,从而建立“融洽的关系”符合语境,所以画线词是“融洽关系”的意思。故选 D。

15. What is the author's purpose in the last paragraph?
A. To encourage readers to be more virtuous.
B. To encourage readers to live a purposeful life.
C. To encourage readers to offer others guidance.
D. To encourage readers to develop others' potential.

A 推理判断题。根据文章最后一句“Practising virtues allows us to develop our potential, and live a more purposeful, better life.”可推知,最后一段作者的目的是鼓励人们践行美德。故选 A。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

As many of us endure the long cold winter, we are tempted to tuck (大吃) into some filling and fattening foods. 16 And more often it's because we need something to cheer us up. And, for a short while at least, it makes us feel better — which is why we call it “comfort food”.

17 It depends on your preference and the association you have with certain tastes, textures and smells. But probably the most universally popular eatable comforter is the biscuit. 18 Besides, it gives us that all-important sugary pick-me-up.

Moving on from the sweet and sugary snacks, famous chef and food writer Mary Berry knows about the kind of meals that warm us up and give us comfort in winter. She said, “I think it becomes

natural to think about comfort food as soon as the weather chills and the nights become darker.

19 ”

The other thing about comforting dishes like mac and cheese, noodles or pizza is that they don't require cooking skills in the kitchen: they are easy to make so we can get our fix of feel-good food quickly. 20 Even though we know the ingredients are high in carbohydrates, sugar or salt, we continue to pig out. We don't realise that our minds are finding a way to trigger a really positive emotion by making us eat that food.

Maybe we should take comfort from the fact that eating certain food just makes us feel happy. However, for some people, eating any kind of food brings joy, warmth, happiness and comfort.

- A. Too much such food is harmful to health.
B. We find different kinds of feel-good foods to lift our spirits.
C. However, we often feel so good that we eat too much.
D. Soup and warming foods are suggested as feel-good winter treats.
E. This snack often brings back happy memories of childhood and family.
F. The type of food that makes us feel good varies from person to person.
G. This is sometimes because it helps us to keep warm and give us energy.

答案:16~20 GFEDC

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

I'm much more used to the simple language of chopsticks. To me, the art of chopsticks 21 more than any silver knife or fork ever could.

My grandfather's language of love is 22. I still remember his 23 clearly, “Only your first two fingers should be moving, and your two chopsticks must never cross.” He can use chopsticks 24. He shows me chopstick tricks and we play games with chopsticks.

What about my 25? No doubt it is 26.

In her hand, chopsticks are no longer just cutlery (餐具), 27 a tool to show her concern. “Come, 28 more,” she always says while using chopsticks to 29 food for me. When my grandfather comes home from a long day’s work, 30 all the nagging (唠叨) that she gives to him, my grandmother always, 31 places the best part of their food onto his plate with chopsticks, and takes the 32 for herself. There is no need for any words, when the love can be 33 with a pair of chopsticks.

Using chopsticks 34 practice, patience and perseverance (毅力). After more than fifty years of marriage, my grandparents are still 35 it and practising it, with every meal and every mouthful.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了在作者的家里,祖父母通过使用筷子来向作者以及向他们彼此表达爱意。

21. A. creates B. carries
C. improves D. accesses

B 根据上文“To me, the art of chopsticks”可知,此处指筷子本身具有的艺术特质,比任何银刀或银叉都更重要。故选 B。

22. A. performing B. listening
C. teaching D. caring

C 根据下文“He shows me chopstick tricks and we play games with chopsticks.”可知,祖父教导作者使用筷子,教导是祖父爱的语言。故选 C。

23. A. words B. smile
C. fingers D. face

A 根据下文引用的祖父的话可知,此处指作者记得祖父说的话。故选 A。

24. A. carefully B. gradually
C. regularly D. skillfully

D 根据下文“He shows me chopstick tricks”可知,祖父可以熟练地使用筷子。故选 D。

25. A. grandmother’s B. grandfather’s
C. mother’s D. father’s

A 根据下文“my grandmother always”可知,此处指的是“祖母的爱的语言”,应用名词所有格 grandmother’s。故选 A。

26. A. practice B. concern
C. food D. home

C 根据下文“food for me”可知,食物是祖母爱的语言。故选 C。

27. A. so B. but
C. or D. and

B 此处指“在她的手中,筷子不再只是餐具,而是表达关心的工具”。no longer... but... 表示“不是……而是……”,符合题意。故选 B。

28. A. eat B. use
C. say D. bring

A 根据下文“food for me”可知,此处指祖母让作者多吃点。故选 A。

29. A. prepare B. pile up
C. cook D. pick up

D 根据下文“food for me”可知,此处指用筷子夹菜,应用 pick up。故选 D。

30. A. but for B. in spite of
C. as for D. in case of

B 结合上下文可知,此处表示让步,意为“尽管祖母对他唠唠叨叨,她总是高兴地用筷子把最好的食物放在他的盘子里,自己吃剩下的”。故选 B。

31. A. gratefully B. typically
C. happily D. conveniently

C 根据下文“places the best part of their food onto his plate with chopsticks”可知,祖母总是乐于把最好吃的留给祖父。故选 C。

32. A. tool B. rest
C. work D. mouthful

B 根据上文可知,祖母把最好吃的给了祖父,自己吃剩下的食物。故选 B。

33. A. remembered B. found
C. earned D. expressed

D 根据上文“There is no need for any words, when the love can be”可知,此处指用筷子表达爱。故选 D。

34. A. takes B. shows
C. gathers D. represents

A 根据下文“practice, patience and

perseverance (毅力)”可知,此处指使用筷子需要练习、耐心和毅力。故选 A。

35. A. inventing B. balancing
C. identifying D. studying

D 根据下文“it and practising it”可知,祖父母学习和练习使用筷子来表达爱。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Do you know what the number one killer in the United States is? According to researches, heart disease **36. is thought** (think) to cause the most deaths in the US. With all the junk food that is available nowadays, heart disease has turned into the biggest problem today.

So what's the **37. solution** (solve) to this problem? The answer is simple. We just need to eat healthier food and the risk of heart disease will be **38. greatly** (great) reduced. In fact, we can add about 15 years to our lives by just **39. changing** (change) a few things in our diets.

To have a healthy body, we need to eat more raw (未经加工的) foods, and most importantly, vegetables. **40. The** reason why people in the past **41. sought** (seek) ways to cook food is that the food was often **42. dirty** (dirt). In African villages, people must go to rivers and get water **43. from** them. They boiled it first **44. to kill** (kill) bacteria and then they would drink it. Nowadays, the food we get from stores is basically edible (可食用的). It is very safe for us to eat already, **45. which** means we are not taking risks if we have raw food diets.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假如你是李华,你在学校食堂就餐的过程中,发现学生浪费饭菜的行为十分常见,你深感痛心和羞愧。请你给校长用英文写一封信。

1. 说明写信的目的;
2. 节约粮食的重要性;
3. 提出切实可行的建议。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Headmaster,

I'm Li Hua, a student from Senior Three. _____

I hope my suggestions will be of some help.
Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Headmaster,

I'm Li Hua, a student from Senior Three. I'm writing to draw your attention to the improper behaviour of some students wasting food in the cafeteria. I always feel grieved and ashamed whenever I see this.

In order to solve the problem, some measures should be taken by our school. First, all of the students should raise awareness of the fact that a great number of people don't have adequate food, which may help them realise how terrible it is for them to waste food. What's more, I wonder if our school can set up specific regulations against such behaviour. I believe the bad behaviour will be got rid of soon with our joint efforts.

I hope my suggestions will be of some help.
Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When my friend Ollie and I saw a moving truck pull up in front of the blue house on the corner, we hoped there'd be a new kid to play with. The window in Ollie's kitchen gave us the perfect view for watching

the movers while we were eating our lunch.

“That looks like a couch (长沙发),” I said as the movers struggled to get it through the door. “Look at all those boxes!” said Ollie. “There won’t be any room left for people in the house.” But we still didn’t see any kids. “Everything is still in boxes,” Ollie pointed out. “We’d need an X-ray to know if there are kids inside.”

Just then, a man and a woman came out of the house. They greeted Abuela, Ollie’s grandmother, who was outside watering her flowers. Before long, they were all talking and laughing.

“I told you. No kids!” I said. Ollie pointed at a girl riding up to us on a bike and said, “Then who’s that?” I clapped and Ollie jumped up. “Let’s say hi,” Ollie said. “Aren’t you supposed to bring a treat when you welcome people to the neighbourhood?” I said.

Just then, Abuela walked into the house. She said the family was very nice, and that the girl was about our age. Ollie suggested we make some cookies and Abuela gave us a cookbook. “Do we really need to follow a recipe?” said Ollie. “Yes!” Abuela and I said loudly!

Ollie is famous for getting creative with recipes and turning delicious treats into disasters. You know how some people are naturally good at baking and don’t need a recipe to make something taste fantastic? Well, Ollie is not one of those people!

“What a great job you two did,” Abuela said, pulling our cookies out of the oven. As soon as they were cool enough to put into a container, Ollie and I ran out the door.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

We found the new girl riding around on her bike. _____

Ollie and I each took a cookie and had a bite.

【参考范文】

We found the new girl riding around on her bike. “Welcome, neighbour!” I said. I introduced Ollie and myself to her. “Hope you and your family like chocolate-chip cookies. We made these for you,” said Ollie. “That’s so sweet!” the girl said, choosing a cookie and taking a bite. “I’m Gabriella.” Then she stopped chewing and made a funny face. “What did you put in the cookies except chocolate?” she asked. “Regular cookies are boring,” Ollie said. “I want them to taste like Abuela’s hot chocolate, so I used a little chili powder.” “Oh, brother,” I sighed.

Ollie and I each took a cookie and had a bite. Ollie found he had put in too much chili powder and felt very embarrassed. However, Gabriella said no matter how strange these tasted, they were the best “welcome to the neighbourhood” cookies she had ever had. The three of us laughed. After a little while, Abuela came outside to see how we were doing, and Gabriella’s mum invited us all into their house for a snack. We had a good time that day.